


1st SEC
FIRST TERM

# TREASURE ISLAND

# NEW HELLO!

2024

# Contents



# Getting away

## Unit 1

## Objectives

امسح الكود

استفيد بمحتوى
الوحدة الرقمى

**Reading** : An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays

**Writing** : An essay on ecotourism

**Listening** : A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong

**Speaking** : Describe an event

**Language** : Past simple and past continuous

**Life Skills** : Collaboration




Part (1)
# Lessons 1 & 2

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| conservationist (n) | الشخص المحافظ على البيئة |
| ecotourism (n) | السياحة البيئية |
| endangered (adj) | مهدد بالانقراض/معرض للخطر |
| environment (n) | البيئة |
| impact (n) | تأثير |
| isolated (adj) | معزول |
| lean (v) – ed | يميل/يتكأ |
| materials (n) | مواد (خام) |
| spicy (adj) | حريف/حار المذاق |
| sustainable (adj) | مستدام |
| swell up (v) – ed | يتورم |
| trek (v) – ked (n) | يترجل/رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام |
| unique (adj) | مميز/فريد من نوعه |

Write the word for several times to memorise it.


لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك


### Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

| | |
|---|---|
| alone (adj) (adv) | وحيد/وحيدًا |
| along (adv) | بمحاذاة |
| annoyed (adj) | مضجر/منزعج |
| avoid (v) – ed | يتجنب |
| beach (n) | شاطئ (بلاج) |
| biologist (n) | عالم أحياء |
| biology (n) | علم الأحياء |
| bite (v) | يلدغ |
| book (v) – ed | يحجز |
| centre (n) | مركز |
| coast (n) | ساحل |
| cook (n) | طباخ |
| coral reefs (n) | شعاب مرجانية |
| damage (v) – d (n) | يتلف/تلف/ضرر |
| design (v) – ed (n) | يصمم/تصميم |
| destination (n) | جهة الوصول/وجهة السفر |
| develop (v) – ed | ينمى/يطور |
| disaster (n) | كارثة |
| dive (v) – d | يغطس |
| dragon (n) | تنين (حيوان أسطورى) |
| drop (v) – ped | يُسقط |
| ecosystem (n) | نظام بيئى |
| educate (v) – d | يعلم/يدرس |
| exist (v) – ed | يوجد/يتواجد/يعيش |
| feed (v) | يطعم |
| fortunately (adv) | لحسن الحظ |
| fussy eater (n) | شخص صعب الإرضاء فى الأكل |
| giant (adj) (n) | عملاق |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| guide (n) | مرشد (سياحى) | properly (adv) | بشكل مناسب |
| hill (n) | تل/هضبة | protect (v) – ed | يحمى |
| including (prep) | مشتملًا على | provide (v) – d | يمد/يزود |
| insects (n) | حشرات | rainforests (n) | الغابات المطيرة |
| internal flight (n) | رحلة طيران داخلية | rebuild (v) | يعيد بناء |
| island (n) | جزيرة | remote (adj) | بعيد |
| lemur (n) | الليمور (حيوان يشبه القرود) | safe (adj) | آمن |
| limited (adj) | مُقَيّد/محدود | sound (v) – ed | يبدو |
| local (adj) (n) | محلى/أحد السكان المحليين | souvenir (n) | هدية تذكارية |
| luggage (n) | أمتعة السفر | spider (n) | عنكبوت |
| mainly (adv) | بشكل رئيسى/أساسى | summarise (v) – d | يلخص |
| natural (adj) | طبيعى | teach (v) | يُدرس |
| observe (v) – d | يراقب/يرصد | tourism (n) | سياحة |
| orangutan (n) | إنسان الغاب | turtle (n) | سلحفاة بحرية |
| path (n) | مسار/ممر/طريق | volunteer (n) (v) – ed | متطوع/يتطوع |
| pet (n) | حيوان أليف | wall (n) | سور/حائط |
| pink (adj) | وردى اللون | wildlife (n) | الحياة البرية |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| activity (n) | نشاط | plaza (n) | ميدان/ساحة |
| advantages (n) | مزايا | population (n) | السكان/التعداد السكانى |
| attractions (n) | عوامل/مناطق جذب (سياحى) | repeat (v) – ed | يكرر/يعيد |
| carnival (n) | مهرجان/كرنفال | residents (n) | سكان/مقيمون |
| council (n) | مجلس | special (adj) | خاص/مخصوص |
| cruise ships (n) | سفن رحلات سياحية | sunbathe (v) – d | يأخذ حمام شمس |
| effect (n) | تأثير | type (n) | نوع/نمط |
| encourage (v) – d | يشجع | victim (n) | ضحية |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Our teacher is so friendly and always gives us a .................... treatment.
a) cruel b) boring c) special d) giant

2 I was so proud to be part of this .................... project that will help many youth in Egypt.
a) tiny b) ordinary c) trivial d) giant

3 .................... is the business of organising holidays to natural areas that are far away.
a) Ecosystem b) Tourism
c) Wildlife d) Ecotourism

4 His style in playing football is so .................... . No one is like him.
a) common b) unique
c) adaptable d) isolated

5 There are a lot of .................... of using the internet.
a) bites b) activities c) advantages d) tourists

6 It is a fact that fish can't .................... out of water.
a) exist b) vanish
c) sit d) depart

7 .................... is the natural world around us in which people, animals and plants live.
a) Environment b) Conservation
c) Coral reef d) Destination

8 A/An .................... is someone who works to protect animals, plants, etc. or to protect old buildings.
a) ecotourist b) tourist
c) conservationist d) local

9 The explorers spent the day .................... through forests and over mountains.
a) diving b) trekking
c) developing d) racing

10 Your injured foot won't .................... up if you put ice on it.
a) swallow b) swell c) limit d) get

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| at least | على الأقل | go diving | يغطس |
| blow ... off | يُطير (شيئًا) | go on holiday | يذهب فى إجازة |
| catch a flight to | يركب طائرة إلى | impact on = effect on | تأثير على |
| disappear from | يختفى من | important for/to | مهم لـ |
| do damage to | يسبب ضررًا لـ | introduce ... to | يقدم ... لـ |
| do something different | يقوم بعمل شيء مختلف | keep ... as | يحتفظ بـ ... كـ |
| educate ... about | يعلم ... عن | keep ... safe | يبقى ... آمنا |
| environmentally friendly | محافظ على البيئة/صديق للبيئة | leaning out of | يميل إلى الخارج من |
| famous for | مشهور بـ | make a meal (dinner) | يجهز وجبة |
| feed on | يتغذى على | make notes | يدون ملاحظات |
| find out about | يعرف/يكتشف عن | make sure | يتأكد |
| for example | على سبيل المثال | manage to | يتمكن من |
| from all around the world | من كل أنحاء العالم | popular with | معروف/مشهور بـ |
| get ... back | يستعيد/يعود | protect from/against | يحمى من |
| get to | يصل إلى | stay in | يبقى فى |
| give ... to | يعطى ... إلى | take (time) to | يأخذ وقتا لكى |
| go back to | يعود إلى | trek into* | يترجل إلى/يشق طريقه بصعوبة |

When I go to the desert, I like to trek into the mountains.

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| conserve | يحفظ | conservationism<br>conservationist | الحفاظ على البيئة<br>الشخص المحافظ على البيئة | conservative | محافظ/مقاوم للتغيير |
| design | يصمم | design<br>designer | تصميم<br>مُصَمِّم | designed | مُصَمَّم |
| develop | يطور/ينمى | development<br>developer | تطوير/تنمية<br>مطور | developed/developing | متطور/نامٍ |
| educate | يعلم | education<br>educator | تعليم<br>معلم | educational<br>educated | تعليمى<br>متعلم |

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| endanger | يعرض للخطر | endangerment | التعريض للخطر | endangered | معرض للانقراض |
| ------------------------ | | environment<br>environmentalist | بيئة<br>مناصر لحماية البيئة | environmental | بيئى |
| isolate | يعزل | isolation | عزل | isolated | معزول |
| limit | يحد | limit | حد | limited | محدود |
| protect* | يحمى | protection<br>protector | حماية/وقاية<br>واقٍ | protective | واقٍ |
| spice | يتبل | spice | توابل/بهارات | spicy | حريف/حار المذاق |
| sustain | يحافظ على | sustainability | استدامة | sustainable | مستدام |
| swell | يتورم | swelling | تورم | swollen | متورم |
| volunteer | يتطوع | voluntourist/volunteer<br>voluntarism | متطوع<br>العمل التطوعى | voluntary | تطوعى |

- We should protect our country to stay strong.
- The country needs our protection to stay strong.
- We should think of all the protective methods for our country.

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| avoid* | يتجنب | avert/stay away from | face/seek | يواجه |
| develop | يطور | promote/progress/<br>flourish/prosper | decline/decrease | يتدهور/يقل |
| exist | يوجد/يتواجد/يعيش | remain/stay | vanish/depart | يختفى/يرحل |
| famous | مشهور | well-known/celebrated | unknown/ordinary | غير معروف/عادى |
| fortunately | لحسن الحظ | luckily/happily | unfortunately/unluckily | لسوء الحظ |
| giant | عملاق | colossal/gigantic | tiny/minute | ضئيل الحجم |
| limited | محدود | restricted/definite | unrestricted/unlimited | مطلق/بلا قيود |
| natural | طبيعى | normal/ordinary | abnormal/unnatural | غير عادى |
| remote | بعيد | distant/faraway | near/close | قريب |
| sustainable | مستدام | continual/lasting/permanent | temporary/unsustainable | مؤقت |
| unique | مميز/فريد من نوعه | exceptional/special | normal/ordinary | عادى |

Can you put the words "avoid" and "avert" in sentences?

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My mother is the best one to .................... meals for us. She is my favourite cook.
a) have b) eat
c) repair d) make

2 The sustainable growth is the only solution. The antonym of the word "sustainable" is .................... .
a) lasting b) permanent
c) temporary d) continual

3 We should book early as there are only a/an .................... number of tickets available.
a) unlimited b) great
c) limited d) huge

4 I can't stand getting on a/an .................... bus as I always suffocate اختنق.
a) modern b) crowded
c) empty d) sustainable

5 Cycling is a very .................... friendly sport. I like it very much.
a) touristic b) environmentalist
b) environmental d) environmentally

6 He tried to .................... a flight to New York to attend the conference.
a) catch b) miss c) ride d) get off

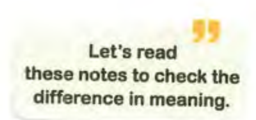
7 Ramy, let me introduce you .................... the manager.
a) for b) at c) to d) in

8 We don't usually go to this mall because it's remote. The antonym of the word "remote" is .................... .
a) far b) distant c) close d) nearly

9 It will take you at .................... 20 minutes to get there.
a) less b) lest c) least d) most

10 Hassan .................... a note of the doctor's address and phone number.
a) signed b) did c) had d) made

# Notes on Vocabulary




**1**

| Word | Meaning | Example |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **beach** | البـلاج (الجـزء الرملـى عنـد حافـة البحـر) | By nine o'clock, the beach was already crowded with people. |
| **shore** | شاطئ البحـر أو البحيرة | The boat was about a mile from the shore when the engine suddenly stopped. |
| **coast** | ساحـــل | Marina is located on the North Coast of Egypt. |
| **bank** | ضفـة النهـر أو القنـاة | They walked home along the river bank. |

**2**

| Word | Meaning | Example |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **include** | يشمل/يتضمن (بعض المكونات) وليس كـل المكـونات - يأتى قبلها الكل وبعدها الجزء. | The room price includes breakfast. |
| **contain** | يحتـوى علـى شىء بداخـله | The thieves stole a purse containing banknotes. |
| **consist of** | يتكون من (كل المكونات الأساسية) | The buffet consisted of several different Indian dishes. |

**3**

| Word | Meaning | Example |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **teach** | يعلم (شخصًا/شيئًا) | Mr. Reda teaches us English. |
| **learn** | يتعلم شيئًا | My son has learnt many languages abroad. |
| **teach/learn (how) to + inf.** | | I have taught my children (how) to play the piano.<br>My children learnt (how) to play the piano. |

**4**

| Word | Meaning | Example |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **arrive in** | يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة/دولة/قارة). | - He arrived in Alexandria yesterday. |
| **arrive at** | يصل إلى مكان صغير/محدد | - He arrived at Alexandria airport yesterday. |
| **reach + object** | يصل إلى (بـدون حـرف جـر). | He reached the airport early yesterday. |
| **get to** | يصـل إلى (مكـان صغير أو كبير). | They got to Cairo yesterday. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | **endangered (adj.)** مهدد بالانقراض/معرض للخطر | Many rare animals are endangered nowadays. |
| | **in danger** فى خطر | Many animals are in danger nowadays. |
| | **endanger (v)** يعرض للخطر | Smoking endangers our health. |
| 6 | **sound (v) + adjective** يبدو = **appear/seem + adjective** | He sounds/appears/seems happy today. |
| | **sound (n)** صوت/ضجة/حس | I tried to open the door without sound as my father was asleep. |
| | **sound (adj.)** سليم/معقول | - I was happy to see that my mother was in a sound state of health.<br>- He always gives me some sound advice. |
| 7 | **drop + object**<br>- يسقط أو يرمى شيئًا<br>- يخفض<br>- ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات<br>- يُسقط من قائمة/يحذف | - While I was walking, I dropped my mobile.<br>- The government should drop the prices.<br>- Can you drop me off here, please?<br>- It was not good to drop my name from the guest list. |
| | **fall** لا يأتى بعدها مفعول (يقع/يسقط) | While I was walking, I fell and broke my leg. |
| 8 | **In the end, ... = Finally, ...** فى النهاية/أخيرًا (بعد طول انتظار) | In the end, the problem was solved by our great teacher. |
| | **At the end of + noun, ...** فى نهاية شىء ... | At the end of the lesson, the teacher asked us some questions. |
| | **By the end of + noun, ...** قبل نهاية شىء ... | By the end of the year, we will have finished our study. |
| 9 | **everyday + noun** صفة بمعنى يومى (كلمة واحدة) | Everyone should work hard to provide his everyday needs. |
| | **every day** ظرف بمعنى كل يوم (كلمتين منفصلتين) | Students go to school every day except for Fridays. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **alone (adj) (adv)** بمفرده/منفردًا (صفة/ظرف). | He carried the luggage alone. |
| 10 **lonely (adj)** وحيدًا (يشعر بالوحدة) (صفة). | Despite his friends, he feels lonely. |
| **lone** وحيد | The lone survivor of the accident told us what happend. |
| 11 **isolated** منعزل/معزول | The area is extremely isolated because of the hills that surround it. |
| **insulated** معزول (حراريًا/عن الكهرباء) | Houses in very hot or cold areas should be well insulated. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Many tourists like to buy .................... when they come to Egypt.
a) souvenirs b) awards c) rewards d) prices

2 Some rare species فصائل of animals are .................... . We must protect them.
a) dangerous b) in dangerous c) endangered d) danger

3 Take care of your mobile not to .................... it on the floor.
a) fall b) drop c) block d) fill

4 Although I live with my family, sometimes I feel .................... .
a) a lone b) only c) lonely d) crowded

5 My friends lives in a/an .................... village deep in the countryside.
a) isolated b) insulated c) created d) limited

6 The list of the players doesn't .................... my name. I am so disappointed.
a) conclude b) include c) consist d) consist of

7 Who can forget what Mr Talaat .................... us throughout his life?
a) taught b) learnt c) taught how d) learnt how

8 Fortunately, we .................... the train station in time to catch our train to Luxor.
a) arrived in b) reached to c) got to d) arrived

9 Students should be exposed to .................... English language not only the formal one.
a) every day b) all days c) everyday d) each day

10 About 100 persons attended my lecture .................... some young children.
a) containing b) consisting c) concluding d) including

# Practice



## Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Children cry when they eat .................... food.
a) sweet b) spicy c) good d) along

2 When I go to Sharm, I like to .................... diving every day.
a) do b) play c) go d) take

3 The word "unique" is an antonym for .................... . *(Longman)*
a) rare b) uncommon c) normal d) abnormal

4 These statues are made of ............ materials. We mustn't pollute our environment.
a) friendly environmentally b) environmentally friendly
c) unfriendly environmentally d) non-environmentally friendly

5 We all know that staying up late has a very bad .................... on our health.
a) affect b) effect c) impact d) b & c

6 What a .................... contribution for Dr. Magdi Yacoub in the field of heart surgery!
a) familiar b) unique c) dark d) greedy

7 I am very good at studying living things so it would be wonderful to be a/an .................... .
a) biologist b) geologist c) archaeologist d) botanist

8 When I arrived home with my friend Ali, I .................... him to my family.
a) produced b) presented c) concluded d) introduced

9 We should all work together in order not to .................... our environment.
a) predict b) endanger c) protect d) lean

10 Scientists try hard to .................... the ecosystem everywhere. *(Longman)*
a) protect b) reflect c) defect d) suspect

11 I like diving to see the .................... of the Red Sea which are so amazing.
a) coral reefs b) colour reefs c) coral beefs d) moral reefs

12 Scientists are trying to eliminate the .................... of oil on the environment. *(Longman)*
a) impact b) safety c) respect d) development

13 It is very important for all of us to find .................... solutions for the problems of our country.
a) sustainable b) terrible c) insulated d) leaning

14 One of the .................... of the new job is having a respectable salary with many other benefits.
a) disadvantages b) materials c) productions d) attractions

15 Luxor and Aswan have always been a .................... for most tourists who visit Egypt.
a) destiny b) conservation c) location d) destination

16 .................... are protesting يحتجون against the plan to destroy part of the rainforests.
a) Conversations b) Conservationists c) Conservations d) Ecotourists

17 We should encourage children to play with toys made of environmentally friendly natural .................... . (Longman)
a) issues b) ingredients c) materials d) matters

18 .................... means travelling to natural areas with the responsibility of conserving the environment.
a) Ecosystem b) Ecotourism
c) Biodiversity d) Medical tourism

19 My daughter's eyes .................... up as a result of her long cry after her difficult exams.
a) swelled b) swallowed c) extended d) refreshed

20 Sinai is full of mountains and hills where you can go .................... safely.
a) diving b) trekking c) developing d) racing

21 Scientists think that pollution has some bad effects on the balance of our ............ .
a) ecotourism b) economy c) ecotourist d) ecosystem

22 I was climbing to the top of a hill when the wind blew my hat .................... .
a) on b) of c) off d) out

23 Every one of us should try hard to .................... something different in their life.
a) make b) do c) had d) invent

24 Experts always try to ensure that tourism is .................... . (Longman)
a) temporary b) sustainable c) recyclable d) nonrenewable

25 In the past, women used to do the washing up on the .................... of the canal.
a) shore b) beach c) coast d) bank

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

26 Be careful! The forest is full of giant snakes and spiders. The synonyms of the word "giant" are .................... .
a) tiny b) minute c) small d) gigantic e) colossal

27 The teacher intended to help students avoid common mistakes. The antonyms of the word "avoid" are .................... .
a) seek b) deliver c) face d) depart e) decrease

28 It is a unique achievement as no one has ever won the championship five times before. The synonyms of the word "unique" are .................... .
a) close b) normal c) exceptional d) special e) restricted

29 The helicopter crashed in a remote desert area. The antonyms of the word "remote" are .................... .
a) abnormal b) temporary c) unknown d) close e) near

30 ...................., the police caught the seller who tried to cheat the tourists.
a) At the end b) Finally c) Endless d) Endlessly e) In the end

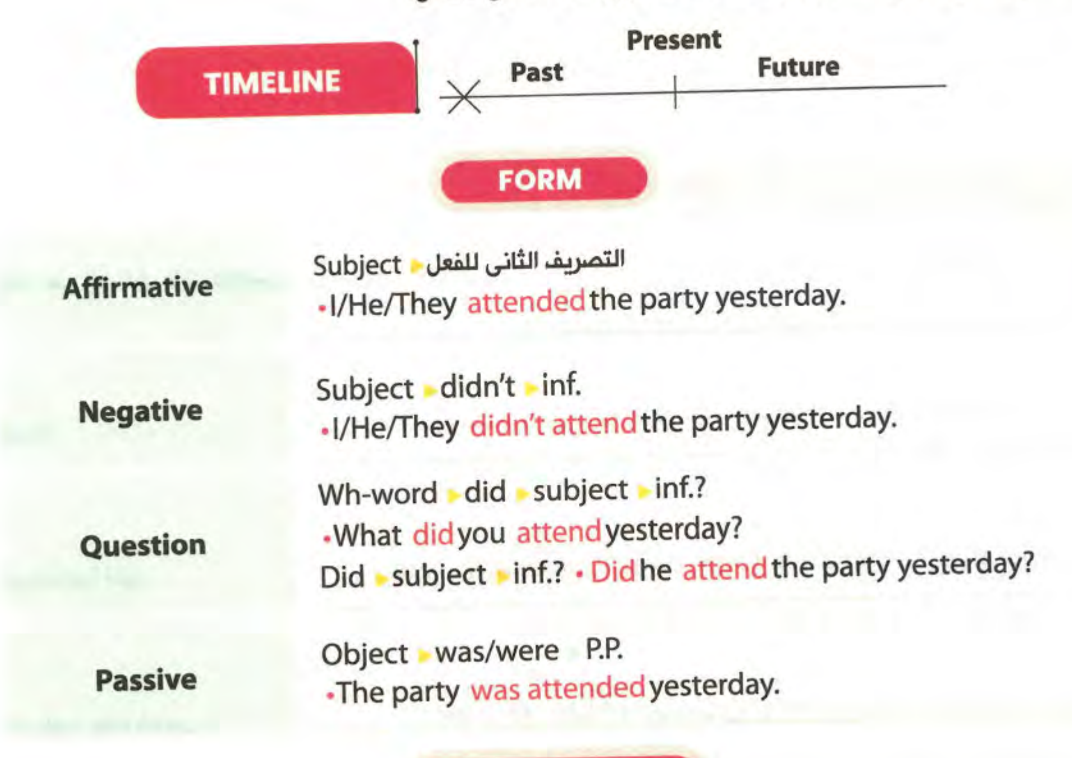
## B Language



## 1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

**The past simple tense is used to talk about actions completed in certain time in the past.**

يستخدم الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث اكتملت فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.




**FORM**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Affirmative** | Subject ▸ التصريف الثانى للفعل ▸<br>• I/He/They attended the party yesterday. |
| **Negative** | Subject ▸ didn't ▸ inf.<br>• I/He/They didn't attend the party yesterday. |
| **Question** | Wh-word ▸ did ▸ subject ▸ inf.?<br>• What did you attend yesterday?<br>Did ▸ subject ▸ inf.? • Did he attend the party yesterday? |
| **Passive** | Object ▸ was/were P.P.<br>• The party was attended yesterday. |

**USAGE الاستخدام**

1. **For completed actions in the past:** أحداث اكتملت فى الماضى.
   She studied all her lessons yesterday.

2. **For repeated actions or habits in the past:** أحداث متكررة أو عادات فى الماضى.
   When he was in Alexandria, he went to the beach every day.

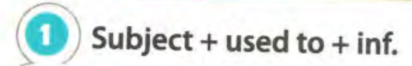
3. **For retelling situations or stories:** سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت فى الماضى.
   Yesterday, I went out to the café, then I ordered a cup of coffee.

## Key words

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | in the ancient times | فى العصور القديمة |
| from (2000 to 2006) | من عام ... إلى ... | once upon a time | كان ياماكان (ذات مرة) |
| How long ago ...? | منذ متى ...؟ | the other day | منذ فترة قريبة/تلك الليلة |
| ago | منذ | last | السابق |
| just now | توًا/حالًا | in the past | فى الماضى |
| once | ذات مرة | in + (2010) | فى عام (٢٠١٠) |

I ate my food ten minutes ago.






**1** **Subject + used to + inf.** اعتاد على فعل الشىء فى الماضى ولم يعد يفعله الآن.

He used to smoke a lot, but now he doesn't.

**2** **Subject + no longer + present simple** مضارع بسيط — لم يعد

He no longer smokes a lot.

**3** **Subject + negative form + any longer/anymore** — لم يعد/مرة أخرى

He doesn't smoke a lot any longer/anymore.

**4** **It was + (someone's/ صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.** — لقد كانت عادة شخص ...

It was his habit to smoke a lot.

**5** **Subject + (was/were) + in the habit of + (v-ing)** — كانت لدى ... عادة ...

He was in the habit of smoking a lot.

**6** **Subject + got into the habit of + (v-ing)** — لقد انخرط فى عادة الـ ...

He got into the habit of smoking a lot.

**7** **Subject + (was/were/got) + used to + (v-ing)** — كان معتادًا على ...

He was/got used to smoking a lot.

**8** **Subject + didn't use to + inf.**

لم يكن معتادًا على فعل شيء ولكنه يفعله الآن.

He didn't use to get up early.

**9** **Subject + never used to + inf.**

يمكن استخدام never للتعبير عن النفى فى الماضى البسيط

He never used to sleep early.
He never slept early when he was young.

معتاد على عمل شيء. (للتعبير عن عادة فى الحاضر)

**10** **Subject + (am/is/are) / (get) / (become) used to + (v-ing) OR (Noun) OR (Pronoun)**

She (is/gets/becomes) used to cleaning her house alone.
I am used to the noise in my street.
It is very cold here, but I am used to it.




- تأتى used بمعنى «يستخدم لـ» (فى المبنى للمجهول).

**11** **Object + (be) used to + inf. / used for + (v-ing)**

The camera is used to take photographs.
The camera is used for taking photographs.

- صيغة السؤال فى used to

**12** **Did + subj. + use to + inf.?**

Did you use to sleep early?

**13** **Question word + did + subj. + use to + inf.?**

Where did you use to live when you were young?

**14**

لا تستخدم used to عند تحديد وقت للحدث.

I used to visit my uncle last week. (✗)
I visited my uncle last week. (✓)

**15** **(always/ usually/ often ...) + past simple**

يمكن استخدام ظروف التكرار مع الماضى البسيط

I always went to school early when I was a student.

الأفعال المساعدة فى المضارع البسيط

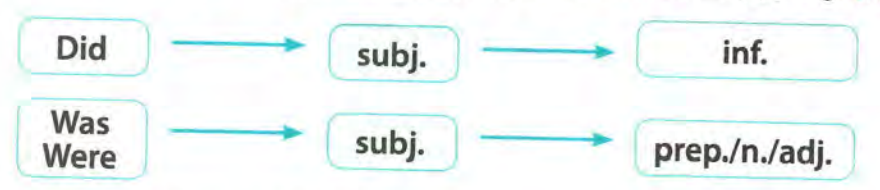
- تستخدم didn't لنفى الفعل ويأتى بعدها الـ inf. ، أما مع الاسم/الصفة/حرف الجر فنستخدم wasn't/weren't




I didn't sleep well yesterday.

We weren't tired, so we played again.

- نستخدم did فى السؤال ومعها الـ inf. ، أما عند السؤال عن اسم/صفة/حرف جر فنستخدم was/were .




Was your husband ill last week?

Did he study his lessons yesterday?

## Language Check point 4

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Randa .................... a call from her friend yesterday.
a) receives b) is received
c) received d) was receiving

2 Egypt won the African Cup of Nations .................... 2010.
a) since b) at
c) in d) for

3 Ayman read an interesting book .................... .
a) yet b) now
c) ago d) the other day

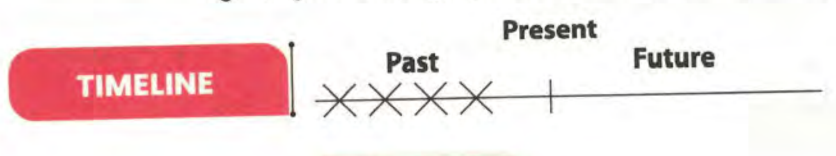
4 I .................... on a picnic with my family two days ago.
a) go b) goes
c) went d) was going

5 Kareem always .................... first at school when he was young.
a) comes b) come
c) came d) was coming

## 2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

**The past continuous tense is used to talk about actions in progress in a specific time in the past.**

يستخدم الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة فى فترة محددة فى الماضى.



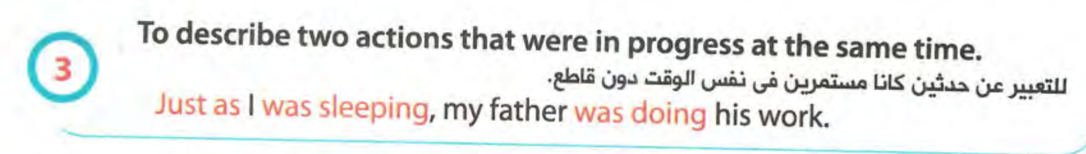

**FORM**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Affirmative** | I/He/She/It + was + v-ing<br>• He was playing games all day yesterday.<br>They/We/You + were + v-ing<br>• They were playing games all day yesterday. |
| **Negative** | I/He/She/It + wasn't + v-ing<br>• I wasn't playing games all day yesterday.<br>They/We/You + weren't + v-ing<br>• They weren't playing games all day yesterday. |
| **Interrogative** | Was/Were + subject + v-ing?<br>• Was Samy playing games all day yesterday?<br>• Were you playing games all day yesterday?<br>Wh-word + was/were + subject + v-ing?<br>• Where were you playing yesterday? |
| **Passive** | Object + was/were + being + P.P.<br>• Games were being played all day yesterday. |

**USAGE الاستخدام**

1. **To show that an action was in progress at a certain time.**
   حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد.
   At 6 o'clock yesterday, I was looking at the orangutans.

2. **To show that a shorter action happened during another longer action. (with the past simple)**
   حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر.
   I was leaning out of the boat when I dropped my camera.



**3** To describe two actions that were in progress at the same time.
للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت دون قاطع.
Just as I was sleeping, my father was doing his work.

**4** To describe the event in progress, at sometime between its beginning and its end.
حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت ما بين بدايته ونهايته.
From nine to eleven yesterday, I was writing some important essays.

## Key words

| while | when | as | just as | all (day, night, ...) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| بينما | عندما | بينما | (فى اللحظة التى) | طوال ... (مدة زمنية فى الماضى) |

**لاحظ استخدامات الروابط التالية:**

- حدثان قطع أحدهما الآخر. (الأحدث قطع الحدث الأقدم الذى بدأ أولًا).

While/As/Just as/When → Past continuous → Past simple

While he was playing the game, it rained.

Past simple → while/as/just as/when → Past continuous

The phone rang while he was studying his lessons.

- حدثان استمرا فى نفس الوقت بدون قاطع.

While/As/Just as/When → Past continuous → Past continuous

While I was studying my lessons, my sister was watching TV.

Past continuous → while/as/just as/when → Past continuous

He was eating his food while his mother was ironing his clothes.

Now, do you know when we use the past continuous tense? And how do we link it with the past simple tense?




## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 While we .................... lunch, my cousin suddenly arrived.
a) having b) are having c) were having d) had

2 My father travelled to London .................... 2005. *(Longman)*
a) while b) when c) in d) since

3 I was having my lunch when the phone .................... .
a) ring b) had rung c) was rung d) rang

4 Ahmed was writing a letter while his brothers .................... video games.
a) was playing b) played c) were playing d) are playing

5 The Second World War .................... from 1939 to 1945. *(Longman)*
a) will last b) has lasted c) had lasted d) lasted

6 My brother .................... his lessons when he heard a cry in the street.
a) studied b) studying c) was studying d) had studied

7 When I went to my friend's house, he .............. his room and asked me to help him.
a) painted b) had painted c) is painting d) was painting

8 What .................... when the lights went out last night?
a) you were doing b) were you doing c) are you doing d) have you done

9 I enjoyed seeing the view of the Nile while the plane .................... . *(Longman)*
a) lands b) landed c) is landing d) was landing

10 From 10 to 12 last Friday, an important match .................... .
a) was watching b) had watched
c) was watched d) was being watched

11 My son .................... to stay up late at night, but now he goes to bed at 2 a.m.
a) didn't use b) used c) isn't used d) wasn't used

12 Did your mother .................... to cook the food well?
a) used b) using c) use d) uses

13 While I ...................., a child suddenly ran in front of my car. Luckily, he was not injured. *(Longman)*
a) driving b) drove c) was driving d) am driving

14 My son .................... watch Egyptian movies, but now he does.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) wasn't used to d) used to not

15 While I was watching TV, my wife .................... our lunch.
a) was cooked b) cooks c) is cooking d) was cooking

16 Just as Nabil was running, he .................... to the ground.
a) falls b) fell c) was falling d) fall

17 When Rana came home, her sister .................... the dishes.
a) was washed b) is washing c) was washing d) has washed

18 My father .................... at 5 o'clock yesterday.
a) was slept b) sleeping c) was sleeping d) had slept

19 Did you see that? The car .................... by the helicopter.
a) was chasing b) was being chased
c) will be chased d) has been chased

20 .................... I was doing my homework, my brother was playing computer games.
a) Before b) After c) During d) While

21 .................... lunch at home yesterday?
a) Were you b) Did you have c) You had d) Do you have

22 My uncle .................... as a shop assistant for ten years only. Now, he is a worker in a factory. (Longman)
a) has worked b) had worked c) worked d) works

23 Nora .................... late when she was young. She no longer does now.
a) usually sleeps b) is used to sleeping
c) used to sleep d) is usually sleeping

24 I became used .................... up in the early morning.
a) get b) to get c) to getting d) to be got

25 He .................... save money. Now, he does as he wants to buy a car.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) uses to d) is used to

26 Ali .................... in Saudi Arabia for a long time and made a lot of money.
a) worked b) has worked c) was working d) works

27 Yousef .................... sleeps early as he ....................to when he was young.
a) never / is used b) no way / was used
c) no longer / used d) any longer / was used

28 Solyman didn't use to sleep early. This means .................... .
a) he sleeps early now b) he doesn't sleep early now
c) he never sleeps now d) he is sleeping now

29 I was eating my lunch when my father rang the doorbell. This means that ringing the bell happened .................... .
a) after my lunch b) during my lunch
c) before my lunch d) as soon as my lunch finished

30 Which one of the following sentences is correct?
a) She didn't met her friends yesterday. b) He didn't got my email last week.
c) I used to going to the club on Fridays. d) We didn't go out last night.

31 Which of the following isn't grammatically correct?
a) Did you use to sleep early?
b) I was watching the match when you called.
c) Did you liked my present?
d) I used to study my lessons at night.

# Test yourself




Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## Vocabulary

1 The world .................... has increased rapidly and we think that it is the main reason for many problems.
a) residents b) development c) population d) peoples

2 There were a lot of .................... as a result of the terrible accident on the highway.
a) survivors b) victims c) criminals d) supporters

3 Because of COVID-19, many people were .................... in hospitals and their homes.
a) insulated b) limited c) excited d) isolated

4 My little brother is a .................... eater. He doesn't eat many things.
a) volunteer b) protected c) fussy d) greedy

5 We should protect the natural environment .................... the Red Sea coast.
a) a long b) long c) along d) as long

6 We don't want to interfere in the .................... affairs شئون of other countries.
a) personnel b) inside c) internal d) privacy

7 You must get up early if you want to .................... your flight to London.
a) miss b) make c) catch d) drop

8 The .................... of technology on the new system of education is very clear nowadays.
a) impact b) affection c) crash d) destination

9 We should make sure that tourism in Egypt is .................... or our economy will be affected badly.
a) insulated b) isolated c) spoiled d) sustainable

10 We .................... for a week through the rainforest last year. It was fantastic!
a) trekked b) relaxed c) leant d) introduced

11 There was a meeting of local .................... to discuss ways of protecting animals.
a) tourists b) conservationists c) receptionists d) clerks

12 I used to live in a small fishing village on the .................... of the Red Sea.
a) coast b) cliff c) bank d) reef

13 During our holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh, we .................... diving many times in the Red Sea.
a) played b) went c) did d) had

14 It is known that a/an .................... mind is in a healthy body.

a) sound b) voice c) noisy d) angry

15 The lesson .................... me two hours to finish.

a) makes b) takes c) spends d) lasts

## Language

16 While my son was trying to catch the bus, he .................... his phone.

a) was dropping b) dropped c) has dropped d) was dropped

17 Our lunch .................... while I was doing my school homework.

a) was preparing b) is prepared
c) was being prepared d) has been prepared

18 While I was driving along this morning, I .................... about what they had said.

a) was thinking b) thought c) had thought d) am thinking

19 I never .................... to play any musical instrument as a child.

a) was learned b) learnt c) have learnt d) was learning

20 While .................... dinner, a stranger knocked on the door of my flat by mistake.

a) am having b) having c) I was having d) had

21 What .................... at 10 p.m. yesterday?

a) were you doing b) are you doing
c) have you done d) had you done

22 My father always .................... to work by train when he was young.

a) has gone b) was going c) went d) is going

23 I no longer sleep late as I .................... when I was still a young man.

a) am used b) am used to c) used d) used to

24 I .................... as a translator for 10 years. Now, I have my own company.

a) had worked b) work c) was worked d) worked

25 They .................... TV together all day yesterday as they finished their work.

a) were watching b) have watched c) had watched d) are watching

26 He .................... to the beach when he was younger.

a) is used to going b) was going c) always goes d) usually went

27 My sister .................... a gold ring while she was playing in her garden.

a) was finding b) finds c) found d) used to find

28 He .................... to prison as a result of his crimes.

a) was taken b) took c) was taking d) had taken

29 We usually .................... our grandfather when we were on holiday.

a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited

30 My money .................... yesterday, so I called the police.

a) stole b) was stolen c) steals d) is stolen

**Study**  Watch a video

Part (2)

# Lessons 3 & 4

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| active (adj) | نشيط |
| ancient (adj) | قديم (أثرى) |
| beautiful (adj) | جميل |
| boring (adj) | ممل |
| busy (adj) | مزدحم/مشغول |
| calm (adj) | هادئ |
| crowded (adj) | مزدحم |
| exotic (adj) | غريب |
| modern (adj)* | حديث/عصرى |
| new (adj) | جديد |
| noisy (adj) | مزعج |
| old (adj) | قديم |
| peaceful (adj) | هادئ/آمن/سِلْمى |
| quiet (adj) (n) | هادئ/هدوء |
| relax (v) – ed | يسترخى/يستريح |
| relaxing (adj) | مريح |

Can you put the word "modern" in a sentence?

 لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك 

### Vocabulary on Reading Texts

| | |
|---|---|
| actually (adv) | في الواقع |
| amazing (adj) | مدهش |
| away (adv) | بعيدًا |
| awful (adj) | فظيع |
| balcony (n) | بلكونة |
| brilliant (adj) | رائع |
| castle (n) | قلعة |
| cheap (adj) | رخيص |
| cry (v) (y-ied) | يبكى |
| expect (v) – ed | يتوقع |
| fascinating (adj) | ساحر/خلاب |
| gardening (n) | أعمال الحديقة |
| glad (adj) | سعيد |
| grow (v) | يزرع |
| hobby (n) | هواية |
| lettuce (n) | نبات الخس |
| resort (n) | منتجع |
| steal (v) | يسرق |
| teenager (n) | مراهق |
| temple (n) | معبد |
| tiny (adj) | صغير الحجم (ضئيل) |
| try (v) (y-ied) | يحاول/يجرب |
| underwater (adj) (adv) | تحت الماء |
| weather | الطقس |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| adventure (n) | مغامرة | on board (adv) | على متن (سفينة أو طائرة) |
| break (n) | فسحة/نزهة | paradise (n) | جنة |
| distance (n) | مسافة | stressed (adj) | مضغوط/مجهد |
| eco-trip (n) | رحلة ميدانية بيئية | support (n) (v) – ed | دعم/يدعم |
| explore (v) – d | يستكشف | unusual (adj) | غير معتاد |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 For me, watching a match alone is very .................. . I like this very much.
a) relaxed b) relaxing c) noisy d) worrying

2 I took my students on a trip to Cairo and they enjoyed visiting the .................. built by Salah Eldeen.
a) museum b) pyramids c) castle d) bridge

3 The clock on the wall of my room is so .................. that I find it difficult to sleep.
a) interesting b) quiet c) amazing d) noisy

4 Tourists like visiting our peaceful .................. in Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh.
a) temples b) resorts c) banks d) gardens

5 Alexandria is an absolutely .................. city. We all like it.
a) amazing b) boring c) new d) awful

6 My son is a very .................. doctor who has a very wonderful reputation.
a) brilliant b) relaxing c) stupid d) fascinating

7 My grandmother is over 80, but she is still very .................. .
a) crowded b) active c) exotic d) away

8 Although he looks 30 years old, he is .................. 45 years old.
a) finally b) musingly c) annually d) actually

9 The company .................. to complete work in April.
a) excepts b) believes c) expects d) includes

10 Luxor and Aswan are our greatest historic cities where there are a lot of .................. .
a) resorts b) lakes c) temples d) stadiums

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (be) stuck | عالق (غير قادر على الخروج) | tired of | متعب من |
| have a holiday | يأخذ إجازة | take photos | يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية |
| go away | يرحل | interested in | مهتم بـ |
| go down | ينخفض/تغرب (الشمس) | over the moon | سعيد جدًا |
| make good use of | يستغل | walk around | يتنزه |
| busy with | مشغول بـ | live in | يعيش فى |
| dive with | يغطس مع | loads of | كميات من |
| leave behind | يترك خلفه | on balcony | فى البلكونة |

Just reading them may help!

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| awe | يهاب/يرهب | awfulness | فظاعة | awful | سيئ/فظيع |
| bore | يضجر | boredom | ملل | boring<br>bored | ممل<br>شاعر بالملل |
| calm | يهدأ/يُهدِّئ | calmness | هدوء | calm | هادئ |
| crowd | يحشد/يدفع | crowd | حشد/جمع من الناس | crowded | مزدحم |
| fascinate | يفتن/يسحر | fascination | جاذبية/افتتان | fascinating<br>fascinated | ساحر<br>منبهر |
| pacify | يهدأ/يسكن | peace<br>peacefulness | سلام<br>هدوء | peaceful | آمن |
| quieten | يهدأ | quiet/quietness | هدوء/سكينة | quiet | هادئ |
| stick | يُقحم/يلصق | sticker<br>stickiness | ملصق<br>لزوجة | stuck<br>sticky | عالق<br>لزج |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|
| active | نشيط | energetic/dynamic | inactive/lazy/idle كسول/خامل |
| amazing | مدهش/مذهل | astonishing/fascinating | believable/ordinary معقول/عادى |
| ancient | قديم | old/antique | modern/new حديث/عصرى |
| beautiful | جميل | pretty/cute/handsome | ugly/awful قبيح |
| boring | ممل | dull/uninteresting | exciting/interesting مثير |
| busy | مزدحم | crowded/jammed | empty/free فارغ/خال |
| calm | هادئ | peaceful/quiet | nervous/upset/noisy متوتر/عصبى/مزعج |
| exotic | غريب | strange/unusual | common/normal شائع/عادى |
| fascinating | ساحر/خلاب | charming/interesting | boring/dull ممل |
| relaxing | مريح | comfortable/calm | noisy/worrying مزعج/صاخب/مقلق |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 He was .................... in the elevator مصعد for 2 hours till the power was restored.
a) stick b) stuck c) pleased d) struck

2 I have become so tired .................... my daily routine.
a) in b) of c) by d) on

3 I live in a very quiet and .................... village. I am happy to live here.
a) peaceful b) crowded c) noisy d) spicy

4 I went to the old company and cancelled the contract ألغيت العقد .................... without any troubles.
a) peacefully b) peace c) peaceful d) peacefulness

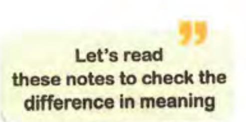
5 My hobby is .................... photos of the natural views all over Egypt.
a) making b) doing c) producing d) taking

6 My daughter was very happy when she passed all her exams. It means that she was .................... .
a) above the moon b) over the moon
c) on air d) over the sun

7 When I went to Sharm El-Sheikh, I found it ........... . I recommended it to my friends.
a) fascinated b) fascinated c) fascinating d) fascinatingly

8 The view was so relaxing that I slept in the balcony for a while. The antonym of the word "relaxing" is .................... .
a) comfortable b) calm c) worrying d) exciting

## Notes on Vocabulary




| | Word | Arabic | Example |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | child = kid | طفل صغير | The hotel is ideal for families with young children. |
| | toddler | طفل يتعلم المشى | Tamara is just a toddler; she can't go up the stairs by herself. |
| | teenager = adolescent | مراهق | Omar needs a special treatment because he is a teenager. |
| | youth | شاب | The police had questioned three youths, but then later released them without charge. |
| | adult | شخص بالغ | The cost of the trip is $60 for adults and $30 for children. |
| 2 | weather | الطقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة) | What's the weather like today? |
| | climate | المناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة) | The climate is cooler in the east of the country. |
| | atmosphere | الغلاف الجوى/الجو العام | These factories are releasing toxic gases into the atmosphere. |
| 3 | steal + (something) | يسرق (شيئًا) | He stole money from his neighbours, so he went to prison. |
| | rob + (place/person) | يسرق (من مكان أو شخص) | They killed four policemen while robbing a bank. |
| | rob + (somebody) of (something) | يسرق شيئًا (من شخص أو مكان) | They threatened to shoot him and robbed him of all his possessions. |

4 **find** يجد

**find** + (object) + (adjective)

- We found her body hidden in the bushes.
- When I reached home, I found my father angry.

**find** + (object 1) + (object 2) + to + inf.

Has he found himself/her/someone a place to live in yet?

**find** + that + (subject) + (verb)

The study found that dinosaurs lived on the earth 150 million years ago.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | explore | يستكشف (مكانًا) | Scientists are trying hard to explore other planets. |
| | discover | يكتشف شيئًا موجودًا بالفعل ولكن لم يكن معروفًا. | Professor Zewail discovered the femtosecond. |
| | invent | يخترع شيئًا لم يكن له وجود. | Graham Bill invented the telephone. |
| 6 | on board = aboard | على متن السفينة أو الطائرة | The crew are the people working aboard (on board). |
| | abroad | بالخارج | I want to travel abroad to do my studies. |
| | a board | لوح/سبورة | The teacher put some notes on a board in the classroom. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 We think that today's films are suitable for only .................... who are old enough to understand them.
a) adults b) toddlers c) children d) babies

2 There was a tense .................... during the final minutes of the game.
a) weather b) atmosphere c) climate d) air

3 Several people on the train were .................... of their money.
a) stolen b) taken c) robbed d) pirated

4 Someone .................... my sandwiches while I was at the break.
a) rob b) was stolen c) robbed d) stole

5 I went with my friends on a boat trip to .................... the River Nile.
a) invent b) discover c) explore d) find out

6 After arriving in the USA, I could hardly .................... myself a flat to live in permanently.
a) find b) explore c) discover d) search

7 Menna Arafa became a famous actress while she was a/an .................... . She was 15 years old.
a) toddler b) children c) adolescent d) teenager

8 Do you know who .................... the magnet المغناطيس?
a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) did

Practice  Practise more

# Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 To be able to think carefully about our problems, we have to .................... .
a) worry b) relax c) frighten d) fight

2 The latest technology especially computers and the internet have become an essential part of our .................... life.
a) old b) modern c) antique d) crowded

3 I was very angry when I .................... the truth about his bad behaviour.
a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) found

4 We all have to be careful about dealing with ............. who are at most 19 years old.
a) adults b) kids c) toddlers d) teenagers

5 I was really .................... on hearing that my son was badly injured while playing a football match.
a) happy b) pleaded c) excited d) upset

6 Mr Adel is the best .................... I have ever met. He has a very nice garden where he himself works.
a) gardening b) teacher c) director d) gardener

7 I can't believe that I am .................... going to Mecca for pilgrimage الحج. It has been my lifelong wish.
a) traditionally b) unfortunately c) actually d) impossibly

8 I am always worried when my little son is on the .................... alone as he might fall in the street.
a) balcony b) ceiling c) floor d) stair

9 Hurrghada is a very quiet and .................... city that tourists like to visit. *(Longman)*
a) deceitful b) excited c) peaceful d) tiring

10 Zahi Hawwas announced that his team had discovered a/an .................... tomb before a month.
a) quiet b) busy c) modern d) ancient

11 The thieves have .................... a lot of people of their money recently.
a) robbed b) stolen c) bought d) borrowed

12 The thieves .................... a huge sum of money from the bank.
a) robbed b) stole c) bought d) borrowed

13 Wearing a face mask when you get on public ............ is necessary nowadays. *(Longman)*
a) transport b) opinion c) communication d) amusement

14 We always feel .................... when the exams approach.
a) hungry b) dizzy c) stressed d) grateful

15 As I found that most of my friends were .................... that day, I left them early and went home.
a) modern b) calm c) brilliant d) boring

16 Have you seen her .................... fantastically on stage? She's absolutely brilliant.
a) discover b) perform c) give d) scan

17 The .................... in Egypt is nice all the year round, so tourists like visiting it.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) whether

18 As a result of my broken leg, I was .................... at home for nearly a month.
a) stick b) stuck c) worried d) struck

19 The true friend is the one who gives .................... at both happy and difficult times.
a) frustration b) disappointment c) presentation d) support

20 The engineers .................... the old area very well before they installed the equipment.
a) discovered b) explored c) invented d) created

21 The engineers .................... an ancient statue while digging the old area.
a) discovered b) explored c) grew d) created

22 In some parts of the world, plants and some kinds of trees .................... without man's interference.
a) are grown b) grows c) grow d) is growing

23 Your handwriting is so ....................; I need a magnifying glass to read it.
a) fantastic b) tiny c) amazing d) beautiful

24 Because of the weather, the coastal .................... are deserted in winter.
a) banks b) roads c) streets d) resorts

25 Try to .................... good use of your time. You have a lot of work to do.
a) have b) do c) give d) make

26 We got a load .................... complaints about the loud music.
a) from b) of c) by d) in

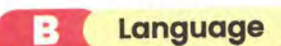
**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

27 I liked the time I spent with the crew .................... when I was travelling to Paris.
a) abroad b) on board c) on aboard d) broad e) aboard

28 Cairo is so beautiful. The antonyms of the word "beautiful" are .............. and .............. .
a) ugly b) attractive c) wonderful d) awful e) pretty

29 I always take my young .................... to the park every Friday.
a) adults b) grown-ups c) kids d) children e) youth

30 Luxor is one of the most fascinating cities in the world. The antonyms of the word "fascinating" are .............. and .............. .
a) exciting b) dull c) charming d) boring e) astonishing



## B Language

### Notes on the past simple and past continuous

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| While بينما<br>When عندما | + | (v-ing) بدون فاعل | -While playing, he fell down.<br>-When arriving, I had a shower. |
| During أثناء | + | (noun) | -During my stay in England, I learnt English. |
| On عند | + | (noun)/(v-ing) | -On seeing the police, the thief ran away. |

During my stay in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places. (While)

=While I was staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.

لابد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الأولى هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الثانية عند استخدام (while + v-ing)

While staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.






من الممكن استخدام الماضى المستمر مع تعبيرات all مع الماضى:

(all day/all night/all morning/all evening yesterday)

I was watching television all day yesterday.



بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم فى الماضى المستمر ولكن تستخدم فى الماضى البسيط حتى مع علامات الماضى المستمر وهى:

١- أفعال الحواس see – hear – smell – taste – touch – feel

٢- أفعال العاطفة love – like – hate – dislike – prefer

٣- أفعال التفكير understand – forget – remember – know – remind

٤- أفعال التملك owe – own – possess – have – belong – want

When my teacher was illustrating the lesson, I understood it.



من الممكن استـخدام زمن الماضى البسـيط للإشـارة إلى حدث تم فى الماضى لم يـُذكر وقت وقوعه ولكن معروف (كمعلومة) أنه تم فى الماضى (الماضى البديهى)

The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to stop the enemies' attacks.



**While + (حرف جر)**

**= While + subject + v. to (be) + (حرف جر)**

While on holiday, I had a great time.

While I was on holiday, I had a great time.

**5**

| It's (high) time<br>'d rather<br>I wish<br>Suppose | + (subject) + (التصريف الثانى) |
|---|---|

It's time I travelled abroad.

I wish I attended the party.

- أما إذا وجدنا كلمة دالة على الماضى مع 'd rather/I wish/suppose نستخدم زمن الماضى التام.

I'd rather I had travelled abroad two years ago.

I wish I had attended the party yesterday.

- التعبيرات السابقة إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل تصبح قاعدتها كالآتى:

**I wish + (to + inf.)** | **I'd rather + (inf.)** | **It's time + (to + inf.)**

It's time to travel abroad.

I wish to attend the party.



يمكن استخدام did + inf. للدلالة على التأكيد.

I visited him yesterday. = I did visit him yesterday.

**7**

كلمة for أصلًا كلمة دالة على زمن المضارع التام ولكن من الممكن استخدامها فى الماضى البسيط عند وجود ما يدل على انتهاء الحدث.

My father worked for this company for 20 years. Now, he has his own company.

**8**

من الممكن استخدام الكلمات الدالة على العادة فى المضارع البسيط مع الماضى البسيط لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى.

**Subj. + (always/often/usually/sometimes ...) + (التصريف الثانى)**

She always slept early on school days when she was a student.

- استخدام الزمن بعد because - so حسب معنى الجملة وليس لها زمن ثابت.

I couldn't see him because I was studying.

I didn't play the match because I hadn't trained enough.




He used to be clever, but now he isn't.

He used to study hard, but now he doesn't.

She didn't use to be active, but now she is.

He didn't use to sleep early, but now he does.

## Language Summary

# Past Simple

### Usage

- For completed actions in the past.
- For repeated actions or habits in the past.
- For retelling situations or stories.

### Affirmative

- He invited his friends for dinner last week.
- He sat at the beach with his friends.

### Question

- **A:** Did he invite his friends for dinner?
  **B:** Yes, he did. /No, I didn't.
- **A:** When did he invite his friends for dinner?
  **B:** He invited his friends for dinner last week.

### Negative

- He didn't invite his friends for dinner last week.
- He didn't sat at the beach with his friends.

# Past Continuous

### Usage

- An action was in progress at a certain time.
- Two actions that were in progress at the same time.

### Affirmative

- I was walking to university while I was listening to music.
- They were walking to university while they were eating.

### Question

- **A:** Were you walking to university?
  **B:** Yes, I was. /No, I wasn't.
- **A:** What were they doing while they were walking?
  **B:** They were eating.

### Negative

- I wasn't walking to university.
- They weren't walking to university.

**Practice**  Practise more

## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Anwar .................... all yesterday evening, so he didn't watch the match.
a) is sleeping b) had slept c) was sleeping d) was slept

2 During .................... in Sharm, I swam in the sea every morning.
a) staying b) stayed c) my stay d) being stayed

3 .................... running down the road, I crashed into a tree.
a) On b) As c) As soon as d) By

4 I'd rather you .................... out alone late today.
a) not going b) hadn't gone c) didn't go d) not go

5 At a quarter to ten, I .................... home with some of my friends.
a) walked b) was walking c) was walked d) had walked

6 I met a lot of my old friends .................... my cousin's wedding party. *(Longman)*
a) since b) during c) when d) while

7 I couldn't go out with my friends because I ........... my mother with the housework.
a) helped b) was helping c) had helped d) help

8 I was having a shower, so I .................... the telephone.
a) didn't hear b) wasn't hearing c) haven't heard d) hearing

9 For a long time yesterday, my father .................... in his office.
a) working b) has worked c) worked d) was working

10 I was playing football with my friends .................... I broke my leg.
a) while b) on c) as d) when

11 My uncle .................... for the police for twenty years before he retired.
a) works b) worked c) has worked d) used to work

12 We were doing our homework while our little brother .................... TV. *(Longman)*
a) had watched b) was watching c) watches d) is watching

13 I didn't accept my friend's invitation to dinner as I .................... for my exam.
a) revised b) are revising c) was revising d) had revised

14 I would rather he .................... my camera. *(Longman)*
a) haven't broken b) hadn't broken c) didn't break d) not break

15 Mum prepared lots of food for the party .................... the night.
a) while b) when c) during d) since

16 He was very annoyed, as he was travelling by bus when someone ............ his watch.
a) was stealing b) has stolen c) had stolen d) stole

17 While we .................... on holiday in Alexandria, we met many of our old friends.
a) were being b) are c) have been d) were

**18** **Suppose you .................... a bag of money, what would you do?**
a) found b) have found c) will find d) was finding

**19** **I was watching TV .................... my father returned from the office.** (Longman)
a) when b) while c) just as d) since

**20** **While ...................., the baby smiled at the doctor.**
a) examining b) was examining
c) being examined d) was being examined

**21** **I'd rather .................... early every day.**
a) sleep b) to sleep c) slept d) had slept

**22** **I'd rather my son .................... hard last year.**
a) studied b) had studied c) study d) to study

**23** **I wish I .................... Amr Diab in Alexandria last week.**
a) meet b) to meet c) met d) had met

**24** **I hadn't spoken to him much, but he .................... to be a very nice man.**
a) seeming b) is seeming c) was seeming d) seemed

**25** **I .................... for this company for 5 years, but I like my current company more.**
a) have worked b) working c) worked d) has worked

**26** **Salwa always set the table for lunch. This sentence .................... .**
a) is a present habit b) was a past habit
c) always takes place d) never took place

**27** **While on holiday, I was sent a task to do by my manager. Who was on holiday?**
a) The manager. b) The speaker. c) The speaker's kids. d) No one.

**28** **I worked for the army for a long time. This means .................... .**
a) I no longer work for it b) I still work for it
c) I didn't work for it d) I have always worked for it

**29** **While drinking juice, Mona and her friends were watching TV. This means ....................**
a) Mona was watching TV alone and her friends were drinking juice.
b) Mona's friends only were drinking juice while watching TV.
c) Mona and her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
d) Mona said her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.

**30** **While studying the lessons, I phoned my friend to ask him about the party. Who was studying?**
a) It was my friend. b) It was me.
c) Both my friend and me. d) Neither my friend nor me.

**31** **I used to be fat. This means I am .................... now.**
a) fat b) no longer thin c) not fat d) overweight

**32** **I wish I hadn't got up late. This means the speaker .................... up early.**
a) got b) didn't get c) has got d) never gets

# Test yourself




Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Vocabulary

1 I saw a lot of exotic plants during my visit to Al-Azhar Park in Cairo. The word "exotic" here means .................... .
a) familiar b) known c) strange d) common

2 Nader is interested .................... doing exercise to be fit.
a) on b) of c) with d) in

3 It was a .................... piece of cake. I felt as if I ate nothing.
a) tiny b) huge c) big d) massive

4 Many people prefer to live in countries where the .................... is fine most of the year.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) sun

5 On getting on the train, we found it so .................... that we had to stand all way to our station.
a) empty b) crowded c) relaxing d) noisy

6 Most of people who were travelling with me .................... the ship were so friendly.
a) a board b) abroad c) aboard d) on aboard

7 I enjoy the peace and .................... of the countryside.
a) quite b) quit c) silent d) quiet

8 Mr Adham taught us how to .................... use of our free time usefully.
a) have b) do c) give d) make

9 He is so bored. All his family members are away on holidays and he is .................... at home.
a) stuck b) exotic c) released d) freed

10 At the circus, the clown .................... the children with his magic tricks.
a) designed b) limited c) fascinated d) existed

11 It was a good decision that we didn't go camping last weekend as the weather was .................... .
a) lawful b) awful c) fascinating d) noisy

12 Don't worry! Your son is now 15 years old and is acting as a normal .................... .
a) adolescence b) kid c) teenager d) adult

13 Sometimes I enjoy my English lessons, but at other times I find them really ............ .
a) boredom b) bore c) bored d) boring

14 Luxor is famous for its .................... monuments and temples.
a) strange b) ancient c) modern d) dull

15 **Mohamed Salah was .................... the moon when he won the Champions League Cup.**

a) under b) after c) over d) above

## Language

16 **I'd rather they .................... us about the accident.**

a) tell b) have told c) told d) were telling

17 **Yousra used to live in Cairo, but now she .................... .**

a) hasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) doesn't

18 **Hesham .................... us to the public library when the car broke down.**

a) is taking b) had taken c) was taking d) has taken

19 **Huda .................... from the early morning to the noon. I couldn't see her.**

a) was studying b) is studying c) has studied d) studied

20 **When I saw the wallet, I was sure that it .................... to my brother.**

a) wasn't belonging b) hadn't belonged
c) didn't belong d) doesn't belong

21 **While the laptop ...................., I was using my friend's.**

a) was fixed b) was fixing c) had fixed d) was being fixed

22 **.................... the meeting, we discussed all the urgent topics.**

a) When b) During c) While d) Until

23 **I wish we .................... a meeting to discuss our problems.**

a) to have b) will have c) had d) are having

24 **While .................... by his mother, the baby gave a loud cry.**

a) having bathed b) he was bathing c) was bathed d) being bathed

25 **My father used to be a heavy smoker when he was young, but now he .................... .**

a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) won't

26 **.................... I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.**

a) Since b) During c) While d) After

27 **I .................... fast food or fizzy drinks.**

a) don't use to b) didn't use to c) am not used to d) wasn't used for

28 **.................... the flight, I felt ill.**

a) While b) When c) During d) As soon as

29 **.................... studying at Oxford, I visited many attractions in London.**

a) As b) While c) Just as d) During

30 **.................... our journey to Aswan, we saw a lot of monuments.**

a) During b) When c) While d) As

Study | Watch a video | Part (3) Lessons 5 & 6

## Chapter 1

### Vocabulary

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| admiral | أميرال (رتبة بحرية) | pale | باهت/شاحب اللون |
| adventures | مغامرات | perhaps | ربما |
| blind | أعمى/كفيف | point | يشير |
| cliffs | منحدرات صخرية | probably | من المحتمل |
| captain | قبطان | quiet | هادئ |
| dare | يجرؤ | realise | يدرك |
| dead | ميت | sailor | بحار |
| frightened | خائف | scar | ندب/أثر جرح |
| grab | يجذب/ينتزع | suddenly | فجأة |
| guarding | حراسة | surprised | مندهش |
| gun | بندقية | sword | سيف |
| inn | حانة | terrible | فظيع |
| island | جزيرة | treasure | كنز |
| neighbours | الجيران | village | قرية |

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| as quickly as we could | بأسرع ما يمكننا | point towards | يشير نحو |
| be frightened by | خائف من | point to | يشير إلى |
| come down | ينزل | run outside | يجرى للخارج |
| continue + (v-ing) | يستمر فى | spend + (v-ing) | يقضى |
| dare to | يجرؤ على | talk about | يتحدث عن |
| decide to | يقرر أن | tell about | يحكى عن |
| fall over | يسقط | walk back into | يعود إلى |
| fall to the floor | يسقط على الأرض | walk into | يدخل |
| look around | ينظر حول | write about | يكتب عن |
| look pale | تبدو باهتة | | |




## Novel Exercises
## Chapter (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The doctor says that the wound is quite deep and will probably leave a ............ .
a) scare b) scar c) guard d) fear

2 The thief ............ the lady's bag and ran away. *(Longman)*
a) gained b) gaped c) grabbed d) glued

3 Hundreds of years ago, soldiers carried ............ to fight with during wars.
a) swords b) submarines c) tanks d) treasures

4 We were very tired and hungry, so we stopped at a/an ............ to rest and had a meal.
a) cave b) island c) inn d) cliff

5 You look sick and ............; you need to see a doctor. *(Longman)*
a) fit b) pale c) exhausting d) well

6 You should be very careful while driving. The ............ is very steep and dangerous.
a) island b) cliff c) map d) key

7 The secretary didn't ............ to tell the manager the bad news. *(Longman)*
a) dare b) adapt c) do d) enable

8 We need to have weapons to ............ these isolated farms against attack.
a) guard b) hide c) owe d) own

9 The operation left their son ............ and brain-damaged.
a) adult b) big c) blind d) quiet

10 Mr Kamal ............ a lot of money to the bank, so he might sell his car to repay it.
a) hides b) owns c) owes d) grabs

11 As a young man, he went off to Africa, and had a lot of ............ during his expedition there.
a) neighbours b) adventures c) fingers d) jackets

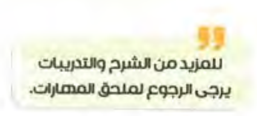
12 She was exhausted but she ............ who the man in the photograph was.
a) realised b) left c) turned d) pointed

13 A/An ............ is a high rank in the British or US navy.
a) captain b) guard c) clerk d) admiral

14 The mother cleaned her child up because he ............ in the mud yesterday.
a) looked around b) based in c) fell over d) depended on

15 The officer managed to take the ............ from the thief's hand.
a) arrow b) tank c) gun d) rocket







**To write about tourism, you can focus on the following:**

1. The importance of tourism for our country.
2. The well-known attractions in your country.
3. The kinds of tourism.
4. What ecotourism is and why it is so important.
5. How individuals and government can encourage tourists to come to Egypt.

## Model Essay

### Tourism

**Introduction**

It is known that tourism is very important for the state and the individuals as well. Tourism helps countries to increase their national income and brings hard currency that helps to improve their economy.

**Main body**

Tourism is very helpful in exchanging different cultures. However, tourism may have some disadvantages, especially for the country's inhabitants. Streets and roads, towns and cities, all places became very noisy and crowded, so people can't shop or go to their work easily.

There are some kinds of tourism, such as ecotourism, health tourism and business tourism. Ecotourism is the one in which tourists should keep the country they visit clean without doing any damage to the environment.

**Conclusion**

We all must cooperate to encourage tourists to visit Egypt. The government should build modern hotels, restaurants, good roads and resorts for tourists. In addition, we as individuals should be friendly and respectful towards tourists.

# Practice — Practise more — Skills Exercises

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Motor cars are highly desirable for obvious reasons. We should recognise this and adjust ourselves to accept this as a must. It is no use complaining and attacking the motorists; most of us are motorists. It is nonsense[1] to say that the countryside is polluted and cities and towns are spoilt as a result of traffic. If cars were banned, the alternative[2] would be the return to the isolated communities of the past. Also, motorists make possible huge industries all over the world and provide employment to millions of workers and employees. Making stricter[3] laws is not the best solution. The best solution is to provide better road facilities. One-way streets in big cities, towns and roads can better[4] conditions. There would be a world-wide network for motorways. The use of multi-storey and underground car parks can do wonders. Possible introduction of small electric cars for cities in the future and cars on rails is what designers are planning for tomorrow's world.

Again, exceeding[5] speed limits should be too severe[6] and more costly to reduce the annual toll of human life. Some governments are to blame because motorists pay vast sums on road tax, purchase tax, oil tax, etc. But it is a pity that only a small proportion[7] of the money paid is used to improve road conditions.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1** Better road facilities .................. .

a) are of no use
b) have beneficial effect
c) are the result of strict laws
d) are undesirable for obvious reasons

**2** Banning cars .................. .

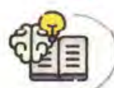
a) is the only alternative
b) brings about primitive and isolated communities
c) will cost huge sums of money
d) needs stricter laws

**3** It is inadvisable for motorists .................. .

a) to improve road conditions
b) to solve the accident problem
c) to exceed speed limits
d) to plan for tomorrow's world

**4** Motor cars are highly desirable. This means .................. .

a) they have high desire
b) people very much like to have cars
c) people very much dislike cars
d) motor cars are to blame for the accident problem



(1) لا شيء
(2) بديل
(3) صارمة اكثر
(4) يحسن
(5) تجاوز
(6) شديد/قاس
(7) مبلغ/كمية

5 One advantage of motorists is that they ................ .
a) provide job opportunities
b) reduce pollution
c) provide road facilities
d) plan for the future

6 Designers are planning to design ................ for tomorrow's world.
a) electric cars
b) steam cars
c) cars on rails
d) a & c

7 A suitable title for the passage may be ................ .
a) Banning motor cars
b) Solving the problems of cars and roads
c) Speed limits
d) The return of isolated communities

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Youth are the backbone of any nation and the base of its progress. So, governments should help them to be better citizens.
a) الشباب هم العظمة الخلفية لأية أمة وقاعدة تأخرها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
b) الكبار هم العظمة الظهرية لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
c) الشباب هم العمود الفقرى لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
d) الشباب هم العمود الفقرى لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات إهمالهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.

2 Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure. With that in mind, it should be filled with hard work.
a) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك فى الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
b) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك فى الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجيد.
c) الرجل يعرف جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من الرسوب والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك فى الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
d) انت تعرف يارجل أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك فى الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون فارغة بالعمل الجاد.

3 The government pays great attention to women and provides them with education, jobs and health and social care.
a) تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا عاديًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والصحة والرعاية الاجتماعية.
b) الحكومة تدفع اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعلم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
c) تدفع الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والمجتمعية.
d) تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.

4 Parents should have an effective role in pushing and encouraging their children to participate in their country's progress.
a) ينبغى أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال فى دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تقدم بلدهم
b) يجب أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال فى رفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تقدم بلدهم.
c) للوالدين دور فعال فى دفع وإحباط أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تقدم بلدهم.
d) على الوالدين دور فعال فى دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تأخر بلدهم.

5 There is no doubt that the reform of education is a must even if we spend millions of money on it.

a) هناك لا شك أن إفساد التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.

b) مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو غير ضرورى حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.

c) مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.

d) يوجد شك أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا الآلاف من الأموال عليه.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 من المحتمل أن تتحقق فى المستقبل سياحة الفضاء والتى ستجذب الكثير من الناس وستحقق أرباحا خيالية.

a) It is probably that space tourist will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.

b) It is possible that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make small profits.

c) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.

d) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will pull many people and make huge profits.

7 لقد أجبرت مشكلة الإسكان الكثير من الشباب على رفض الزواج بسبب صعوبة الحصول على شقة.

a) The housing problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

b) The overpopulation problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

c) The pollution problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.

d) Forced the housing problem many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining a flat.

8 على الحكومة أن تهتم بالمشروعات الإنتاجية وذلك لزيادة الإنتاج ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل المواطنين.

a) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to decrease production and raise the level of living for all citizens.

b) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.

c) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and rise the level of living for all citizens.

d) The government should pay attention to produce projects in order not to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.

9 كل ما نحلم به ونتمنى الحصول عليه هو فرص حقيقية للتعليم والعمل والرعاية الصحية حتى نحيا حياة سعيدة.

a) All we dream about and hope to get is real opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy life.

b) Every we dream about and hope to get is fake opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy life.

c) The whole we dream about and hope to get is real opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy live.

d) All we dream of and hope to get is real opportunities for education, works and health care so that we can live a happy life.

10 نحن جميعًا نعتبر الإنترنت معجزة هذا العصر حيث إنه أصبح ضرورة لا يمكن الاستغناء عنها في كل مجالات الحياة.

a) We all consider the website a disability of this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all areas of life.

b) We all respect the internet a miracle of this time, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all areas of life.

c) We all consider the internet a miracle of this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all fields of life.

d) We all regard the internet a marble of this asr, as it has become a dispensable necessity in all areas of life.

## 3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

The advantages of ecotourism in your country.

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ............

I used the right structure. ............

I used a topic sentence. ............

I wrote the conclusion. ............

I used the right punctuation. ............




## Al-Adwaa Test

40

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 It was clear that the audiences liked the amazing show. The antonyms of the word "amazing" are .................... and .................... .
a) crowded b) pretty c) astonishing d) believable e) ordinary

2 Many animals are .................... nowadays because of climate change.
a) endangered b) dangerous c) danger d) in danger e) in dangerous

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 Egypt's monuments and historical sites are .................... . No country in the world has similar things.
a) terrible b) unique c) common d) scarce

4 You don't have to pay for your flights; they're .................... in the price of your holiday.
a) contained b) concluded c) enclosed d) included

5 She has a degree in .................... as she likes studying living things.
a) geology b) biology c) anthropology d) sociology

6 The zoo brought some .................... birds from New Guinea which exist only there.
a) exotic b) ancient c) old d) relaxing

7 My wife was very angry because of being .................... at home with too much housework.
a) comfortable b) active c) stuck d) beautiful

8 These flowers will grow in a cold .................... . They are suitable to be grown in Russia.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) day

9 You have to try to keep .................... so you have to practise sports.
a) crowded b) active c) exotic d) away

10 .................... his leadership of the company, he achieved a lot.
a) While b) On c) During d) When

11 When I met Ali yesterday, he .................... to hospital. I offered to go with him.
a) went b) was going c) had gone d) going

12 When I was watering the plants, it .................... to rain.
a) began b) begins c) has begun d) was beginning

13 What .................... when I entered the room?
a) you did b) you were doing
c) are you doing d) were you doing

14 Smoke .................... out of the fire yesterday morning.
a) was come b) was coming c) is coming d) comes

15 Did you go out last night or you .................. busy?

a) did b) were c) have d) are

16 Ali lived in Luxor for 10 years. This means that he ..................... .

a) is still living there
b) lives there now
c) never used to live there
d) lives in another city now

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Jack lay, quiet and unmoving, for thirty minutes while a stranger repeatedly stabbed[1] him with sharp needles, causing blood to pour steadily out of his leg. Jack was getting a tattoo. His friend Tony had recently got a tattoo, and Jack was so impressed by Tony's bravery. Getting a tattoo because your friends and peers have one is just one of the reasons why a lot of young people in North America get tattoos. Peer pressure[2], media influence, and personal expression are some of the common reasons for wearing tattoos today. Sometimes, wearing a tattoo can be a sign that you belong to a certain group. Some of these groups wear only brand-name clothes. When one's friends are all doing something, that person is more likely to do the same thing. The media is another big influence behind the popularity[3] of tattoos in North America. Tattoos can be seen on people appearing in commercials selling expensive cars. Famous sports heroes with tattoos are shown in magazines. Fashion models are often seen in magazines and on TV wearing designer clothes that show their bodies tattooed with detailed and colourful patterns. These media images link tattoos to ideas of wealth, success, and status. As a result, many people decide to get a tattoo for its fashion and status value.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Jack was stabbed for thirty minutes with a needle because .................. .

a) he was getting a tattoo
b) he was getting his ears pierced
c) he was getting acupuncture
d) he was getting a nose ring

18 According to the passage, some people get tattoos because .................. .

a) they like pain
b) they think it will wash off in the bath
c) they are religious
d) they think it is fashionable

19 Jack thinks people who get tattoos are .................. .

a) old-fashioned b) cowardly c) brave d) foolish

20 The reason Jack wanted to get a tattoo was .................. .

a) the influence of friends
b) a desire to express himself
c) the influence of the media
d) all the previous answers



(1) طعن
(2) تأثير الرفاق
(3) شيوع/شهرة

**21** The best title to this passage is "..................".

a) The benefits of tattoos
b) Where people get tattoos
c) The dangers of tattoos
d) Why people get tattoos

**22** According to the passage, media images are linked to .................. .

a) wealth
b) terrorism
c) failure
d) a, b & c

**23** The underlined word "His" refers to .................. .

a) Tony
b) Jack
c) Tony's friend
d) Jack's father

**24 Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن اكتساب اللغة الإنجليزية من الممكن أن يكون من خلال مشاهدة الأفلام والاستماع للأغانى وكذلك قراءة القصص والكتب باللغة الإنجليزية.

a) The acquisition of the English language can be done through watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
b) The obtaining of the English language can be done thorough watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books with English.
c) The gaining of the English language can happen throw watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
d) The winning of the English language can be through watching series, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books with English.

**25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Our need of water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we must rationalise our use of water or we will face serious problems.

a) من المتوقع أن تقل حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
b) تتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر فى المستقبل البعيد، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
c) حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر من المتوقع أن تزداد فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل جادة.
d) من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه فى مصر فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

**26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Why people travel abroad.

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 286



# Supporting the Community

## Unit 2

## Objectives




**Reading** : A text about Egyptian people who help their communities

**Writing** : Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah

**Listening** : An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah

**Speaking** : Discussion about helping people; making arrangements

**Language** : Present and past simple; Present simple passive

**Life Skills** : Empathy

Study

Watch a video

Part (1)
# Lessons 1 & 2

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| blood pressure (n) | ضغط الدم | *roar (n) (v) – ed | زئير/زمجرة/يزأر |
| generous (adj) | كريم | role model (n) | مثل أعلى/قدوة حسنة |
| iron (n) (v) – ed | حديد/يكوى | speed (n) (v) | سرعة/يسرع |
| iron levels (n) | نسبة مستويات الحديد (فى الدم) | support (n) (v) – ed | دعم/مساندة/يدعم |
| prestige (n) | احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة) | transplant (n) (v) – ed | زراعة الأعضاء/ينقل عضوًا |

Can you hear the roar of the lion? It's roaring loudly.


لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

### Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ability (n) | قدرة | founder (n) | مُؤَسِّس |
| admire (v) – d | يُعجب بـ | generation (n) | جيل |
| amongst (prep) | فيما بين/وسط | grow up (v) | ينضج |
| around (adv) | حول | happen (v) – ed | يحدث |
| benefits (n) | فوائد | happiness (n) | سعادة |
| blood (n) | دم | health (n) | صحة |
| call (v) – ed | يسمى | hometown (n) | موطن |
| cancer (n) | سرطان | hunt (v) – ed | يصطاد |
| chance (n) | فرصة | illness (n) | مرض |
| charity (n) | جمعية خيرية/العمل الخيرى | income (n) | دخل |
| check (v) – ed (n) | يفحص/فحص | injured (adj) | مصاب |
| community (n) | مجتمع | instead (adv) | بدلًا من ذلك |
| conservation (n) | حماية البيئة | knowledge (n) | معرفة |
| desire (v) – d (n) | يرغب/رغبة | long-term (adj) | طويل المدى |
| donate (v) – d | يتبرع بـ | nickname (n) | لقب/كنية |
| finals (n) | نهائيات | persuade (v) – d | يقنع |
| fondness (n) | ولع/شغف/إعجاب | reason (n) | سبب |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| recognise (v) – d | يتعرف | succeed (v) – ed | ينجح |
| reduce (v) – d | يقلل | task (n) | مهمة |
| regular (adj) | منتظم/معتاد | teenager (n) | مراهق |
| research (n) (v) – ed | بحث علمى/يقوم بعمل بحث علمى | the World Cup (n) | كأس العالم |
| respect (v) – ed | يحترم | track (v) – ed | يتتبع |
| save (v) – d | ينقذ/يوفر | traditionally (adv) | تقليديًا |
| score (v) – d | يحرز | views (n) | آراء |
| share (v) – d | يشارك | wish (n) | أمنية |
| shopping (n) | التسوق | | |

## Workbook Vocabulary

You don't need to memorise all at once.
You can divide them over 7 days.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| agreement (n) | اتفاق | intelligence (n) | ذكاء/جهاز المخابرات |
| compassion (n) | رحمة | movements (n) | حركات |
| documentary (n) | فيلم وثائقى | run past (v) | يسبق (فى الجرى) |
| great (adj) | عظيم | soccer (n) | كرة القدم |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 As a result of my daughter's voluntary work in her local ................., she was given an award.
a) conversation b) conservation c) documentary d) community

2 Nowadays, it is easy to ................. enemy planes on a radar screen.
a) track b) persuade c) trek d) share

3 After a lot of disputes نزاعات, the two countries managed to reach a/an ................. .
a) disagreement b) benefit c) agreement d) argument

4 It was very ................. of your brother to help you and lend you all that money.
a) greedy b) generous c) mean d) miserable

5 One of my friends always ................. a large sum of money to Cancer Research.
a) supports b) lends c) finds out d) donates

6 Zahi Hawass has detailed ................. of Ancient Egypt and its history.
a) knowledge b) foundation c) conservation d) news

7 The lion opened its huge mouth and ................. in a frightening way.
a) loaned b) tracked c) supported d) roared

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| badly injured | مصاب بشدة | give ... a nickname | يُعطى لقبًا |
| give ... a chance | يعطى فرصة | give blood | يتبرع بالدم |
| love-hate relationship | علاقة حب ممزوجة بالكراهية | get angry with | يغضب من شخص |
| on the roof of | على سطح | send ... to | يرسل ... لـ |
| sense of purpose | الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية | share with /in | يشارك مع/بـ |
| (be) admired for | يعجب لأجل | take part in | يشارك فى |
| benefit from | يستفيد من | take the chance | ينتهز الفرصة |
| benefit of | فائدة لـ | learn from | يتعلم من |
| find out | يكتشف | move to | ينتقل إلى |
| (be) praised for | يُمدح لأجل | respect from | احترام من |
| role model to | مثل أعلى لـ | | |

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| admire | يعجب بـ | admiration<br>admirer | إعجاب<br>معجب | admirable<br>admired<br>admiring | مثير للإعجاب<br>معجب<br>معبر عن الإعجاب |
| benefit* | يستفيد | benefit<br>beneficiary | فائدة<br>مستفيد | beneficial | مفيد/نافع |
| desire | يرغب/يطلب | desirability<br>desire | جاذبية/كون الشىء مرغوبـًا فيه<br>رغبة | desirable | مرغوب فيه |
| donate | يتبرع | donation<br>donor | تبرع<br>متبرع | ------------------------ | |
| found | يؤسس | founder<br>foundation | مؤسس<br>تأسيس/مؤسسة | founded | مرتكز على/مؤسس |
| ------------------------ | | generosity | كرم | generous | كريم |

- My sister benefits from the online videos.
- The internet has lots of benefits.
- My allowance is no longer beneficial to me.



| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| injure | يجرح | injury | إساءة/إصابة | injured | مصاب/جريح |
| persuade | يقنع | persuasion<br>persuasiveness | إقناع/قناعة<br>إقناع | persuasive | مقنع |
| regulate | يضبط/ينظم | regulation<br>regulator | نظام/ترتيب<br>مراقب/منظم | regulatory | تنظيمى/تقريرى |
| succeed | ينجح | success | نجاح | successful | ناجح |
| -------------------------- | | tradition<br>traditionalist | تقليد<br>شخص متمسك بالتقاليد | traditional | تقليدى |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|
| benefits | فوائد | advantages/profits | disadvantages/hindrances عيوب/عوائق |
| find out | يكتشف | discover/detect | conceal/hide يخفى |
| generous | كريم | open-handed/big-hearted | mean/close بخيل |
| happen | يحدث | occur/take place | cease/stop يتوقف |
| happiness | سعادة | pleasure/joy | displeasure/sadness حزن |
| injured | مصاب | wounded/hurt | healthy معافى |
| long-term | طويل المدى | long-lasting/durable/ continuing | short-term/temporary قصير المدى/مؤقت |
| praise | يمدح | appreciate/glorify | condemn/criticise ينتقد/يدين |
| prestige | احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة) | esteem/influence | insignificance/unimportance/ disrespect عدم احترام/عدم أهمية |
| support | يدعم | aid/assist | desert/abandon يتخلى عن |
| reduce | يقلل | decrease/cut down | increase/enlarge/expand يزيد/يوسع |
| take part in | يشارك فى | participate in/join | avoid/hinder/block يتجنب/يعيق |

Try to put each row in sentences.

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The accident was very terrible and many people were ................... .

a) injure b) injury c) injured d) injuring

2 While walking in the street, my son was ................... by a wild dog.

a) attached b) attacked c) attracted d) attended

3 I always ................... angry with my children if they don't pray.

a) get b) take c) do d) give

4 There are a lot of benefits ................... the internet and social media.

a) from b) by c) with d) of

5 My grandfather is the ................... of this great company.

a) foundation b) founder

c) found d) founded

6 We all should work together to support our country's economy. The synonym of "support" is "...................".

a) desert b) damage c) abandon d) assist

7 Generous people help both their families and poor people. The antonym of "generous" is "...................".

a) brave b) courageous

c) mean d) open-handed

8 It is ................... to sleep early and eat healthy food to be much healthier.

a) desire b) desirable

c) desirability d) desired

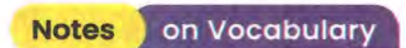
9 My son took ................... in the competition and came first.

a) place b) turns c) a place d) part

10 The writer's last novel was ................... .

a) a success b) successful

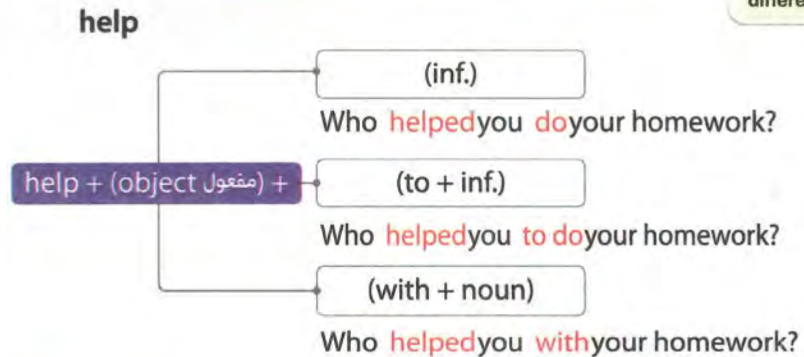
c) a successful one d) all mentioned




Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

## 1

**help**






لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسي من

(I can't help + v-ing)

When I see this picture, I can't help laughing.

## 2

| | |
|---|---|
| **blood transplant** عمليـة زرع خلايـا الدم «النخـاع» (لمريض سرطان الدم مثلًا) | Although blood transplant is an effective treatment for some conditions, it can cause complications. |
| **blood transfusion** عملية نقل الدم العادى | Blood transfusion is a way of adding blood to your body after an illness or injury. |

## 3

| | |
|---|---|
| **nickname** لقب/كنية | At school, her nickname was "Carrots" because of her red hair. |
| **surname** اسم العائلة | Probably no one has called him by his surname since he was in the army. |
| **first name = forename** اسم الشخص | What's your mother's first name? |
| **pen name** اسم مستعار | Under pen name, she starts writing reviews for a newspaper. |

## 4

| | |
|---|---|
| **decide to + inf.** يقرر أن | She decided to go out. |
| **decide on + noun** يختار/يحدد | You have to decide on your goal in life. |
| **decide that + subject + verb** يقرر أن | He decided that you should attend. |

| No. | Word | Example |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | **another** + اسم مفرد آخر<br>(للمفرد) (شـيء آخر إضافي أو مختلف) تأتي بعد another (الكميات – المسافات – فترات الوقت – المبالغ المالية) | - I like this cake. Can I have another piece?<br>- This pen is broken. Give me another one, please.<br>- I want to stay in this hotel for another 6 days. (فترة من الوقت) |
| | **other** + اسم جمع (آخرون)<br>**others** + فعل<br>الآخرون (لا يأتى بعدها اسم، وتفيد الجمع أيضًا) | - Some people like English. Other people don't like it.<br>- Some people like English. Others don't like it. |
| 6 | **transplant**<br>يـزرع أو ينقـل أعضاء من جسـم الإنسـان لجسم إنسان آخر. | A professional doctor could transplant a kidney into his body. |
| | **transmit**<br>يذيع يبث أو ينقل قنوات تليفزيونية | The match will be transmitted on local channels. |
| | **transport**<br>ينقل عن طريق وسيلة مواصلات | The goods are transported by huge ships. |
| 7 | **instead of + (noun/v-ing)**<br>بدلًا من | He travelled to Alexandria instead of staying at home. |
| | **instead, + subject + verb**<br>بدلًا من ذلك | Instead, he travelled to Tunisia to attend the conference. |
| 8 | **respected** محترم/يلقى احترامًا | My friend is a respected doctor. All people respect him. |
| | **respectful**<br>محترم/يظهر الاحترام للآخرين | All of us should be respectful of the authority. |
| | **respectable**<br>محترم أو مناسب من وجهة نظر المجتمع | - She comes from a respectable family.<br>- Please, try to wear something respectable to the party. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My friend is called Ali Mohammed Hassan. His .................... is Hassan.
a) pen name b) surname c) nickname d) first name

2 Some of my close friends went to university, .................... didn't.
a) other b) another c) the other d) others

3 Could you tell me the reason .................... your absence yesterday?
a) for b) why c) of d) who

4 The students listen to the lecture in .................... silence.
a) respectful b) respected c) respect d) respectable

5 My brother is specialised in heart .................... operations.
a) transport b) transmit c) transfer d) transplant

Practice  Practise more

## Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The car was travelling at a .................... of 100 kilometres an hour.
a) fast b) prestige c) speed d) height

2 Dr Magdy Yacoub is the .................... of Aswan Heart Centre.
a) finder b) founder c) foundation d) finding

3 I .................... the man who I met last week, but I couldn't remember his name.
a) realised b) understood c) organised d) recognised

4 High blood .................... is one of the most common diseases nowadays. *(Longman)*
a) pleasure b) leisure c) treasure d) pressure

5 Our neighbour is .................... . He always buys our children sweets and helps the needy. *(Longman)*
a) unkind b) ambitious c) generous d) jealous

6 The headmaster gave me the .................... of organising the school trip.
a) profession b) work c) task d) location

7 Iron levels in our blood should be .................... regularly. *(Longman)*
a) checked b) chocked c) shaken d) cheered

8 Rania suffered from many .................... problems during her childhood.
a) health b) healthy c) death d) earth

9 I don't think that exams are the best way to measure .................... .
a) intelligence b) friendship c) desire d) compassion

10 We walked around the house .................... the wonderful furniture and decorations.
a) admiring b) designing c) looking d) making

11 Our teacher gave us .................... chance to improve our marks of the last exam.
a) another b) others c) other d) the others

12 There are a lot of .................... in Egypt that raise money تجمع نقود to help the poor and the disabled.
a) generations b) locations c) clubs d) charities

13 Donating blood can help people if they need regular blood .................... .
a) transport b) transmit c) transform d) transfusion

14 After visiting that disgusting place, I had no .................... to visit it again.
a) desire b) hatred c) design d) affection

15 Those who are badly .................... in accidents could be in need of blood donations. *(Longman)*
a) injured b) attacked c) argued d) joined

16 Many people are attracted by the .................... of working for a top company.
a) greed b) generosity c) prestige d) sense

17 Yesterday, I watched a very wonderful .................... about some rare marine creatures مخلوقات بحرية.

a) documentary b) document c) research d) commentary

18 The builders have only just started to lay the .................... of the new school.

a) situations b) organisations c) establishments d) foundations

19 The company had a fairly .................... contract عقد that will last for a few months.

a) full-term b) half-term c) short-term d) long-term

20 My grandmother's .................... grew up without electricity or computers.

a) admiration b) generation c) tradition d) donation

21 My daughter's .................... is "Roro"; she likes it more than her real one.

a) first name b) surname c) nickname d) pen name

22 I wanted to find .................... how much her new dress cost but I couldn't.

a) about b) down c) away d) out

23 Mr Magdy always .................... angry with the students if they do something wrong.

a) gives b) gets c) makes d) does

24 Many hospitals all over Egypt are built with the help of many .................... whether rich or even poor.

a) donated b) donations c) donors d) donating

25 I didn't have enough .............. to make the child tell us what had happened to her.

a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuasive d) persuasively

26 Studying hard is really .................... to every student.

a) benefit b) beneficiary c) beneficial d) benefits

27 The players were completely ready to take .................... in the competition.

a) place b) turns c) share d) part

28 What makes all the Egyptians admire Mohamed Salah is his .................... .

a) generous b) generosity c) generously d) genre

29 I managed to .................... the manager to open a branch for the company in China.

a) persuade b) respect c) call d) happen

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

30 Our teacher always helps us .................... our lessons easily.

a) study b) studying c) to study d) to studying e) studies

31 We all should try hard to .................... our goals in life.

a) score b) sit c) arrive d) reach e) achieve

32 Hosting استضافة the Handball World Cup added to our country's international prestige. The synonyms of the word "prestige" are .................... and .................... .

a) esteem b) influence c) profit d) satisfaction e) displeasure

33 A terrible accident happened on the way to Cairo yesterday. The synonyms of the word "happened" are .................... and .................... .

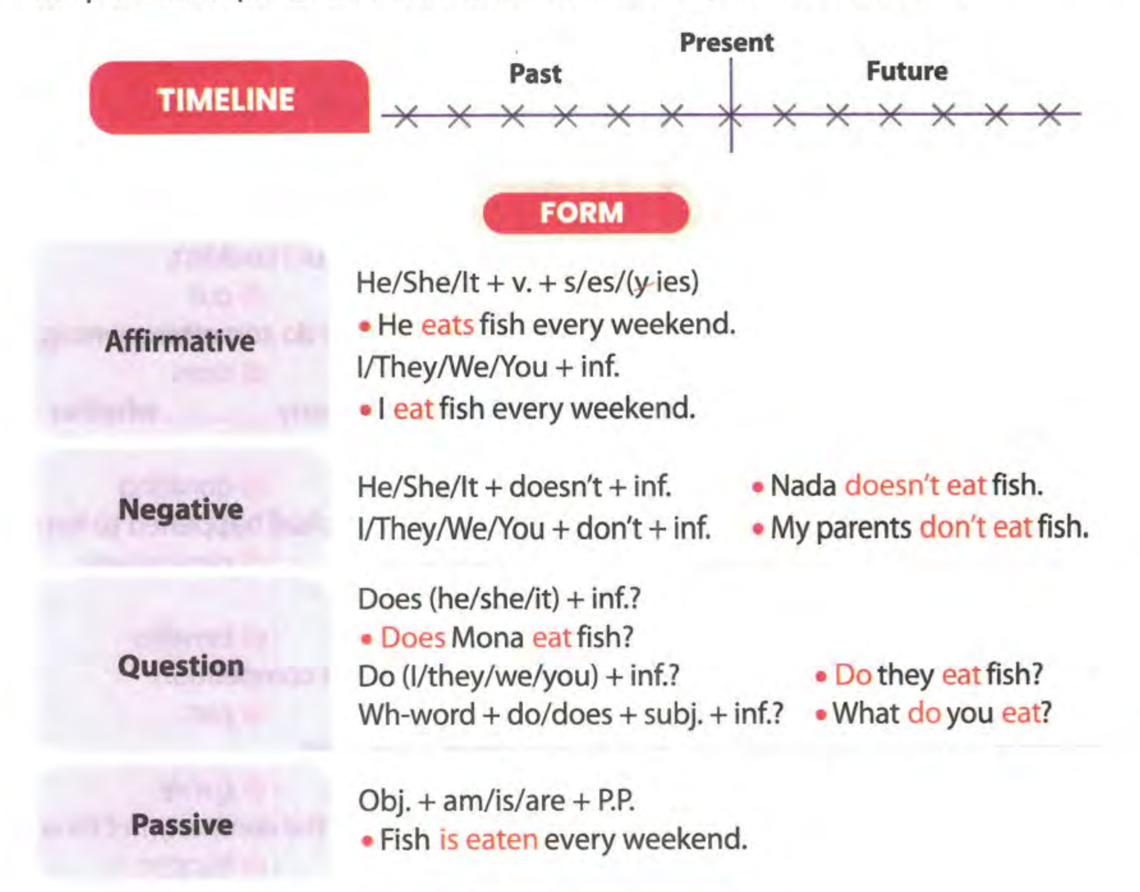
a) occurred b) took place c) increased d) stopped e) ceased

B Language

# 1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والتقاليد والحقائق.

The present simple tense is used to talk about habits, customs and facts.




## FORM

| | |
|---|---|
| **Affirmative** | He/She/It + v. + s/es/(y ies)<br>• He eats fish every weekend.<br>I/They/We/You + inf.<br>• I eat fish every weekend. |
| **Negative** | He/She/It + doesn't + inf. • Nada doesn't eat fish.<br>I/They/We/You + don't + inf. • My parents don't eat fish. |
| **Question** | Does (he/she/it) + inf.?<br>• Does Mona eat fish?<br>Do (I/they/we/you) + inf.? • Do they eat fish?<br>Wh-word + do/does + subj. + inf.? • What do you eat? |
| **Passive** | Obj. + am/is/are + P.P.<br>• Fish is eaten every weekend. |

## USAGE الاستخدام

**1** **For scientific and universal facts:** الحقائق العلمية والكونية.

- Metals expand when they are heated.
- The sun rises in the east.

**2** **For habits, daily routines and permanent situations:**
مع العادات والأنشطة اليومية المتكررة والمواقف الدائمة.

- I wake up early every day.
- Nora lives in Cairo.
- She always sleeps late during holidays.
- I work as a teacher.

**3** **For future timetables:** مع الجداول الزمنية الثابتة.

- The train from Cairo arrives at 5 o'clock tomorrow.
- The film starts at 7.30 and ends at 11.30 p.m.

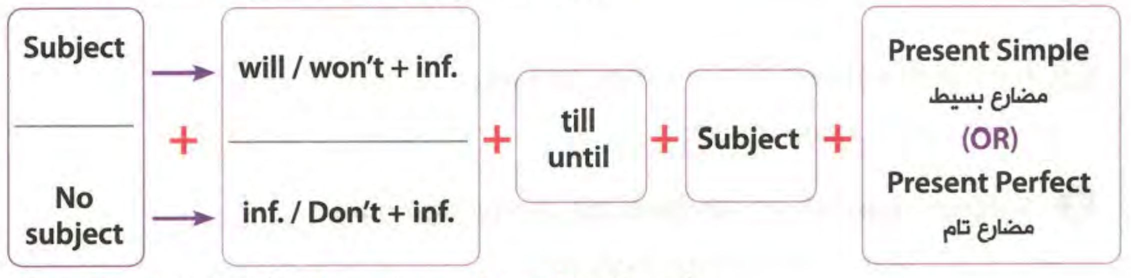
**4** **After time conjunctions to express the future:**

بعد الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن المستقبل.

• أمثلة الروابط الزمنية:




- As soon as my brother comes/has come, I will tell him everything.
- They are going to sleep after the film ends/has ended.
- When she sleeps/has slept, try to phone her.




- I won't go out until I phone/have phoned my friends.
- I will wait till my father comes/has come.
- Wait until he calls/has called his father to come.
- Don't sleep till you finish/have finished studying your lessons.

## Key words

**1. Adverbs of Frequency** ظروف التكرار

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| always | دائمًا | sometimes | أحيانًا | often | غالبًا | regularly | بانتظام |
| How often | كم مرة | seldom | نادرًا | generally | عمومًا | usually | عادةً |
| occasionally | من حين لآخر | frequently | باستمرار | | | never | أبدًا (للنفي) |
| rarely | نادرًا | hardly ever | بالكاد | scarcely | نادرًا | in general | بشكل عام |

always = at all times usually = as usual = as ever

occasionally = from time to time = now and then/again

- Rasha always sleeps late. = Rasha sleeps late at all times.
- I go to the zoo with my children from time to time.
= I occasionally go to the zoo with my children.

### 2. Adverbs of Time ظروف زمنية

- **every/each** (week/month/year/...)
- **in the** (morning, afternoon/evening)
- **at night/at noon/on** (Fridays/Sundays/...)
- **at the weekend/once/twice/three times a** (week/month/year/...)
- **daily/weekly/monthly/yearly = annually**



## Important Notes

التعبير عن العادات فى المضارع

**1. Subject + (am/is/are) + used to + (v-ing), noun or a pronoun.**

- He is used to sleeping early.

**2. It is + (someone's/صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.**

- It is her habit to study at night.

**3. Subject + (am/is/are) + in the habit of + (v-ing/noun)**

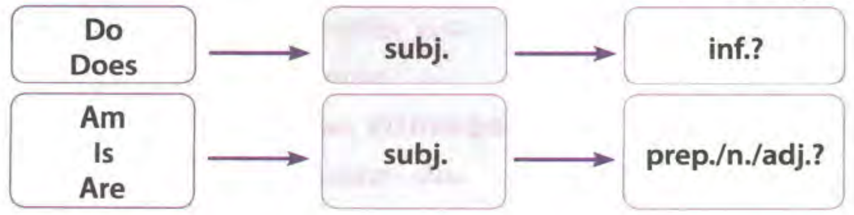
- He is in the habit of going to the shops early.

**4. Subject + (always/usually /often/...) + فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط**

- She always gets up early.

**الأفعال المساعدة فى المضارع البسيط**

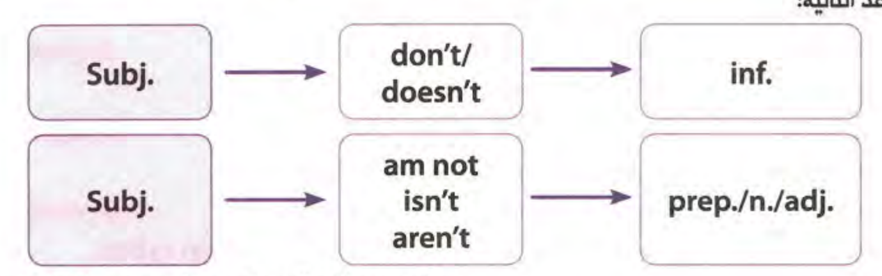
- تستخدم الأفعال المساعدة do/does لعمل سؤال فى المضارع البسيط ولكن هناك حالات تستخدم فيها v. to be
لاحظ القواعد التالية:



- Are you busy studying your lessons today?
- Do you study on Fridays?
- What is your father's job?
- Where does your father work?

- تستخدم الأفعال المساعدة don't/doesn't للنفى ولكن هناك حالات تستخدم فيها v. to be + not

لاحظ القواعد التالية:



| Subj. | → | don't/ doesn't | → | inf. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Subj. | → | am not<br>isn't<br>aren't | → | prep./n./adj. |

- She doesn't like watching football matches.
- They aren't happy because of losing the match.




١) تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد (v. to be).

- He usually comes to work early.
- He is always proud of his country.

٢) من الممكن أن تأتى (usually/sometimes) فى بداية الجملة أو فى آخرها.

- Sometimes, I drive my car to school.

٣) تأتى الظروف الزمنية إما فى بداية الجملة وإما فى نهايتها.

- I go to school every day.
- Every day, I go to school.

٤) لاحظ أن never لا تلغى (s/es) المضافة للفعل فى المضارع مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب.

- Nora never comes late.

٥) يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة جداول المواعيد الثابتة (timetable) مثل القطارات والطائرات والدروس.

- My train leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

## 2 Past Simple — زمن الماضى البسيط

**تم شرح زمن الماضى البسيط فى الوحدة السابقة، وللمراجعة السريعة عليه نتذكر ما يلى:**

- We travelled to Tanta yesterday. — حدث بدأ وانتهى
- He often slept late when he was young. — عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى
- First, we met our friends and then we went to the cinema together. — تتابع الأحداث
- I didn't see my friend when I went to the party. — نفى الماضى البسيط
- How did you win the last football match? — السؤال فى الماضى البسيط
- A very good match between Egypt and Nigeria was played yesterday. — المبنى للمجهول




## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My parents .................... me rewards when I get high marks.
a) are given b) are giving c) give d) gives

2 The shop .................... at 10 a.m. every day.
a) opening b) is opening c) open d) opens

3 I sometimes .................... articles for my school magazine.
a) write b) was writing c) is writing d) writes

4 In the solar system, all planets .................... around the sun in orbits.
a) moves b) move c) moved d) moving

5 Many people .................... to the stadium to watch the final match yesterday.
a) go b) went c) have been d) was going

6 I .................... have a toy train when I was a child. *(Longman)*
a) used to b) am used to c) used d) was used

7 It rarely .................... in Egypt except in some areas of Sinai.
a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing

8 When I was young, I usually .................... much time with my friends outside home.
a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent

9 The bus to Cairo .................... at exactly 7 a.m.
a) leaves b) left c) leave d) had left

10 They .................... English novels and books very often. They rarely do.
a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never reads

11 It is her habit to sleep late. She .................... this.
a) used to b) has been used c) was used to d) is used to

12 We usually .................... our grandparents before their death.
a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited

13 A: Did you visit your friend in hospital? B: Yes, I .................... him yesterday. *(Longman)*
a) visited b) have visited c) visit d) will visit

14 My uncle .................... late, is he?
a) is usually b) is never c) doesn't come d) comes

15 As soon as my father .................... home, I will tell him to take us on a picnic.
a) came b) have come c) comes d) come

16 A: .................... your parents usually donate blood? B: Yes, they always do so.
a) Do b) Did c) Does d) When

17 My father always .................... to work by train when he was young. *(Longman)*
a) has gone b) was going c) went d) is going

18 I last .................... my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria.

a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw

19 Noha no longer .................... horror films as she used to.

a) watches b) watched c) is watching d) watch

20 A: .................... Magdy usually late for school? B: Yes, Sir.

a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did

21 How often does Adel .................... to the school library? *(Longman)*

a) goes b) go c) going d) went

22 My father works as a doctor. He .................... busy treating patients.

a) always is b) is always c) is always being d) always

23 My brother didn't use to be busy, but now he .................... .

a) was b) 's been c) does d) is

24 Nothing else .................... to help the patient yesterday, so he became in a serious case.

a) didn't do b) is done c) wasn't done d) was done

25 We will go to the park after we .................... doing our work. *(Longman)*

a) finished b) finishing c) had finished d) finish

26 The sun .................... rises from the west.

a) hardly ever b) always c) never d) no longer

27 I .................... to work every morning; it is one of my good habits. *(Longman)*

a) used to walk b) am used to walking

c) walks d) always walked

28 Most shops in Cairo .................... until 9:00 a.m.

a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened

29 The plane lands at 5 o'clock tomorrow. This is a .................... .

a) present habit b) future fact c) timetable d) hope

30 My friend lives in Alexandria. This means .................... .

a) he doesn't live there b) it was his place of living one day

c) this is his temporary place of living d) this is his permanent place of living

31 The final match starts at 10 o'clock. This means .................... .

a) the final match never starts at 10 o'clock

b) the final match might start at 10 o'clock

c) the final match used to start at 10 o'clock

d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable

32 Liverpool is loved by everyone in our family. This means .................... .

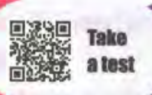
a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool

b) everyone in our family is loving Liverpool

c) Liverpool players love everyone in our family

d) Liverpool loves everyone in our family

# Test yourself




Part 1
**(Lessons 1 & 2)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1 My father needs a kidney .................... and we are waiting for a donor.
a) transport b) transplant c) transform d) transfer

2 To live well, one should get a .................... salary.
a) respect b) respective c) respectable d) respectful

3 More .................... is needed into the effects of COVID-19 on different body organs.
a) search b) reservation c) recovery d) research

4 Mr Ahmed has a negative .................... about football. He doesn't like it at all.
a) scene b) view c) sight d) scenery

5 Damanhour University was .................... in 2010. It consisted of 12 colleges at that time.
a) found b) founded c) published d) designed

6 A love-hate .................... is when you have feelings of love and hate for someone or something.
a) relationship b) fondness c) foundation d) participation

7 The new educational system will be of great .................... to students and teachers.
a) course b) injury c) benefit d) loss

8 Hello, Mr Kareem! You will .................... this locker خزانة with Mr Anas.
a) connect b) share c) attach d) link

9 I saw a lot of familiar faces .................... the crowd in the street yesterday.
a) above b) before c) amongst d) below

10 We need more .................... techniques to present our project to the manager.
a) admiring b) traditional c) generous d) persuasive

11 All doctors assure that natural blood .................... is 120/80.
a) pressure b) transfusion c) donation d) transplant

12 What makes me admire our friend more is his .................... .
a) genre b) generous c) generosity d) generously

13 What makes me admire my friend more is the fact that he is .................... .
a) genre b) generous c) generosity d) generously

14 This journalist has been publishing articles under a .................... as he doesn't seek fame.
a) surname b) first name c) pen name d) real name

15 We all should .................... our parents for all their efforts to raise us well.
a) criticise b) recognise c) deny d) praise

## Language

16 The River Nile .................... through Sudan and Egypt.

a) run b) ran c) runs d) was running

17 My son .................... plays in the club. He really enjoys it.

a) ever b) always c) doesn't d) never

18 The weather .................... warm, so I don't often wear heavy clothes.

a) is always b) always is c) was always d) always was

19 He reached home, .................... off his dirty clothes and had a shower.

a) took b) take c) had taken d) takes

20 Hurry up; the first lesson .................... at 8.30.

a) start b) will start c) starts d) started

21 Amr .................... such hard work, he is always lazy.

a) is used to b) used to c) isn't used to d) didn't use to

22 Students .................... by their teachers to do well in their exams every term.

a) encourage b) encouraged c) are encouraging d) are encouraged

23 After I .................... my work, I .................... to the club.

a) finish/will go b) will finish/go
c) had finished/will go d) have finished/went

24 Water .................... into steam when you boil it.

a) turn b) turns c) is turning d) has turned

25 He .................... gets up early. He is always late.

a) doesn't b) didn't c) never d) won't

26 Maya .................... to her school in her father's car.

a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go

27 In the past, it .................... in Egypt all the winter, and the weather was warm and sunny.

a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained

28 Salem is not punctual دقيق فى مواعيده, he .................... comes late.

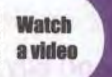
a) surely b) hardly ever c) always d) never

29 I .................... a meeting to discuss some problems in the company today, and now everything is OK.

a) have b) had had c) had d) am having

30 I didn't do anything wrong, so I didn't know why I .................... yesterday.

a) punished b) was punished
c) am punished d) wasn't punished

Study — Watch a video

Part (2)
# Lessons 3 & 4

## A Vocabulary



Link the new vocabulary to your daily life.
My aim is to be an engineer.




لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

### Vocabulary on Reading Texts

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *aim (n) | هدف | missing (adj) | مفقود |
| amazing (adj) | مذهل/مدهش | monitor (v) – ed | يراقب |
| attack (v) – ed | يهاجم | movements (n) | حركات |
| biologist (n) | عالم أحياء | nearby (adj) | قريب |
| cattle (n) | الماشية | organisation (n) | منظمة |
| change (v) – d (n) | يغير/تغيير | protect (v) – ed | يحمى |
| disappear (v) – ed | يختفى | responsibility (n) | مسئولية |
| employ (v) – ed | يوظف | safe (adj) | آمن |
| guardian (n) | وصى/حامٍ - حارس | skills (n) | مهارات |
| hunting (n) | الصيد | together (adv) | معًا |
| killings (n) | عمليات القتل | track (v) – ed | يتتبع |
| livestock (n) | ماشية | understand (v) | يفهم |
| local (adj) | محلى | villagers (n) | سكان القرى |

### Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| appearance (n) | مظهر خارجى | paw print (n) | أثر بصمة (مخلب) حيوان |
| empathy (n) | مشاركة وجدانية | personality (n) | شخصية |
| estimate (v) – d | يقدر | recent (adj) | حديث |
| experts (n) | خبراء | signs (n) | علامات |
| follow (v) – ed | يتبع/يرصد | tribe (n) | قبيلة |
| headquarters (n) | المركز الرئيسى | sense (n) | حاسة |
| locate (v) – d | يوجد/يقع فى | path (n) | ممر/طريق |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The huge factory in our city helps youth as it .................... a large number of them.
a) saves b) follows c) employs d) aims

2 Our teacher has a very strong and also friendly .................... in dealing with his students.
a) sense b) responsibility c) movement d) personality

3 There must be some .................... on highways to help us know where we are.
a) signals b) signs
c) tracks d) headquarters

4 I log onto the internet every day to get .................... information about currencies.
a) recent b) modern c) local d) missing

5 We must .................... the pollution levels in our water sources regularly and accurately.
a) protect b) change c) monitor d) follow

6 He said that his wallet .................... suddenly and we had to look for it everywhere.
a) appeared b) disappeared c) tracked d) missed

7 Egypt is a source of many .................... in all different fields all over the world.
a) headquarters b) villagers
c) guardians d) experts

8 Our patients don't have to go outside to be treated, they are treated in our .................... hospital.
a) local b) international
c) recent d) located

9 Making such beautiful jewellery needs great .................... .
a) personality b) estimation
c) search d) skill

10 Most young people nowadays have no particular .................... in their lives.
a) attacks b) movements
c) nicknames d) aims

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (be) based in | القائم فى/الموجود فى | go missing/get lost | يتوه/يضل الطريق |
| (be) based on | قائم على | make sure | يتأكد |
| do research | يقوم بعمل بحث | expert at/on/in | خبير فى |
| interested in | مهتم بـ | search for | يبحث عن |
| look for | يبحث عن | thanks to | بفضل |
| get together | يتقابل/يجتمع | worry about | يقلق على |
| give a sense of | يعطى إحساسًا بـ | help in | يساعد فى |

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| amaze | يدهش | amazement | دهشة/إعجاب | amazed<br>amazing | مندهش<br>مدهش |
| estimate* | يقدر | estimation | تقدير | estimated | مقدر |
| locate | يقع فى/يوجد | location | موقع | located | موجود فى موقع |
| save | ينقذ/يوفر | safety<br>safe | أمان<br>خزينة | safe | أمن |

- We need to estimate the distance.
- The estimation needs to be accurate.
- The estimated distance is quite accurate.

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| amazing | مدهش | astonishing/unbelievable | believable/ordinary | معقول/عادى |
| attack | هجوم | invasion/aggression | defence/resistance | دفاع/مقاومة |
| disappear | يختفى | vanish/cease | appear/come out | يظهر |
| employ | يوظف | hire/appoint | fire/discharge | يطرد |
| hope | أمل | longing/ambition/desire | despair/hopelessness | يأس |
| missing | مفقود | lost/absent | present/found | حاضر/موجود |
| understand | يفهم | grasp/comprehend | misunderstand | يسىء الفهم |
| nearby | قريب | close/near | far/faraway/distant/remote | بعيد/بعيد جدًا |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Most people all over the world are interested .................... football matches.
a) on b) in c) with d) of

2 The presence of the police .................... us a sense of safety.
a) made b) had c) took d) gave

3 Egypt is .................... in the north of the continent of Africa.
a) location b) locate
c) located d) locates

4 Can you send the ....................? I haven't been there before.
a) location b) foundation
c) situation d) title

5 While walking and talking on his mobile, my son suddenly went missing. The synonym of "missing" is "....................".
a) present b) found
c) exist d) lost

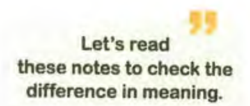
6 My close friend lives in a nearby village and so I always visit him. The opposite of "nearby" is "....................".
a) remote b) close
c) near d) b & c

7 Thanks .................... modern inventions, we have developed greatly.
a) with b) for c) at d) to

8 They are .................... some fascinating research on the language of dolphins.
a) making b) giving
c) taking d) doing

9 The building of the new train station in Cairo caused .................... to anyone who saw it.
a) amazing b) amazed
c) amaze d) amazement

10 The wonderful film that I watched yesterday is based .................... a true story.
a) in b) at c) from d) on




## Notes on Vocabulary

**1**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **work with** | يعمل مع | All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children. |
| **work for** | يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح | - My brother works for a big company in the city.<br>- Egypt works for peace in the Middle East. |
| **work in** | يعمل فى (مكان/مجال) | - I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.<br>- I work in Al-Salam company which is in October City. |
| **work on** | يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز) | The writer said that he was working on a new novel. |
| **work as** | يعمل (بوظيفة) | My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram Newspaper. |

**2**

**jobs ending with –ist** — وظائف تنتهى بالمقطع **– ist**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| scientist | عالم | biologist | عالم أحياء |
| pharmacist | صيدلانى | oculist | طبيب عيون |
| motorist | قائد مركبة | novelist | روائى |
| archaeologist | عالم آثار | artist | فنان/رسام |

**3**

| | |
|---|---|
| **as well as**<br>(v + ing OR noun بالإضافة إلى (تتبعها | As well as studying English, he studied physics and maths. |
| **as well as**<br>بالإضافة إلى (تربط بين فاعلين ،و فعل الجملة يتبع الفاعل الأول) | I, as well as Ali, like eating fish. |

**4**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **own** | يمتلك | He owns a big flat on the Nile bank. |
| **owe** (شخص to شىء) | يدين | He owes some money to his friend. |
| **lend** (شخص to شىء) (شىء + شخص) | يسلف | His friend lent him some money. |
| **borrow** (شخص from شىء) | يستلف | He borrowed some money from his friend. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **recent** حديث (من فترة قصيرة)/قريب العهد | This is a recent photo of my daughter. |
| 5 **modern** حديث/عصرى | Do you prefer modern or classical music? |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My sister works .................... a new short story to be published soon.
a) as b) on c) with d) for

2 My brother as well as I .................... part of the local charity in our neighbourhood.
a) am b) are c) is d) have

3 I have to pay him the money that I .................... to him.
a) lent b) owed c) borrowed d) owned

4 I have to pay him the money that I .................... from him.
a) lent b) owed
c) borrowed d) owned

5 I like to buy my medicine from this .................... as he is very clever and friendly.
a) pharmacy b) pharmacist
c) scientist d) biology

6 It's recommended to attach a/an .................... photo to your CV.
a) modern b) recent c) old d) historical

7 We need someone to work .................... a receptionist. They should be presentable حسن المظهر.
a) from b) in c) as d) for

8 I dream of working .................... an international company.
a) for b) as c) on d) out

9 My eyes are sore. Do you know a good ....................?
a) pharmacist b) biologist
c) scientist d) oculist

10 I don't work for anyone; I .................... a company.
a) owe b) own c) borrow d) employ



# Vocabulary
## General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I want to come first in the final exams. This is my ………………… .
a) aim b) movement c) skill d) ecosystem

2 If you want to get to your place easily, you must ………………… me.
a) estimate b) appear c) follow d) miss

3 A new restaurant has opened ………………… . We can go and have our dinner there.
a) nearby b) close c) nearly d) neatly

4 There will be a little ………………… in the weather next week. It will be hotter.
a) charge b) exchange c) movement d) change

5 We couldn't recognise him easily as he had changed his ………………… completely.
a) appearance b) role c) demonstration d) relation

6 Some factories ………………… children as young as seven which is not good.
a) donate b) employ c) pretend d) hunt

7 Where is the ………………… of the firm الشركة? I want to meet the manager.
a) high quarter b) headquarters c) head building d) headman

8 We all can see the slow ………………… of the clouds across the sky. They are so beautiful.
a) agreement b) development c) entertainment d) movement

9 Our brave armed forces are able to ………………… our country against any enemy at any time. *(Longman)*
a) respect b) attack c) suspect d) protect

10 Unfortunately, the factory's ………………… is too close to a residential area.
a) location b) located c) lies d) situation

11 The hunter followed the ………………… of the deer and he could catch it.
a) paw prints b) tricks c) fingerprints d) tracks

12 Vitamin C provides some ………………… against minor illnesses like the flu.
a) production b) deduction c) protection d) introduction

13 There are many ………………… happening recently in America, and the murderers haven't been arrested yet.
a) parties b) killings c) pranks d) plays

14 The nurses are to ………… the progress of the patients who are given the new drug.
a) monitor b) lose c) attack d) achieve

15 I, as well as my cousin, ………………… travelling to Alexandria next week.
a) am b) is c) are d) has

16 The increase of committing crimes has disturbed all people in our small ……………… .
a) research b) communication c) ecosystem d) community

17 Most of the people here have .................... with the homeless children and try to help them.

a) appearance b) empathy c) ecosystem d) research

18 Success in life is based .................... hard work and cooperation. *(Longman)*

a) on b) in c) at d) from

19 Thanks .................... modern technology, we can live a happy and comfortable life.

a) for b) with c) by d) to

20 Nowadays, international companies seek to .................... people from all over the world.

a) employ b) work c) search d) exist

21 A good teacher should allow students enough time to do an exercise alone. He just waits and .................... their behaviour and achievement. *(Longman)*

a) refuses b) monitors c) risks d) neglects

22 Cattle are important to the villagers, but they often go .................... or are attacked by lions.

a) lost b) missed c) losing d) missing

23 Scientists worked .................... developing the new vaccine last year.

a) for b) with c) as d) on

24 My friend's new story is based ............. a true situation that had happened to him.

a) on b) in c) at d) into

25 Omar is going to .................... research on the sea animals this semester.

a) join b) design c) do d) all mentioned

26 To cope with developed countries, we need more experts ............. different fields.

a) on b) in c) at d) all mentioned

27 The doctor was ............. when he saw the analyses التحاليل of the patient.

a) amazing b) amazed c) amaze d) amazement

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

28 She is going to employ more people to improve her work. The synonyms of the word "employ" are .................... and .................... .

a) fire b) hire c) grasp d) appear e) appoint

29 She was left unconscious after an attack in her own home. The antonyms of the word "attack" are .................... and .................... .

a) invasion b) defence c) resistance d) fire e) grasp

30 We should do our best to protect our country .................... the problems it faces.

a) to b) with c) from d) by e) against

31 Sama is .................... for her doll. I think she won't sleep until she finds it.

a) interesting b) looking c) caring d) searching e) taking




## Present Simple Passive المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط

**We use the passive when the action is more important than the agent (who or what does it):**

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون المفعول أهم من الفاعل، أو الفاعل غير معروف أو لا يراد ذكره.

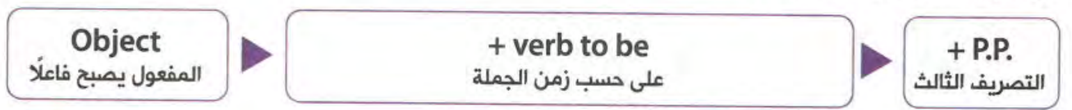
الجملة هنا تبدأ بالمفعول ولم تذكر من يقوم بالفعل.

The car is washed every Friday.

نستخدم by إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل آخر الكلام.

New schools are built by the government.

يتكون المبنى للمجهول بشكل عام من:






- ومن هنا يتكون المضارع البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول من am – is – are + P.P.

Leila always does the homework after school.

= The homework is always done by Leila after school.

- فى حالة النفى يتكون المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط من (am – is – are) not + P.P.

Amira doesn't watch comic films.

= Comic films aren't watched by Amira.

- فى حالة السؤال:

**Am/Is/Are + object + P.P. ...?**

Are these old cars sold here?

**Wh-/am/is/are + object + P.P. ...?**

Where is this organisation based?

### Extra Points

- لا تستخدم (has/have) كفعل أساسى فى المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى:

I have a mobile.

- A mobile is (possessed/owned) by me.

We have breakfast before going to school every day.

- Breakfast is eaten before going to school every day (by us).



## Important Notes

- هناك استخدامات أخرى عديدة لزمن المضارع البسيط ... منها:



1. إعطاء أوامر أو تعليمات (بدلًا من جملة الأمر).

- You read the questions first and then you write down your answers in the box.
- You give a signal before you turn right or left.

= Give a signal before you turn right or left.



2. فى التعليقات الرياضية.

- Mohamed Salah passes the ball to El-Neny who kicks the ball and scores a goal.

3. سرد ملخص لأحداث روائية فى رواية أو فيلم أو مسرحية.

- In the last chapter, Huda meets Ali and agrees to marry him.

4. مع جمل تبدأ بـ (Here & There)

- Look! Here comes your father at last.

5. مع الحكم والأمثال.

- Action speaks louder than words.

6. - من الممكن البدء بـ (Never) وتصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

Never + (فعل مساعد) + فاعل + inf.

- Never does he tell lies.



لاحظ

- من الممكن استخدام always مع زمن المضارع المستمر إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شىء يحدث الآن ويتسبب فى ضيق.

- The girl is always asking a lot of questions while the teacher is explaining the lesson.
- He is always criticising ينتقد my handwriting.

## Language Summary

### Present Simple

**Affirmative**

- He walks to university every day.
- They walk to university every day.

**Negative**

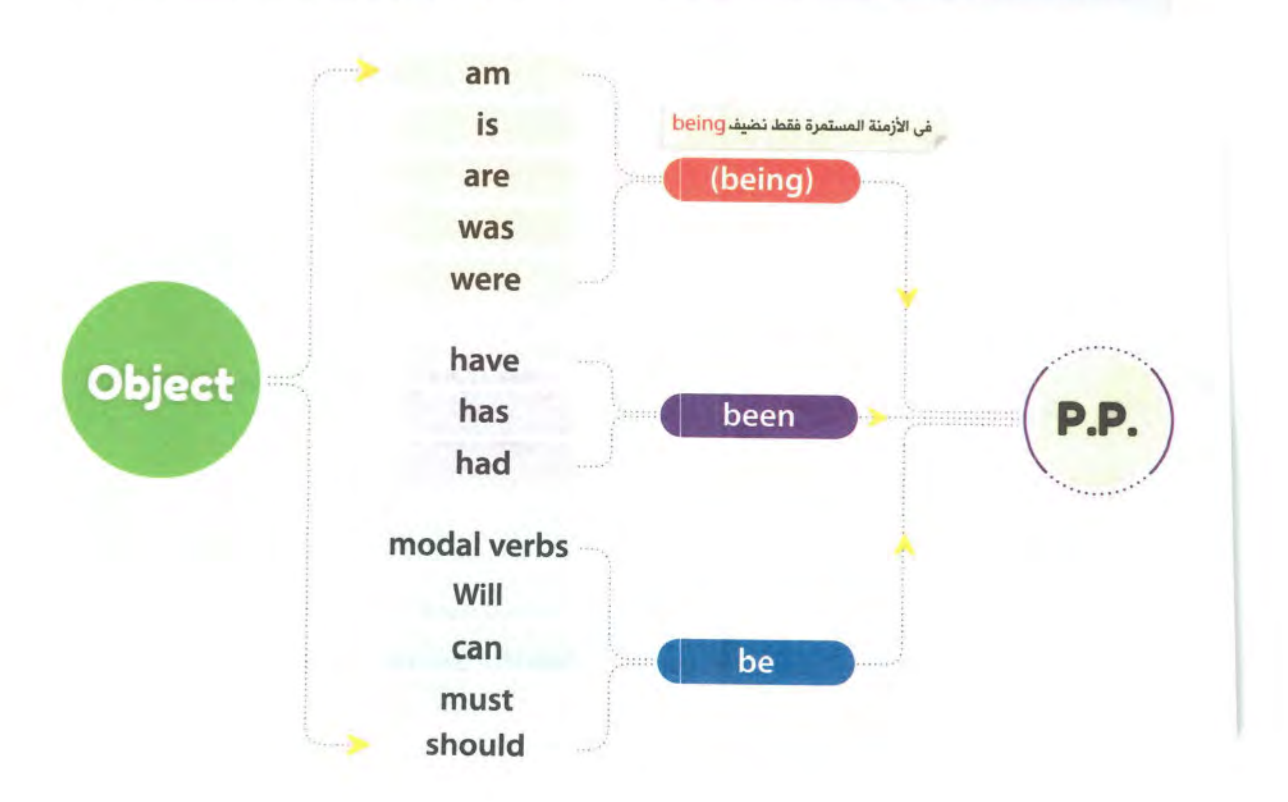
- He doesn't walk to university every day.
- They don't walk to university every day.

**Usage**

- Scientific and universal facts.
- Habits or repeated actions.
- Permanent situations.

**Question**

**A:** Does he walk to university every day?
**B:** Yes, he does. /No, he doesn't.
**A:** How often do they walk to university?
**B:** They walk to university every day.






## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Plants .................... by farmers.
a) grow b) growing c) are grown d) grew

2 This popular television programme .................... by millions of people every week.
a) is watched b) is being watched
c) has been watched d) was watching

3 Peter no longer .................... as he used to. *(Longman)*
a) has smoked b) smoking c) smoked d) smokes

4 This writer is well-known. His books .................... by thousands of people.
a) read b) are read c) are reading d) had been read

5 Nada .................... arrives late; she is really punctual. *(Longman)*
a) doesn't b) never c) always d) already

6 It is a fact that eggs .................... a lot of protein that is useful for our bodies.
a) contain b) contains c) are contained d) is contained

7 The classrooms .................... during the school holidays so that the school could look better.
a) is painted b) are painting c) have painted d) were painted

8 Students .................... two foreign languages in secondary schools before they join university. *(Longman)*
a) teach b) are teaching c) were taught d) are taught

9 This road .................... very often as it is so dangerous.
a) is used b) isn't used c) doesn't use d) isn't using

10 Don't forget to come on time when you .................... to come for the interview.
a) ask b) are asked c) asked d) are asking

11 Trees absorb carbon dioxide and .................... us oxygen. *(Longman)*
a) are given b) is giving c) gives d) give

12 The road to school .................... last week in celebration of the new year.
a) is paved b) is paving c) was paved d) has paved

13 A very nice meal .................... for us every Friday at my grandfather's house.
a) had been prepared b) was preparing
c) is prepared d) is preparing

14 Health .................... by smoking that causes many fatal diseases أمراض مميتة.
a) has affected b) is affected c) affects d) was affected

15 My car .................... for any damage from now and then.
a) serviced b) had been serviced c) has serviced d) is serviced

16 Children .................... more care, especially at the nursery stage. *(Longman)*
a) are given b) to give c) is given d) given

17 The service fee رسوم in this hotel .................... in the bill.
a) included b) is included c) is including d) includes

18 During the monthly school party, clever students .................... nice presents.
a) are giving b) are given c) were giving d) had been given

19 The flowers .................... by our gardener who is very active.
a) are usually watered b) usually water
c) usually are watered d) have usually watered

20 Electric cars .................... in Saudi Arabia for the first time in history.
a) make b) are making c) made d) are made

21 Some kinds of mobiles .................... in Egypt.
a) are made b) are making c) have made d) had been made

22 Ali and I always .................... our friends on holidays.
a) meet b) are met c) are meeting d) have met

23 The plane .................... off before we arrive at the airport.
a) will take off b) takes c) took d) had taken

24 Remember that after you .................... the contract, you won't be able to change your mind.
a) had signed b) will sign c) signed d) sign

25 Kareem .................... by dad because his behaviour is bad.
a) is always punished b) is always punishing
c) always punishes d) always is punished

26 How many babies .................... in this hospital every day?
a) were born b) was born c) have born d) are born

27 Never .................... late.
a) he is b) is he c) does he d) he goes

28 If I .................... money, I will ask you to lend me some.
a) needed b) need c) am needing d) was needing

29 .................... any of these houses damaged in the storm last night?
a) Was b) Is c) Did d) Had

30 There was a fight at the party, but nobody .................... .
a) was hurt b) was hurting c) is hurt d) didn't get hurt

31 The Earth goes around the sun. This sentence is a .................... .
a) habit b) timetable c) fact d) hope

32 He told all the students about the surprise. This means that .................... .
a) all the students told him about the surprise
b) he was told about the surprise
c) all the students were told about the surprise
d) he was told by all the students about the surprise

# Test yourself






**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1 I was about to go missing when I met a/an .................... of desert nomads البدو who led me to the way.
a) society b) community c) tribe d) association

2 My boss is very kind-hearted. He showed much .................... with the difficult situation which I face.
a) admiration b) empathy c) inspiration d) appearance

3 He was taken to prison as he .................... much money to people and couldn't repay it.
a) lent b) borrowed c) owed d) owned

4 When a lion's paw .................... is discovered, it is a sign that a lion is close.
a) signal b) remark c) print d) signature

5 My young brother works .................... an accountant in a large company.
a) for b) in c) out d) as

6 .................... rare animals must be prohibited يُمنع to keep them alive.
a) Eating b) Fishing c) Hunting d) Guarding

7 The course will help you to develop and improve your reading and listening .................... .
a) skulls b) risks c) skills d) controls

8 The government assured that there should be cameras in all the shops to .................... everything happens.
a) monitor b) role-play c) list d) compare

9 My brother .................... to live in a large palace in a European country.
a) desire b) desires c) desiring d) desirable

10 My brother's .................... is to live in a large palace in a European country.
a) desire b) desires c) desiring d) desirable

11 A .................... of panic has spread over the country after the explosions.
a) movement b) disappearance c) cattle d) sense

12 Tourism .................... thousands of people who are responsible for their families.
a) tracks b) monitors c) works d) employs

13 Good education and wealth give people .................... in society.
a) shame b) prestige c) weakness d) greed

14 My father is acting as a .................... of our big family. He is the one who takes care of us all.
a) guardian b) guarder c) spy d) gardener

15 I asked my assistant to get me the most .................... information about the rival منافس company.

a) recently b) recent c) modern d) ancient

## Language

16 Some plants .................... naturally in different parts of the world.

a) are grown b) are growing c) grow d) growing

17 At my first day at school, I .................... to go with my mother to know the way.

a) have b) had c) would have d) has

18 We know that plants .................... energy from the sun to make their food.

a) use b) uses c) are used d) using

19 As it .................... in the timetable, the meeting starts at 9 a.m.

a) is shown b) showed c) shows d) show

20 Many qualifications and much experience .................... to get higher position in the company.

a) are needing b) need c) needed d) are needed

21 The room .................... every afternoon.

a) is cleaning b) is cleaned c) is being cleaned d) cleans

22 The thief .................... and taken to prison yesterday.

a) is arrested b) was arresting c) was arrested d) has arrested

23 Today, lions .................... by the Maasai from hunting parties.

a) protect b) have protected c) are protected d) were protected

24 Mohamed Salah .................... all over the world.

a) known b) know c) knows d) is known

25 Football matches .................... by millions of people all over the world currently.

a) are watched b) were watched c) watch d) watching

26 Money .................... into our country by tourists who come to enjoy our great civilisation.

a) is bringing b) is brought c) has brought d) were brought

27 I .................... to go out with my friends after 9 p.m. as it's a family rule.

a) allowed b) didn't allow c) am not allowed d) wasn't allowed

28 If I .................... tired, I will visit my doctor.

a) feels b) feel c) felt d) had felt

29 Important matters .................... hastily بشكل متعجل. We should take our time.

a) aren't discussing b) don't discuss
c) aren't discussed d) are discussing

30 I went to hospital and had my eyes examined. It means that .................... .

a) I examined my eyes by myself
b) maybe I or an oculist examined my eyes
c) no one was there to examine my eyes
d) an oculist examined my eyes

Study | Watch a video

Part (3)
# Lessons 5 & 6

## Chapter 2

### Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| agree | يوافق |
| anyone else | أى شخص آخر |
| bury | يدفن |
| catch | يقبض على |
| clue | دليل/مفتاح لحل لغز |
| cross | يعبر |
| describe | يصف |
| directions | الاتجاهات |
| escape | يهرب |
| excited | متحمس |
| head | رئيس |
| hide | يخفى |
| important | مهم |
| include | يشمل |
| inside | فى داخل |
| magistrate | قاضٍ |
| map | خريطة |
| papers | أوراق/مستندات |
| prepare | يعد/يجهز |
| ready | جاهز |
| road | طريق |
| rob | يسرق |
| safe | آمن |
| secret | سر |
| servant | خادم |
| shout | يصيح/ يصرخ/ صيحة |
| the rest | البقية |

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | |
|---|---|
| run inside | يركض فى الداخل |
| call out | يصرخ |
| run out | ينفذ |
| feel better | يشعر بتحسن |
| on a boat | على متن قارب |
| as well as | بالإضافة إلى |
| ask ... into | يطلب من شخص الدخول |
| interested in | مهتم بـ |
| seem to | يبدو أن |
| look for | يبحث عن |
| longer than | أطول من |
| ready to | مستعد لـ |
| prepare for | يجهز لـ |
| send to | يرسل إلى |
| keep secret | يحفظ السر |




## Novel Exercises Chapter (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The .................. of the company is responsible for everything in it.
a) crew b) magistrate c) head d) robber

2 They stole the money but couldn't .................. from the police.
a) run b) escape c) rob d) arrest

3 The investigators could finally find a .................. to the murder.
a) clue b) crew c) glue d) lock

4 The .................. found that the accused man was guilty not innocent.
a) servant b) captain c) magistrate d) thief

5 The .................. of the ship were all so friendly and helpful.
a) staff b) clue c) pirates d) crew

6 Jim went to look for the money .................. by the captain and his men.
a) kidnapped b) robbed c) hijacked d) stolen

7 The rich man has too many .................. who do everything for him at home.
a) servants b) pirates c) heads d) masters

8 It was cool, but we came .................. when it started to rain.
a) outside b) inside c) across d) on

9 I asked the waiter to .................. a cup of coffee for me.
a) repair b) look c) prepare d) arrange

10 When the thieves heard the police coming, they ran in different .................. .
a) directors b) decisions c) sites d) directions

11 The list of the guests .................. my name.
a) contains b) includes c) consists d) encloses

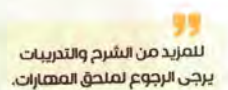
12 The policeman asked the scared woman to .................. the man who tried to rob her.
a) prescribe b) persuade c) describe d) subscribe

13 The archeologists managed to find a very valuable .................. treasure.
a) hidden b) hid c) hide d) used

14 After .................. the dead soldiers, they attacked the enemies severely.
a) arresting b) burying c) feeding d) imprisoning

15 Some young men .................. the old lady of her jewellery last night. *(Longman)*
a) took b) robbed c) stole d) gave




## Writing tips

**When we write about a person we are interested in, we can follow these steps:**

1. Mention his/her name, date and place of birth.
2. Write his/her job and what they are doing nowadays.
3. Write why you admire him/her (Their achievements).
4. How they helped their countries, families and people.
5. Why you think they are important.

### Model Essay

## Someone we are all proud of (Magdi Yacoub)

**Introduction**

Magdi Yacoub is one of the world's most respected heart surgeons. He was born on November 16, 1935 in Belbis, Alshraqya, Egypt. His father was a general surgeon. He inspired him to become a doctor. At the age of four, he witnessed the death of his aunt due to heart disease. Her death, in her early 20s, inspired him to specialise in heart surgery. He entered the Cairo University College of Medicine at the age of 15 on a full scholarship and graduated in 1957, qualifying as a doctor.

**Main body**

In 1968, he spent a year as an associate professor at the University of Chicago. He returned to London a year later to resume his work in the UK. In 1974, he performed the first open heart surgery in Nigeria. In 1980, he performed a heart transplant on Derrick Morris, who became the longest surviving heart transplant patient. He survived 25 years after the surgery. In 1995, he founded the UK-based children's charity 'Chain of Hope' which treats children.

Yacoub retired from his work in London hospitals in 2001, he has also devoted significant time to his charity, Chain of Hope. In 2008, he established the Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation. The foundation was able to establish the Aswan Heart Centre in 2009 to provide free medical services for those in need.

**Conclusion**

Yacoub is married to Marianne, who is of German descent. They have three children. His oldest daughter, Lisa, works as the UK coordinator for Chain of Hope, while his youngest daughter is a doctor specialising in tropical medicine.

**Practice** 

## Skills Exercises

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man cannot live in society without considering the interests[1] of others as well as their own interests. The word "society" means a group of people with the same laws and the same way of life. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions should not be harmful to others. One man's decisions may so easily harm another person. For example, a motorist may be in a hurry to get to a friend's house. He sets out[2], driving at full speed. One careless motorist has struck another car. Too many road accidents happen through the thoughtlessness[3] of selfish drivers. We have governments, the police and the law courts to prevent or punish such criminal acts. But in addition, all men ought to observe certain rules of conduct[4]. Every man ought to behave with consideration for other people.

They ought not to steal, cheat, or destroy the property of others. There is no place for this sort of behaviour in a civilised society. Men in a free society may think as they please. They may even choose their own government. In return for these privileges[5], they ought not to act selfishly. They always ought to respect the rights of others. The happiness of a community depends on the behaviour of its individual members.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The main idea of the passage clearly shows that .................. .
   a) every man ought to behave as he likes
   b) men ought to act selfishly
   c) no one can have his own way all the time
   d) many road accidents happen through careful drivers

2 In a free society, .................. .
   a) people usually want to have their own way
   b) a man never considers the interests of others
   c) people are told what to think by government rules
   d) everyone ought to behave selfishly



(1) مصالح
(2) ينطلق
(3) عدم مراعاة الآخرين
(4) سلوك
(5) امتيازات

3 It is ................ to respect the rights of others.
a) right and thoughtless
b) not really necessary
c) very selfish
d) right and thoughtful

4 Members of a civilised society usually ................ .
a) steal and cheat
b) harm the interests of others
c) behave in a responsible way
d) disrespect the rights of others

5 The underlined word "its" refers to ................ .
a) happiness
b) behaviour
c) community
d) village

6 There is no place for ................ in a civilised society.
a) development
b) accidents
c) bad behaviours
d) happiness

7 To stop criminal acts and punish those who do them, we must have ................ .
a) governments
b) the police
c) law courts
d) all mentioned

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Many famous Egyptians are admired for their intelligence, creation and their ability to do great and charity work.

a) يحظى العديد من المصريين المشاهير بالإعجاب لذكائهم وخلقهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة ومادية.
b) يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
c) يحظى العديد من مشاهير العرب بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
d) يحظى العديد من الممثلين المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.

2 Blood donation can help many people who are in bad need of blood after accidents or who have critical cases.

a) يستطيع أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات عادية.
b) لا يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.
c) التبرع بالدم يمكن أن يساعد العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الغذاء بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.
d) يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.

3 Human beings are the greatest threat to the survival of endangered species because of the effects of climate change.

a) البشر هم أكبر تهديدًا لبقاء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض بسبب آثار تغير المناخ.
b) البشر هم أقل تهديدًا لبقاء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض من خلال آثار تغير المناخ.
c) البشر هم أكبر تهديدًا لبقاء الأنواع غير المهددة بالانقراض بسبب آثار تغير المناخ.
d) البشر هم أكبر تهديدًا لبقاء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض من خلال آثار تغير الطقس.

4 Our parents exert great efforts to please us and provide a happy, secure life for us. We really owe much to them.

a) آباؤنا يبذلون جهودًا كبيرة لإسعادنا وتوفير بيئة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًّا مدينون لهم بالكثير.

b) يبذل آباؤنا جهودًا عادية لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن بالفعل دائنون لهم بالكثير.

c) يحاول آباؤنا محاولات كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًّا مدينون لهم بالقليل.

d) يبذل آباؤنا جهودًا كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًّا مدينون لهم بالكثير.

5 At the international level, Salah represented Egypt in the youth competitions, winning a bronze medal in the under 20 African Cup of Nations.

a) على الصعيد الدولى، مثَّل صلاح مصر فى مسـابقات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية فى بطولة كأس الأمم الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.

b) فى المســتوى الدولى، مثَّل صلاح مصر فى مســابقات الكبار، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية فى بطولة كأس الأمم الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.

c) على المستوى الدولى، مثَّل صلاح مصر فى مناسبات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية الذهبية فى بطولة كأس العالم الإفريقى تحت ٢٠ سنة.

d) على الصعيد المحلى، مثَّل صلاح مصر فى مقارنات الشـباب، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية فى بطولة كأس الأمم الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يُعتبر محمد صلاح، لاعب كرة القدم المصرى المشهور عالميًا، لاعبًا موهوبًا ذا أخلاق حميدة.

a) Regard Mohamed Salah the world-famous African footballer, a talented player with good manners.

b) Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian handballer, is considered a talented player with good manners.

c) Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, is considered a talented player with good morals.

d) Consider Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, a talented player without good values.

7 التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية.

a) Learning is the base for progress and development for the people and cities of the world, whether developed or developing.

b) Education is the basis for progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

c) Teaching is the basic for progress and development for the groups and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

d) Education is the basis for applying and development for the groups and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

**8** لكى نعيش الحياة بسعادة وارتياح، هناك سبيل واحد و هو أن يتم منحنا الفرصة الحقيقية للحصول على تعليم جيد.

a) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.
b) In order to live unhappily and uncomfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.
c) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the false opportunity to get a good education.
d) To live happy and comfortable, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a bad education.

**9** إن مصر فى انتظار جهود العلماء وأهل الفكر والإبداع وتتطلع إلى أبنائها المخلصين لاتخاذ خطوات فعالة للارتقاء بالأمة.

a) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars and the people of thinking and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
b) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take slow steps to advance the nation.
c) That Egypt is waiting for the efforts of its sons, scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take fast paces to advance the nation.
d) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.

**10** على الرغم من التقدم العلمى الكبير، ما زالت هناك أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات تتعرض لخطر الانقراض.

a) Despite the great scientific progress, there are still many species of animals at risk of extinction.
b) Although the great science advancement, there are still many species of animals at risk of extinction.
c) In spite of the great scientific progress, there are still many spices of animals at risk of getting out.
d) Despite the great scientific advancement, there are not still many species of animals at risk of dying.

## 3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

The positive effects of helping people.

........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 There was a meeting to discuss a long-term plan. The synonyms of the word "long-term" are .................... and .................... .

a) continuing b) temporary c) long-lasting d) passing e) short-lived

2 My uncle is a great expert .................... the field of remote sensing.

a) in b) with c) on d) by e) for

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 I don't know the reason .................... his frequent absence these days.

a) for b) with c) why d) of

4 Drivers mustn't exceed the .................... limit on highways.

a) spot b) speed c) fast d) fear

5 In our company, there are a lot of cameras to .................... everything happens.

a) prevent b) change c) protect d) monitor

6 The rescue team shouldered the .................... for saving people from the fire.

a) stability b) ability c) probability d) responsibility

7 After the accident, he needed blood .................... to stay alive.

a) transplant b) transfusion c) transplantation d) orientation

8 After the earthquake, many of the .................... people are still in a serious condition.

a) ambitious b) injured c) reported d) dead

9 As well as .................... abroad to earn money, he got a university degree.

a) travel b) travelling c) travelled d) travels

10 He came to my house and .................... tea with me.

a) had b) had had c) having d) have had

11 Salah .................... the most important goal for Egypt that sent it to the World Cup Finals.

a) scored b) has scored c) scores d) was scoring

12 My daughter .................... her grandmother as usual.

a) is visited b) is visiting c) was visiting d) visits

13 My boss likes Mr Ahmed because he .................... hard-working.

a) is always b) always is c) is never d) never is

14 He .................... to sit down until he had apologised to the teacher.

a) didn't allow b) isn't allowed c) wasn't allowed d) was allowed

**15** Yaseen doesn't stay up late any longer. This means he ...................... .

a) used to stay up late
b) didn't use to stay up late
c) usually stays up late
d) is in the habit of staying up late

**16** In winter, wood ...................... to heat people's homes in many parts of the world.

a) have been burnt
b) burnt
c) is burnt
d) was burning

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon(1) because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow(2) water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous(3) sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**17** A .................. is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.

a) prey
b) predator
c) chameleon
d) magician

**18** When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's .................. .

a) easy
b) in danger
c) covered in stick
d) unable to move

**19** The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both .................. .

a) swim in the same way
b) eat the same food
c) catch small fish
d) can change their skin colour

**20** The octopus can separate one of its arms to .................. .

a) distract the predator
b) renew it
c) catch a prey
d) lay eggs

(1) حرباء
(2) ضحل (غير عميق)
(3) سام

21 The octopus can shoot ink into the water which .................. .

a) kills the attackers
b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water
d) attracts preys

22 Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves .................. .

a) so, they are eaten easily
b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
c) moreover, they are not brave
d) that's why they are about to extinct

23 The best title for this passage is ".................".

a) The Magician Octopuses
b) The Sea World and the Predator
c) The Seabed
d) The Sea Ink

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- يحلم كل منا أن يكون مشهورًا فى يوم ما، ولكن ليس من السهل أن تكون مشهورًا؛ لأن الشهرة نتاج للعمل الجاد والصبر وأيضًا المعاناة.

a) All of us dream of being famous one day, but it is easy to be well-known; because fame is a product of hard work, patience, and also suffering.
b) All of us dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame comes from hard work, patience, and also suffering.
c) Every of us dreams of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame is a product of hard work, patient, and also suffering.
d) Each of us dreams of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be infamous; because fame is a product of hard work, patience, and also suffering.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Nowadays, the Egyptian government pays great attention to women and provides them with education, jobs and health care.

a) فى الوقت الماضى، تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.
b) فى الوقت الحاضر، تولى الوزارة المصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.
c) فى الوقت الحاضر، تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.
d) الآن، تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا صغيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The role of charities in Egypt.

..........................................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................................

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 286

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Study again | Practise more | Take more exams | Well done! |

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 I have lost my wallet. Can you help me ...................... it?
a) look for b) research for c) look after d) search for e) worry about

2 Staying in bed is very relaxing after hard work. The synonyms of "relaxing" are ...................... and ...................... .
a) noisy b) tiring c) comfortable d) calm e) worrying

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 We should all try our best in order not to ...................... our environment.
a) predict b) save c) protect d) endanger

4 He went to the beach to lie in the sun to ...................... .
a) sunshine b) sun power c) sunbathe d) sunbath

5 The train was very ...................... I couldn't even find my chair.
a) narrow b) empty c) polluted d) crowded

6 My dream is to live in a quiet and ...................... place with no problems.
a) peaceful b) noisy c) crowded d) dull

7 My father was very ill and we had to measure his blood ...................... .
a) treasure b) stress c) pleasure d) pressure

8 Comedians are those who have a/an ............... of humour and make people laugh.
a) touch b) sense c) smell d) impact

9 It is the ...................... of the government to employ the fresh graduates الخريجيون الجدد.
a) movement b) employment c) loyalty d) responsibility

10 The police arrested the thief while he ...................... the scene of the crime.
a) had left b) was leaving c) was left d) has left

11 ...................... the flight, I was reading a novel called "*Al-Ayam*".
a) While b) During c) Just as d) When

12 She ...................... in Cairo for ten years. Later, she got married and moved to Alex.
a) lived b) has lived c) had been lived d) was living

13 I wish I ...................... a better time last year.
a) have b) had had c) was had d) had

14 Menna ...................... cheerful. The smile never leaves her face.
a) is always b) always is c) isn't always d) always isn't

15 He used to smoke, but now he ...................... .
a) isn't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't

16 A: Have you seen Mona lately?
B: Yes, I ...................... her when I was on my way to work the other day.
a) saw b) had seen c) have seen d) was seeing

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered and isolated. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation. Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environment along the Red Sea Coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist anywhere else in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand which seems rare and exotic because it's different from any other sand.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**17** .................. is the animals and plants in the environment.

a) Ecotourism b) Biodiversity c) Ecosystem d) Geology

**18** The Komodo National Park is known for its .................. that is found only there.

a) pink dragon b) pink sand c) ecotourism d) komodo dragon

**19** The underlined word "isolated" means .................. .

a) near b) remote c) familiar d) dangerous

**20** Ecotourists are taught how to avoid damaging rare fish and coral reefs when .................. .

a) going shopping b) going diving
c) catching fish d) sightseeing

**21** To make sure that ecotourism is sustainable, .................. of people can visit the Galapagos Islands each year.

a) a limited number b) a lot
c) much d) an unlimited number

**22** A suitable title for the passage is "..................".

a) Tourism around the world
b) Ecotourism and its importance
c) Unique places in Egypt
d) How to protect coral reefs

**23** **Egypt aims at protecting the environment along ................ by developing ecotourism.**

a) the Red Sea Coast
b) the Nile banks
c) the deserts
d) the Mediterranean Sea Coast

**24** **Choose the correct English translation:**

- يجب على كل طالب أن يعمل بجد ولا يضيع وقته فى الجلوس لساعات أمام التلفاز حتى يحقق كل ما يحلم به فى المستقبل.

a) Every student must work hard and waste his time sitting for minutes in front of the TV in order to achieve everything he dreams of in the future.
b) Every student must work hard and not waste their time sitting for hours in front of the TV in order to achieve everything they dream of in the future.
c) All students must work hard and not waste his time sitting for hours behind the TV in order to achieve everything they dream of in the future.
d) Every student must work hard and not waste his/her time sitting for hours in front of the TV in order to achieve everything he/she dreams of in the past.

**25** **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

**Without confidence or belief in your own power, you cannot achieve success or happiness.**

a) بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.
b) بوجود الثقة أو التصديق بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.
c) بدون الثقة أو التصديق بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو الفشل.
d) بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

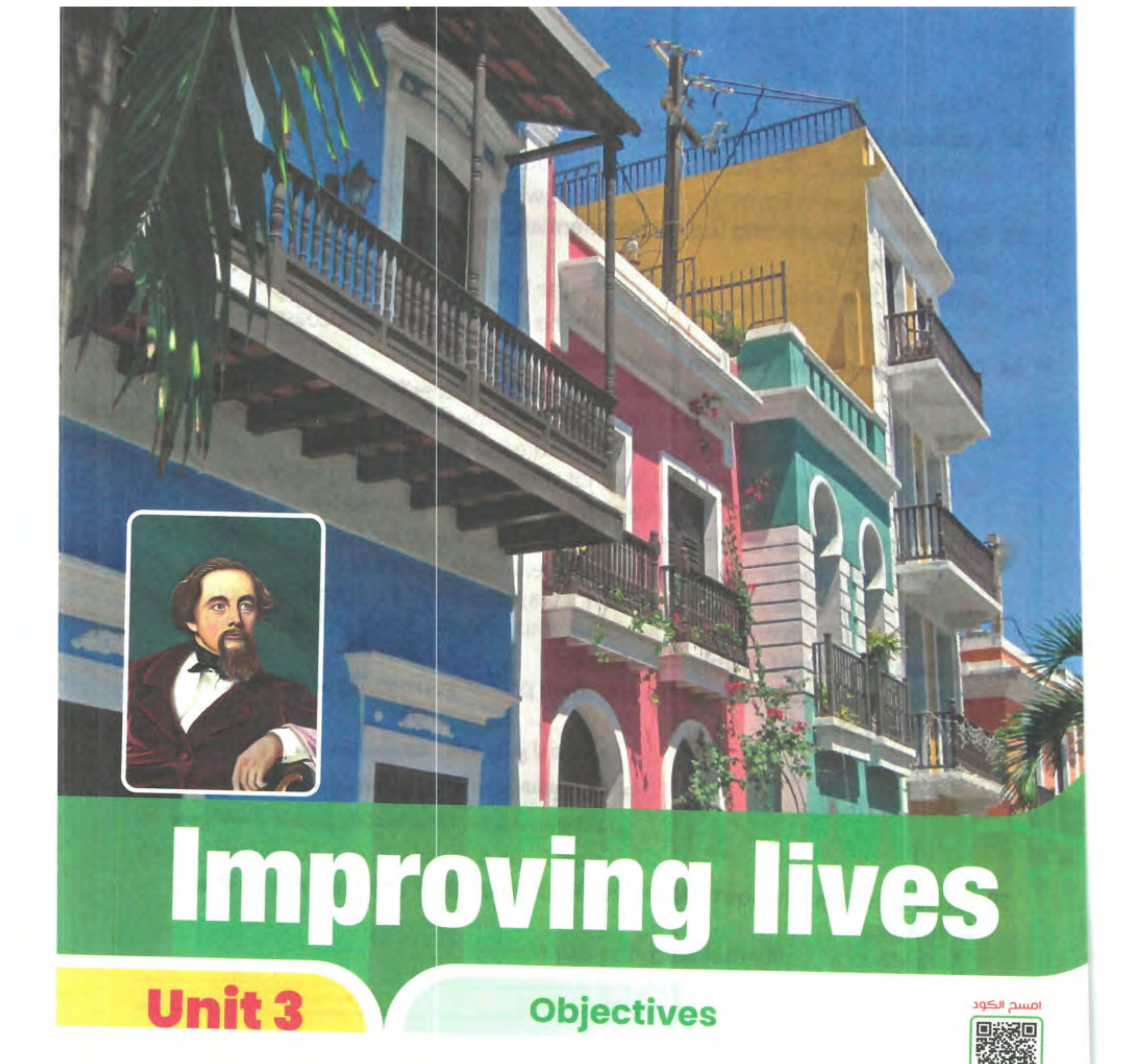
**26** **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

A review of a charity that helps the community.

..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practise more | Take more exams | Well done! |



# Improving lives

## Unit 3

### Objectives

امسح الكود

استفيد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

- **Reading** : An extract from *David Copperfield*
- **Writing** : A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story
- **Listening** : A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books
- **Speaking** : Discussing a topic
- **Language** : Past simple and present perfect
- **Life Skills** : Empathy

# Study



Watch a video

Part (1)
# Lessons 1 & 2

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| debts (n) | ديون |
| earn (v) – ed | يكسب (مالًا) |
| merchant (n) | تاجر |
| miserable (adj) | بائس |
| owe (v) – d* | يدين لـ |
| plump (adj) | ممتلئ الجسم |
| prison (n) | سجن |
| rats (n) | فئران |

I owe you a favour because you helped me.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



### Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

| | |
|---|---|
| arrange (v) – d | يرتب |
| borrow (v) – ed | يقترض/يستعير |
| break (v) | يكسر |
| brilliant (adj) | رائع |
| building (n) | مبنى |
| criminals (n) | مجرمون |
| deserve (v) – d | يستحق |
| die (v) – d | يموت |
| dirty (adj) | قذر |
| discover (v) – ed | يكتشف |
| empty (adj) (v) (~~y~~) – (ied) | فارغ/يفرغ |
| entertain (v) – ed | يسلى |
| entertainment (n) | تسلية |
| factory (n) | مصنع |
| floors (n) | طوابق |
| hard (adj) | شاق |
| hate (v) – d | يكره |
| honest (adj) | أمين |
| hurt (v) | يؤذى |
| miser (n) | بخيل |
| misery (n) | البخل/البؤس |
| modern (adj) | حديث |
| parents (n) | الوالدان |
| penny (n) | بنس بريطانى (عملة نقدية) |
| remove (v) – d | يزيل |
| reward (v) – ed | يكافئ |
| spend (v) | ينفق مالًا/يقضى وقتًا |
| storyteller (n) | كاتب روايات/قَصَّاص |
| support (v) – ed | يدعم |
| theatre (n) | مسرح |
| ticket (n) | تذكرة |
| tired (adj) | متعب |
| twins (n) | توءمان |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| character (n) | شخصية | opportunity (n) | فرصة |
| childhood (n) | مرحلة الطفولة | review (v) – ed | يراجع |
| exactly (adv) | بالضبط | similar (adj) | مشابه |
| hide (v) | يخفى | skill (n) | مهارة |
| lucky (adj) | سعيد الحظ | temple (n) | معبد |
| machines (n) | آلات | unusual (adj) | غير عادى |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My uncle is a well-known .................... who buys and sells goods in large amounts.
a) customer b) merchant c) criminal d) assistant

2 You have to fill the bottle. It is .................... .
a) full b) plump c) empty d) crowded

3 I asked my mother to try to .................... the dirt from my clothes.
a) reward b) entertain c) support d) remove

4 I think that his car and mine are ...................., but not the same.
a) similar b) twin c) unusual d) dirty

5 It is .................... to work in such a bad and unfriendly atmosphere.
a) wonderful b) miserable c) adaptable d) tired

6 I went to the .................... with my friends to watch the new play.
a) cinema b) club c) theatre d) garage

7 All of the world hurried to .................... Syrian and Turkish people after this disaster.
a) support b) borrow c) break d) spend

8 I like babies with .................... cheeks. They look cute.
a) giant b) tiny c) pump d) plump

9 We need somebody who is completely .................... for this job.
a) dishonest b) miserable c) honest d) cruel

10 We were very .................... with the good weather on our holiday.
a) unlucky b) dirty c) tired d) lucky

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| become ill | يصبح مريضًا/يمرض | reward for | يكافئ على |
| break the law | يخالف القانون | similar to | متشابه مع |
| make clothes | يصنع ملابس | die of | يموت بسبب |
| pay back | يرد دينًا | take ... away | يأخذ ... بعيدًا |
| look after | يعتنى بـ | take ... home | يأخذ ... للمنزل |
| owe money to | يدين بالمال لـ | tired-looking lady | سيدة تبدو متعبة |
| a problem with | مشكلة مع - فى | find out | يكتشف |
| buy ... from | يشترى ... من | give to | يعطى لـ |
| rat race | تنافس شديد | sit with | يجلس مع |
| arrange for | يرتب من أجل | entertain ... with | يُسلى ... بـ |
| break the record | يحطم الرقم القياسى | know ... for | يعرف شخصًا ... بـ |

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| arrange | يرتب | arranger<br>arrangement | معِد/منظِّم<br>ترتيب/تنظيم | arranged | معَد/منظَّم |
| deaden<br>die | يخمد/يمنع صوت/ألم<br>يموت | death<br>dead | موت<br>ميت | dead<br>deadly | ميت<br>مميت (مسبب للموت) |
| earn | يكسب | earner<br>earning | مصدر دخل/عائل<br>عائد/دخل | earned | مُكتسب/مُستحق |
| hate | يكره | hate<br>hatred | عداوة<br>كره/بغض | hated | كريه/بغيض |
| imprison | يسجن | prison<br>prisoner<br>imprisonment | سجن<br>سجين<br>حبس/اعتقال | imprisonable | مستحق للسجن |
| improve | يحسن | improvement | تحسين | improved | محسن |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ---------------------------- | | merchant<br>merchandise | تاجر<br>بضائع | merchantable<br>merchant | صالح للتجارة<br>تجارى |
| ---------------------------- | | miser<br>misery | بخيل<br>بخل/بؤس | miserly | قليل/شحيح |
| owe | يدين | ---------------------------- | | owing | مدين |
| reward | يكافأ | reward<br>rewarding | مكافأة<br>مجزٍ | unrewarded | بدون مقابل |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| arrange | يرتب/ينظم | organise/tidy/put in order | disarrange/disorder | يبعثر |
| borrow | يستلف | obtain/hire | lend/return/pay | يُقرض/يدفع/يرد |
| dirty | قذر | unclean/soiled/ contaminated | clean/spotless/pure/clear | نظيف |
| empty | فارغ | vacant/blank/unoccupied | full/occupied/filled | مملوء |
| hard | شاق/صلب | tough/solid/strong | soft/delicate | رقيق/مرهف |
| hate | يكره | dislike/detest/loathe | love/adore/like | يحب/يعشق |
| honest | أمين/مخلص | trustful/sincere/candid | dishonest/deceitful/insincere | خائن/غير أمين |
| miserable | بائس | unhappy/sad/depressed | cheerful/happy | سعيد/مبتهج |
| plump | ممتلئ الجسم | chubby/obese/fat | thin/skinny/lean | نحيف |
| tired | متعب | exhausted/fatigued/weary | active/lively/fresh | نشيط |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I asked my neighbour to look .................... my children when I was out.
a) after b) up c) for d) ahead

2 I am very miserable as I .................... a lot of money to many people.
a) lent b) owe c) borrow d) own

3 The champion managed to .................... his own record in the last race.
a) miss b) own
c) break d) take

4 He stole a lot of money, so he was sent to .................... for 10 years.
a) person b) prison
c) imprisonment d) court

5 I am not used to hating anyone for whatever they do. The antonym of "hate" is .................... .
a) detest b) dislike c) believe d) adore

6 As I had a lot of work yesterday, I was very tired. The word "tired" is the same as .................... .
a) active b) exhausted
c) lively d) happy

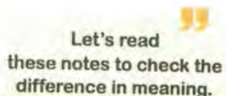
7 Hams and Hana are identical .................... . They are very alike.
a) twins b) adults
c) twice d) tunes

8 I lost my wallet in the metro; whoever finds it will get a/an .................... of 500 pounds.
a) reward b) award c) rewarding d) unrewarded

9 Tourism is the most important .................... of hard currency for Egypt.
a) earner b) earing
c) earned d) earn

10 My father died .................... lung cancer as a result of heavy smoking.
a) with b) out c) of d) by

## Notes on Vocabulary




| | Word | Arabic | Example |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | work | - عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)<br>- عمل هندسى أو فنى أو أدبى (اسم يعد) | - I've got so much work to do.<br>- Dickens' works reflect the suffering of poor people. |
| | job | وظيفة/مهنة (اسم يعد) | When she left college, she got a job as an editor in a publishing company. |
| | career | الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد | She manages to successfully combine family life and a career. |
| | profession | مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة) | He left the teaching profession in 1965 to start his own business. |
| 2 | machine | ماكينة/آلة | The factory bought a new machine to increase its production. |
| | tool | أداة يدوية | The carpenter uses many tools such as a hammer and a saw. |
| | instrument | أدوات قياس/طبيب/موسيقية | The piano is one of my favourite musical instruments. |
| 3 | pay | مرتب/أجر/يدفع | It is not a good job, but the pay is good. |
| | wage | أجر يومى أو أسبوعى | His wage is 100 pounds a day. |
| | salary | أجر شهرى (غالبًا من شركة أو مؤسسة) | The salaries of the government are not enough. |
| | fee | أتعاب | Lawyers' fees have become sky-high nowadays. |
| 4 | a room | حجرة | I phoned to book a room in the hotel. |
| | room | مكان/فراغ - (اسم لا يعد) | The table takes up too much room. |
| 5 | miss* | تفوته مواصلات/يفتقد شخصًا | - He missed the train as he got up late.<br>- I missed my uncle very much. |
| | lose* | يخسر/يفقد شيئًا/شخصًا | Our national team lost the last match. |

*I miss you, but I will never lose you.

| Word | Example |
|---|---|
| **win** يفوز/يكسب - (مكانة/شيئًا) | The team is training well hoping to win the next match. |
| **beat** يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق) | Our team was easily beaten in the first round of the competition. |
| 6 **gain** يكتسب/يحصل على شيء معنوى مفيد (خبرة - معرفة - معلومات - شهرة - الوزن - السرعة) | I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday. |
| **earn** يكسب (قوتًا أو رزقًا) مقابل عمل | How much do you earn, if you don't mind me asking? |
| 7 **hard (adj)** صعب/خشن/نشيط أو حماسى | - You'll have to make some hard decisions to solve this problem.<br>- After months without rain, the ground was too hard to plough.<br>- Success in sport requires hard work and a great deal of determination. |
| **hard (adv)** بجد | She has worked hard all her life and became a great person. |
| **hardly (adv)** بالكاد | I hardly know your friend. I met him only once. |
| 8 **the poor = poor people** الفقراء<br>**the + adj. = adj. + noun** | Poor people should have a stable earner to support their families. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The young people now dream of a successful .................... .
a) work b) location c) career d) machine

2 The violin is my favourite musical .................... .
a) tool b) machine c) gadget d) instrument

3 My monthly .................... is paid directly into my bank account.
a) wages b) salary c) fees d) fare

4 My father .................... his living as an engineer.
a) gains b) wins c) earns d) beats

5 I can .................... wait for the holidays to begin.
a) hard b) hardy c) harden d) hardly







## Vocabulary
## General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Working for about 15 hours without a break makes anyone ................. .
a) relaxed b) calm c) tired d) tiring

2 It's not easy for any Egyptian to break the ................ of Mohammad Salah in scoring goals.
a) door b) number c) record d) law

3 Those who ................ much more than they earn are always in heavy debts.
a) pass b) spend c) work d) stay

4 It is very useful when we give young children ................ for their good behaviour.
a) awards b) rewards c) tickets d) penalties

5 Actors should be careful about choosing their ................ because some children imitate them يقلدوهم.
a) parents b) twins c) persons d) characters

6 People who ................ the law must be punished. (Longman)
a) break b) follow c) make d) do

7 I asked my manager for a ................ rise or I will resign.
a) wage b) fee c) pay d) bay

8 I consider myself a ................ man to have such a good family.
a) tired b) funny c) tricky d) lucky

9 My funny friend always ................ us with many jokes all evening.
a) entertains b) trains c) removes d) depresses

10 Those who are in heavy ................ are very miserable.
a) debates b) advances c) profits d) debts

11 Charles Dickens was a great ................ who wrote many novels and books.
a) poet b) doctor c) storyteller d) musician

12 That house has been ................ for months. I want to rent it.
a) busy b) crowded c) occupied d) empty

13 We ................ our success to our parents and teachers.
a) own b) owe c) belong d) occur

14 We must stop those who do ................ acts by sending them to prison.
a) great b) moral c) legal d) criminal

15 I should have gone abroad when I was young. It was really a missed ................ .
a) appointment b) apposition c) opponent d) opportunity

16 The criminal ................ to be punished severely for such a terrible crime.
a) removes b) deserves c) reserves d) serves

17 I ................ our old days when we sat at the sea chatting till dawn.
a) lose b) long c) suppose d) miss

18 She finds her work with disabled people very .................... . She likes it very much.
a) awards b) comments c) rewarding d) rewards

19 The .................... have a safety device which switches the power off if there is a fault.
a) tools b) instruments c) machines d) wires

20 How much is the entrance .................... for the Egyptian Museum?
a) wage b) fee c) salary d) wages

21 Can you .................... suggestions for keeping the environment clean? (Longman)
a) do b) make c) think d) rise

22 The law decides who is innocent and who will be in .................... .
a) debt b) hospital c) prison d) entertainment

23 The team's victory today has .................... them a place in the final.
a) earned b) gained c) won d) rewarded

24 He is a .................... . He has no desire to spend money even on his children.
a) miserable b) misery c) miser d) missing

25 There was an expression of pain and .................... on his face.
a) miserable b) misery c) miser d) missing

26 Nowadays, everyone is rushing to be better or more successful than everyone else. That is what we call .................... .
a) break the law b) pay back c) break through d) rat race

27 As a result of his repeated mistakes, he has been .................... from his position in the company.
a) remove b) removal c) movement d) removed

28 Shoppers complain about poor quality .................... and high prices.
a) merchants b) merchandise c) merchantable d) merchant

29 Mothers are the best to look .................... their families.
a) after b) up c) for d) into

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

30 Many young men .................... money from tourism, so we have to encourage tourists to come to Egypt.
a) earn b) do c) make d) gain e) win

31 My friend is plump. "Plump" here is a synonym for "................" and "................". (Longman)
a) thin b) obese c) slim d) fat e) thick

32 Unfortunately, some orphans have no host families to .................... them. (Longman)
a) care for b) look for c) look after d) take care e) look up

33 Can I borrow your car for the weekend? The antonyms of the word "borrow" are "................" and "................".
a) dislike b) lend c) disorder d) organise e) return

34 .................... should be helped by all people in society, especially the government.
a) Disabled b) The disabled c) Disabled people
d) The disabled people e) Disability

35 I asked my father to go out with me, but he was very tired. The adjective "tired" gives the same meaning as "................" and "................".
a) active b) fresh c) weary d) lively e) exhausted




## Past simple and present perfect الماضى البسيط والمضارع التام

### The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

تم شرحه فى الوحدة الأولى

### The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن:

The present perfect tense is used to express:

**Repeated actions in the past - often with quantity words.**
I have eaten three sandwiches.

**TIMELINE**

Past — Present — Future

**Duration - from past to now.**
I have lived here since 2000.

Past — now — Future

**FORM**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Affirmative** | He/She/It + has + P.P. • He has painted the house.<br>I/They/We/You + have + P.P. • They have painted the house. |
| **Negative** | He/She/It + hasn't + P.P.<br>• He hasn't painted the house.<br>I/They/We/You + haven't + P.P.<br>• They haven't painted the house. |
| **Question** | Has/Have + subject + P.P.?<br>• Has he painted the house?<br>• Have they painted the house?<br>Wh- word + has/have + subject + P.P.?<br>• How long have they painted the house? |
| **Passive** | Obj. + has/have + been + P.P.<br>• The house has been painted. |

## USAGE الاستخدام

1. **For actions that started in the past and continue till now.**
للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت فى الماضى وما زالت مستمرة.
Manar has lived in Alexandria since she was a child.

2. **For actions which have happened very recently or finished and there is an effect on the present.** للتعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثًا أو انتهت منذ فترة وتترك أثر.
I have finished reading the novel by David Copperfield.
He can't play the match because he has broken his leg.

3. **For questions and answers about people's experiences.**
للأسئلة والإجابات عن التجارب الشخصية للأفراد.
Have you ever been to Aswan? – No, I've never been there.

4. **For actions that happened in the past without mentioning the time.**
للأحداث التى تمت فى الماضى دون تحديد وقت حدوثها.
My wife has polished her shoes.
لاحظ: فى حالة تحديد وقت حدوثه نستخدم الماضى البسيط.
My wife polished her shoes yesterday.

## Key words

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| already | بالفعل | تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. أو فى نهاية الجملة | I **have** already **passed** my driving test.<br>I **have passed** the driving test already. |
| just | حالًا/توًا | تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. | He **has** just **finished** studying his English lessons. |
| ever | من قبل | تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب الشخصية السابقة وبعد صيغة التفضيل ومع الجمل المنفية بـ not | **Have** you ever **met** Mohamed Salah?<br>It is the most difficult question I **have** ever **answered**.<br>I **haven't** ever **eaten** the Chinese food. |
| never | أبدًا/مطلقًا | تستخدم للنفى وفى جمل المقارنة وتأتى بين (has/have) & P.P. | I **have** never **played** squash before.<br>I **have** never **seen** a player faster than Ronaldo. |
| yet | حتى الآن | تستخدم فى النفى أو الاستفهام وتستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. أو فى نهاية الجملة | She **hasn't revised** her lessons yet.<br>Amr **hasn't** yet **sent** the files.<br>**Has** she **finished** cooking the food yet? |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| lately/recently حديثًا/مؤخرًا | تستخدم فى الإثبات والاستفهام وغالبًا ما تستخدم lately فى النفى. | He **has sent** me a letter lately/recently.<br>**Have** you **heard** from Noha lately/recently?<br>I **haven't been** sleeping well lately. |
| so far/ up till now حتى الآن | تستخدم فى الإثبات والنفى | She **hasn't had** any problems so far.<br>I **have sent** my brother three letters up till now. |
| over ... / throughout ... على مر .... | يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية | Egypt **has changed** over the last years.<br>She **has improved** her English throughout the years. |
| How long منذ متى | تستخدم فى الاستفهام | How long **has** he **had** that car? |
| in the last .../ in recent ... فى ... الأخيرة | يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية | Mohamed Salah **has played** for Liverpool in the last 5 years. |
| for لمدة | يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية | I **have lived** in Alexandria for 10 years. |
| since منذ | يأتى بعدها بداية الفترة الزمنية | She **has worked** as a nurse since 2010. |

تستخدم since/for مع تعبيرات مختلفة، لاحظ التالى:

Don't be confused

| Since | For |
|---|---|
| 4 o'clock | 6 hours |
| 2000 | 3 years |
| yesterday | a/several/many/ 10 (week/month/year) |
| last (week/month/year) | the last (week/month/year) |
| April/May/August | ages |
| Monday/Friday | a long time/a short time |
| then | a while/a decade/a century |
| spring/winter/summer | as long as ... can remember |
| his arrival (عبارة اسمية) | long |
| the age of .................... | |
| the 1970s (الحقب الزمنية) | |

I have started to study English since 1995/for 28 years.
She has been taught how to swim since last year/for the last year/for a year.
My brother Osama has worked in tourism since his graduation.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعل واحد فى الجملة يوضع فى زمن المضارع التام البسيط أو المستمر.

(بداية الفترة الزمنية) ← since ← (مضارع تام)

(مضارع تام)، ← (بداية الفترة الزمنية) ← Since

My daughter hasn't slept well since **yesterday**.

Since **yesterday**, my daughter hasn't slept well.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعلين ... أى ربطت بين جملتين تصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

(ماضٍ بسيط) ← since ← (مضارع تام)

(مضارع تام)، ← (ماضٍ بسيط) ← Since

We **haven't seen** him since he was in Alexandria.

Since he was in Alexandria, we **haven't seen** him.



## Important Notes



تستخدم (yet) للتعبير عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

I haven't eaten at a Chinese restaurant yet. (I expect to do it later).

أما عند استخدام (never) فهى تعبر عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع عدم توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

I have never eaten at a Chinese restaurant. (I don't expect to do it later).



من الممكن استخدام (already) للتعبير عن الدهشة.

Have you finished cooking the food already? How fast!



لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

for the last + (a period of time)

since last + (a period of time)

I haven't met my colleagues for the last week.

I haven't met my colleagues since last week.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

I haven't met my colleagues since the last meeting.



لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

**(has/have) been to + (place)** ذهب إلى مكان وعاد

He has been to London. (He came back.)

**(has/have) gone to + (place)** ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد

He has gone to London. (He is still there.)

**(has/have) been in + (place)** يمكث فى مكان

He has been in London. (He is living there.)




## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 We haven't had ice cream .................. ages.
a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

2 Scientists .................. ways to isolate genes already.
a) will develop b) have developed c) had developed d) has developed

3 He has lived in his village since he .................. .
a) retired b) was retiring c) has retired d) had retired

4 They .................. the report yet, but they will try to finish it soon.
a) have finished b) haven't finished c) finished d) can't finish

5 My keys .................. . I can't open the door.
a) are losing b) have lost c) have been lost d) has been lost

6 I am over the moon; I .................. a medal for writing poetry. *(Longman)*
a) was winning b) won c) had won d) have won

7 Have you .................. watched a Korean film?
a) never b) still c) yet d) ever

8 This is the most interesting book I .................. .
a) have never read b) read
c) ever have read d) have ever read

9 I .................. the book you were looking for. Here it is.
a) find b) will find c) was finding d) have found

10 A: Would you like something to drink? B: No, thanks. I .................. some lemonade.
a) just had b) am just having c) have just had d) had just

11 My sister is shocked. She .................. the game in the last second.
a) 's losing b) 's lost c) 'd lost d) 'd lose

12 .................. the last two weeks, we have prepared for our graduation party.
a) Since b) At c) For d) While

13 She has been in Damanhour .................. the day of her arrival from Upper Egypt.
a) for b) yet c) already d) since

14 Hatim .................. a taxi driver for 10 years; he hasn't changed his career. *(Longman)*
a) had been b) is c) was d) has been

15 I moved to Cairo. Since then, I .................. my friends.
a) haven't seen b) hasn't seen c) saw d) hadn't seen

16 .................. I started my profession, I have met a lot of excellent students.
a) When b) Since c) After d) Before

17 Have you done the experiment ..................? – You are really clever.
a) yet b) already c) ago d) since

**18** They .................. the cinema. They are at home now.
a) have been to b) have gone to c) have been in d) had been to

**19** Mourad .................. to his village. He is still there.
a) had been b) has gone c) has been d) had gone

**20** Mohammad is the most intelligent child I have .................. seen.
a) never b) lately c) ever d) yet

**21** A: Have you seen the new film? B: Sure, I .................. it yesterday. I can't miss such a good one.
a) see b) 've seen c) 'd see d) saw

**22** A: Has the road been paved? B: Yes, it .................. last week. *(Longman)*
a) paved b) was paved c) has paved d) has been paved

**23** Yara hasn't gone to school .................. the last two weeks.
a) since b) for c) when d) on

**24** I have visited my uncle .................. .
a) three times ago
b) three times last week
c) three times this week
d) yesterday

**25** Mum .................. to the shops. Let's see what she bought for us.
a) is being b) is going c) has gone d) has been

**26** What .................. is still a secret; you needn't worry. *(Longman)*
a) has been said b) has said c) have you said d) had been said

**27** .................. typed yet? *(Longman)*
a) Had the report been
b) Has the report been
c) Has the report
d) Had the report

**28** Your car .................. . It's ready to use now.
a) has already repaired
b) was being repaired
c) hasn't been repaired yet
d) has already been repaired

**29** We ate a lot yesterday, but we .................. much so far today.
a) have eaten b) haven't eaten c) didn't eat d) hadn't eaten

**30** The ceiling was white, and now it is yellow. Someone .................. it.
a) had painted
b) has been painted
c) has painted
d) had been painting

**31** She was in Marina for the summer. This means that .................. .
a) she spent every summer in Marina
b) she spends this summer in Marina
c) she spent part of the summer in Marina
d) she spent all the summer in Marina

**32** My father has been to England for two years. This means that he .................. .
a) is in England now
b) is back now
c) will be back soon
d) won't go there

# Test yourself




Part 1
**(Lessons 1 & 2)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1 After losing her job a year ago, she got in .................. to be able to support her family.
a) debate b) debt c) profit d) date

2 The play that I attended in the .................. was one of the best plays ever.
a) cinema b) stadium c) television d) theatre

3 The Ancient Egyptians built huge .................. and carved their stories on its walls.
a) trembles b) temples c) cinemas d) factories

4 I think there is no .................. for extra people to come in. Let's see a bigger hall.
a) a room b) rooms c) rooming d) room

5 All of us must .................. our president in his plans for a better future for our country.
a) support b) suppose c) hinder d) report

6 I spent most of my .................. in the field of communications in the USA.
a) profession b) work c) career d) job

7 There was an expression of pain and misery on his face. He looked so .................. .
a) misery b) miser c) miserable d) missing

8 I admire most of the .................. of our great writer Naguib Mahfouz.
a) work b) jobs c) careers d) works

9 After ten years of .................., he decided to forget his suffering and start a new life.
a) imprison b) imprisonment c) prisoner d) imprisoned

10 A person who is .................. is slightly fat in a nice way.
a) thin b) overweight c) plump d) intelligent

11 The words "earn" and "lose" are .................. .
a) adverbs b) adjectives c) synonyms d) antonyms

12 We need to fill in all the gaps in the window. There are lots of .................. in this area.
a) rats b) debts c) merchants d) prisons

13 Never borrow to buy something unimportant; you already have lots of .................. .
a) debts b) salaries c) pays d) wages

14 I prefer to be a .................. . Fixed salaries can hardly make ends meet تلبى احتياجات المعيشة.
a) prisoner b) machine c) character d) merchant

15 After 20 minutes of waiting for the lift المصعد, I .................. out that the button was faulty.
a) found b) got c) owed d) earned

## Language

**16** I haven't met my friends .................. a long time.

a) for b) until c) when d) since

**17** I haven't met my friend since he .................. abroad a year ago.

a) travelled b) had travelled c) has travelled d) travels

**18** Have you done your work alone ..................? I can't believe it!

a) yet b) already c) ever d) just

**19** This is the best story I .................. read all my life.

a) still have b) had ever
c) have never d) have ever

**20** I don't think the food .................. cooked yet.

a) has been b) had been c) was d) will be

**21** This is the third time my Facebook account .................. this year.

a) has hacked b) was hacked
c) was hacking d) has been hacked

**22** Saad Zaghlool .................. into exile المنفى twice.

a) has sent b) was sent c) will send d) sent

**23** .................. . The boss needs it urgently.

a) Had the report been printed?
b) Has the report already printed?
c) Will the report be printed?
d) Has the report already been printed?

**24** There has been a traffic jam in the square .................. two hours.

a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

**25** I have studied English .................. the age of six.

a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

**26** Ashraf .................. much weight recently.

a) gained b) has gained c) is gained d) gains

**27** Mona has bought that car since she .................. to learn how to drive.

a) starts b) had started c) will start d) started

**28** A: Have you ever visited the Pyramids? B: Yes, I .................. there last year.

a) have gone b) have been c) went d) had gone

**29** A: Where is your father, Amina? B: He .................. to the supermarket.

a) has gone b) has been c) was d) had gone

**30** The dishes are clean! Who .................. them?

a) had washed b) washed c) was washing d) has washed




## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| community (n) | مجتمع | voluntary work (n)* | عمل تطوعى |
| culture (n) | ثقافة | youth association (n) | جمعية (اتحاد) شباب |
| food bank (n) | بنك الطعام | | |

Can you give examples for voluntary work? 

لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك 

### Vocabulary on Reading Texts

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| main (adj) | رئيسى | solve (v) – d | يحل |
| paint (n) (v) – ed | دهان/يرسم/يدهن | solution (n) | حل |
| plan (n) (v) – ned | خطة/يخطط | surprise (n) (v) – d | مفاجأة/يفاجئ |
| planning (n) | التخطيط | touch (v) – ed | يلمس |

### Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| admit (v) – ted | يعترف | experience (v) – d (n) | يجرب/خبرة |
| adult (n)/(adj) | شخص بالغ | grow up (v) | ينضج |
| around (adv) | حول | later (adv) | فيما بعد |
| break (v)/(n) | يكسر/راحة | nowhere (adv) | لا مكان |
| common (adj) | معتاد/شائع | stepfather (n) | زوج الأم |
| disabled (n) | معاق | trick (n) (v) – ed | خدعة/يخدع |
| dreamer (n) | حالم | trust (v) – ed | يثق |
| the Egyptian Red Crescent | الهلال الأحمر المصرى | unusual (adj) | غير معتاد |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The student .................... that he had made a mistake and he apologised.

a) denied  b) touched
c) painted  d) admitted

2 The hospital has asked some .................... organisations to help raise money.

a) volunteer  b) voluntary
c) adult  d) planning

3 I don't think this applicant has the required .................... for the job.

a) experiment  b) trick
c) experience  d) surprise

4 The project is still at the .................... stage. We haven't started it yet.

a) planning  b) community
c) playing  d) painting

5 The policeman asked the woman to .................... the man who robbed her.

a) return  b) trust  c) describe  d) plan

6 Do you .................... this website? I think it's not original.

a) trust  b) admit  c) imagine  d) trick

7 Egypt is home to people from many different .................... .

a) solutions  b) cultures
c) communities  d) lectures

8 The walls of my house are very dull and need to be .................... .

a) painted  b) broken
c) touched  d) removed

9 The thieves could get into the house by a .................... .

a) surprise  b) disability
c) trick  d) track

10 Both children and .................... can watch this film as it is suitable for all ages.

a) babies  b) grown  c) cultures  d) adults

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| as much as | بقدر ما | send ... to | يرسل إلى |
| do a great job | يقوم بعمل عظيم | play a trick on | يخدع |
| do work for | يقوم بعمل من أجل | stop ... from | يوقف ... من |
| give ... back to | يرد ... إلى | unusual for | غير معتاد لـ |
| most of ... | معظم | write down | يدون |
| return to | يعود إلى | go wrong | يخطئ/يسوء |
| put ... into | يضع ... في | tell a story | يروي قصة |
| make a difference | يصنع اختلافًا | (something) in common | (شيء) مشترك |

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| admit | يعترف | admission | اعتراف/إقرار | admissible | مسموح/مقبول |
| -------------------------- | | culture | ثقافة | cultural<br>cultured | ثقافي<br>مثقف/متحضر |
| dream | يحلم | dream<br>dreamer | حلم<br>شخص حالم | dreamy | حالم/غامض/كثير الأحلام |
| disable | يُعجّز | disability | إعاقة | disabled | ذو احتياجات خاصة |
| associate | يرتبط/يتحد | association | اتحاد/منظمة | associated | مترابط |
| volunteer | يتطوع | volunteer | متطوع | voluntary | تطوعي |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| admit | يعترف | confess/acknowledge | deny/renounce | ينكر |
| culture | ثقافة | civilisation/art | ignorance | جهل |
| lucky | محظوظ | fortunate | unlucky/unfortunate | غير محظوظ |
| main | رئيسي/أساسي | major/essential | minor/trivial | غير هام/تافه |
| trust | يثق | believe/place confidence in | doubt/disbelieve | يشك/لا يصدق |
| unusual | غير معتاد | uncommon/<br>unconventional | usual/conventional/common | معتاد |
| voluntary | تطوعي | willing/free | involuntary/unwilling | غير تطوعي |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Professor Yacoub has .................... a difference to our people's lives.
a) made b) done c) had d) removed

2 He was born with a/an .................... but his parents could help him.
a) disable b) disabled
c) ability d) disability

3 I was very lucky to win the final match and get the prize. The synonym of the word "lucky" is .................... .
a) unwilling b) fortunate
c) doubt d) unlucky

4 I don't respect those who play tricks .................... their friends or other people.
a) in b) with c) on d) at

5 My son has .................... a great job when he came first in the final exams.
a) done b) made
c) taken d) won

6 How much does a person have to .................... on food every week?
a) stay b) spend c) admit d) solve

7 The thief admitted breaking into the bank. The antonym of the word "admit" is .................... .
a) deny b) confess
c) trust d) acknowledge

8 I was prepared to take on the job with all its .................... risks.
a) associate b) association
c) associated d) associates

9 I have seen unusual activities in this country. The synonym of the word "unusual" is .................... .
a) common b) uncommon
c) unwilling d) usual

10 .................... stories for kids is one of my favourite hobbies.
a) Saying b) Taking c) Telling d) Doing

## Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | later | فيما بعد | I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later. |
| | latter | الأخير | I met Ali and Samy; the latter seemed exhausted. |
| 2 | make + (object) + inf. | يجعل | I like him because he makes me laugh. |
| | make + (someone/ something) + adj. | يجعل | He wants to make the world a better place. |
| | force + (object) + to + inf. | يجبر/يجعل | She forced her daughter to sleep early. |
| 3 | spend + time + (v + ing)* | يقضي وقتًا | I spent three hours playing video games with my friends. |
| | spend* | ينفق (يصرف) مالًا | My wife spent a lot of money last week. |

* Actually, we spend time and money.

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 .................... on, you will probably wish that you had worked harder.
a) Latter b) Late c) Later d) Latest

2 The thief made the old man .................... out all his money.
a) to take b) taking c) to taking d) take

3 I don't like to spend much time .................... television.
a) watch b) to watching c) watching d) to watch

4 The company is spending .................... on providing technical courses.
a) efforts b) loads of experience
c) many experiments d) thousands of pounds

5 English and Chinese are so important but the .................... seems to be more difficult.
a) later b) latter c) latest d) late




## Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I am very good at .................. stories to my children that make them amused.
a) saying b) doing c) telling d) asking

2 Students need to .................. their study more carefully to pass their exams.
a) plane b) plan c) play d) plain

3 Doctors and nurses .................. a great job to help us to face pandemics.
a) make b) do c) play d) give

4 The .................... reason for learning English is to get a better job in the future.
a) plump b) main c) later d) mean

5 I asked my students not to .......... anything in the laboratory during the experiment.
a) stop b) trust c) touch d) clutch

6 It is important to have a .................. if you want to perform better at work.
a) breakage b) breakaway c) fight d) break

7 There were two options for me to study philosophy and history. I chose the .......... .
a) latter b) late c) lately d) later

8 He is a very reliable person and so we can .................... him to help us.
a) trust b) trick c) admit d) make

9 He doesn't want his mother to marry after his father's death. He doesn't like to have a .................... .
a) stepmother b) granny c) grandfather d) stepfather

10 The little child .................... breaking the glass of the window by mistake, so the teacher forgave him. *(Longman)*
a) planned b) suggested c) denied d) admitted

11 People from many different .................. will get together during the conference.
a) solutions b) experiences c) cultures d) machines

12 Youth .................... is a group of young people who do things together.
a) federation b) participation c) negotiation d) association

13 The wall will need two more coats طبقات of .................... .
a) bee b) plant c) paint d) paintbrush

14 Finally, the thief .................. stealing the money from my neighbours.
a) avoided b) refused c) dreamed d) admitted

15 I think you are a ....................! What you think about may never happen. You should concentrate on what is really happening.
a) dreamer b) teller c) realistic d) professor

16 Ramzy used to play .................... on his friends. *(Longman)*
a) tours b) tracks c) treks d) tricks

17 Children need to .................... things by themselves in order to learn from them.
a) expert b) experience c) admit d) expire

18 The contributions that parents make to the school funds تمويل are .................... not compulsory إجبارى. They can decide whether to share or not.
a) obligatory b) voluntary c) volunteer d) prohibited

19 If I'm not mistaken, you can't .................... me change my mind. (Longman)
a) force b) allow c) make d) get

20 The children spent their holidays with their father and .................... who married him after their mother's death.
a) stepmother b) granny c) grandfather d) stepfather

21 To learn everything from your teachers, you should write .................... everything they say.
a) in b) for c) up d) down

22 Although he has a ...................., he became first in the swimming competition.
a) disable b) disabled c) disability d) disabilities

23 Our president's name is always .................... with the great achievements in Egypt.
a) associated b) association c) associating d) associate

24 I hate those who like to .................... tricks .................... other people.
a) do/in b) make/on c) invent/with d) play/on

25 Her .................... of the events that evening was most amusing.
a) describe b) descriptive c) description d) describes

26 The inventions and discoveries of our great scientists made .................... to our lives.
a) different b) differentiate c) a different d) a difference

27 Our history teacher was a very .................... man who knew much about everything.
a) cultural b) cultured c) culture d) cultures

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

28 My daughter does a lot of voluntary work for the Resala Charity Organisation. The word "voluntary" equals in meaning the words .................... and .................... .
a) unwillingly b) free c) involuntary d) willingly e) compulsory

29 She played minor roles in various fields before she became a famous actress. The antonyms of the word "minor" are "...................." and "....................".
a) unimportant b) major c) secondary d) trivial e) main

30 My daughter .................... a very clever businessman who is very respected.
a) marry b) married to c) married d) is married to e) is marry to

31 I don't trust this tricky man. This means I "...................." and "...................." him. (Longman)
a) owe b) doubt c) believe d) disbelieve e) respect

32 Finally, I .................... that he was a liar and what he said was wrong.
a) founded out b) invented c) explored d) discovered e) found out

33 Several people described seeing "strange" lights in the sky. The synonyms of the word "strange" are "...................." and "....................".
a) common b) unfamiliar c) usual d) normal e) unusual

## B Language

### Extra Points



نستخدم المضارع التام بعد التعبيرات This is the first/second/... time.

- This is the first time I have made this silly mistake.



عند وجود دليل على انتهاء الفعل تمامًا بلا أثر فى الحاضر نستخدم الماضى البسيط.

- My friend has worked for this company for twenty years. (He is still working.)
- My friend worked for this company for twenty years before retiring last year.

3

عادة ما نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكرنا للموضوع للمرة الأولى ولكن الماضى البسيط نستخدمه لتوضيح تفاصيل ما حدث.

- There has been a serious accident on the road to Cairo. It happened at 9 this morning when a lorry went out of control and hit a car.

4

من الممكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة الزمنية.

**since + a period of time + ago**

- I have lived in this town since 10 months ago.

5

من الممكن استخدام (since) كأداة ربط يأتى بعدها سبب أو تعليل.

- He was arrested since he stole my money.



للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث نستخدم:

**Since when + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?**

- **A:** Since when have you married Noha? **B:** Since 2002.

7

للسؤال عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث نستخدم:

**For how long + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?**

- **A:** For how long have you married Noha? **B:** For 20 years.

**8** يســتخدم زمــن المضارع التــام للتعبير عن حدث تم وما زال أثــره فى الحاضر أما إذا كان الأثر فى الماضى فيســتخدم زمن الماضى التام.

My car is very clean because I have washed it.
My car was very clean because I had washed it.

**9** يســتخدم زمن المضارع التام مع التعبيرات التى تدل على أجزاء (اليوم - الأســبوع - الشــهر - العام) بشــرط إذا كانت هذه الفترة الزمنية لم تنته وقت الكلام مثل:

this (morning/afternoon/evening)/today/tonight/this (week/month/year)

I have watched a film tonight. (ما زالت الليلة ممتدة ولم ينته بعد فى وقت الكلام)

أما إذا كانت قد انتهت وقت الكلام فنستخدم الماضى البسيط.

I watched a film tonight. (الليلة انتهت وقت الكلام)



لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

**It's + مدة زمنية + since + فاعل + (last) past simple ماضٍ بسيط**

It's two years since I met my friend Ali.

**فاعل + last + past simple + ... + when + فاعل + past simple**

He last visited the Eiffel Tower when he was in France.

**فاعل + past simple + (a moment ago - a short time ago – just now)**

She finished washing up a moment ago.

**الفاعل + (has/have) + never + (P.P.) + ... + before**

I have never been to China before.

**فاعل + superlative (has/have) + ever + P.P.**

He's the most intelligent person I've ever met.




عند وجود ما يدل على استمرار الفعل وعدم انتهائه مع كلمات for – since – all نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر:

(has – have) + been + v-ing

Hams has been working for three hours and she hasn't finished yet.
I have been playing football all day. I am really so tired.

11

لاحظ هذه المقارنة بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط:

| Present Perfect | Past Simple |
|---|---|
| - I have been to Mansura and Tanta. (وقت غير محدد) | - I went to Mansura a week ago. (وقت محدد فى الماضى) |
| - Have you been busy this morning? (ما زلنا فى فترة الصباح ولم تنته) | - Were you busy this morning? (انتهت فترة الصباح وأصبحت ماضيًا) |
| - Have you had a nice time? (عاد من الخارج حالًا) | - Did you have a nice time? (عاد من الخارج قبل وقت من السؤال) |
| - He has been a teacher for 20 years. (مازال مدرسًا) | - He was a teacher for 20 years. (لم يعد مدرس) |

## Language Summary




### Affirmative

- He has worked as a teacher for 10 years.
- They have worked as teachers for 10 years.

### Usage

- Actions that started in the past and continue.
- Questions and answers about people's experiences.
- Actions that happened in the past without mentioning the time.
- Actions that happened in the past and its effect is clear in present.

### Negative

- He hasn't worked as a teacher.
- They haven't worked as teachers.

### Question

- **A:** Has he worked as a teacher?
  **B:** Yes, he has. /No, he hasn't.
- **A:** How long have they worked as teachers?
- **B:** They have worked as teachers for 10 years.



## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 It's more than 20 years .................. I travelled abroad.
a) while b) before c) when d) since

2 My father .................. in this company for 20 years.
a) works b) has worked c) had worked d) is working

3 It is the first time I .................. an actor.
a) have ever met b) have never met c) ever meet d) never met

4 Marwan hasn't played tennis .................. he was young.
a) for b) when c) since d) after

5 I have .................. tried seafood and I have no desire to try it.
a) just b) ever c) lately d) never

6 They have .................. cleaned the room. You needn't clean it again.
a) ever b) never c) already d) hardly

7 I haven't seen Mr Smith .................. the last conference. *(Longman)*
a) for b) since c) ago d) when

8 It .................. for three hours. The street is very muddy.
a) is raining b) had rained c) has rained d) rained

9 I have .................. read a good book like this before.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) before

10 His father .................. . He can't help crying.
a) had just died b) just dying c) has usually died d) has just died

11 He .................. by the police once already.
a) is warned b) has warned c) has been warned d) had warned

12 He has lived in Cairo .................. the age of sixteen.
a) in b) on c) by d) since

13 I have .................. been to Italy before. I haven't visited any European countries up till now. *(Longman)*
a) never b) ever c) already d) recently

14 Ola looks pale. She .................. ill for long.
a) had been b) has been c) was d) is

15 Since when .................. ill?
a) is your father b) has your father been
c) was your father d) your father was

16 **A:** Have you cooked the food, Mum? **B:** Yes, I .................. it an hour ago.
a) have b) cooked c) have cooked d) has cooked

17 It's two weeks since he .................. abroad.
a) travelled b) has travelled c) travels d) travel

18 My father last had his car washed .................. he was in Cairo.
a) since b) while c) for d) when

19 I have not seen Ali .................. the last time we met in Alexandria. *(Longman)*
a) for b) while c) when d) since

20 Ramy .................. PlayStation for two hours and he is still playing.
a) played b) has been played c) has been playing d) is playing

21 Mr Fadel .................. a teacher for more than 20 years now.
a) has been being b) has been c) was d) was being

22 It is an hour .................. he phoned to ask me to go with them.
a) for b) when c) since d) while

23 My kids are really pleased as this is the first time they .................. the Pyramids.
a) visited b) have never visited c) have ever visited d) was visiting

24 How long ago .................. he come back from South Africa? *(Longman)*
a) has b) had c) did d) does

25 My daughter .................. English all day.
a) has been studying b) has been studied
c) had studied d) studied

26 Radwa .................. ten letters today. She is still working.
a) has been writing b) has written
c) wrote d) had written

27 He .................. to the market. I will wait for him until he comes back.
a) has been b) has gone c) goes d) had gone

28 .................. the death of her husband, I've never seen her smiling.
a) For b) Since c) So far d) When

29 He wants to know .................. I have been a member of this sports club.
a) since how long b) for how long c) for when d) how long ago

30 I am sorry for coming late, sir. I .................. the toilet.
a) have been to b) have gone to c) have been in d) was being in

31 We haven't seen each other since we .................. in Hurghada. *(Longman)*
a) being b) have been c) were d) are

32 I last played football on Monday. This sentence means that .................. .
a) I didn't play football since Monday b) I haven't played football since Monday
c) I had played football on Monday d) I didn't play football on Monday

33 Marwan is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that .................. .
a) I have seen many clever students like Marwan
b) I have seen many students who are better than Marwan
c) Marwan isn't as clever as the students I have ever seen
d) It is the first time to see a student who is clever like Marwan

34 Ashraf has been working as a waiter for 3 years. This means that .................. .
a) he didn't work as a waiter
b) it's 3 years since he left his work as a waiter
c) he still works as a waiter
d) he no longer works as a waiter

# Test yourself




Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I always study hard as I don't want to .................. failure.
a) experience b) experiment c) touch d) exert

2 The .................. entrance to the building is on the other side. You can reach it easily.
a) main b) mean c) plain d) mane

3 There have been a lot of useful activities for young people since the youth .................. was formed in our city.
a) charitable b) prison c) association d) society

4 I think that it's a very good .................. to improve the reputation of the company.
a) community b) culture c) association d) opportunity

5 We need to work together to find sustainable .................. to our problems.
a) causes b) reasons c) savings d) solutions

6 To everyone's .................., my favourite team lost the match yesterday.
a) luck b) surprise c) fun d) madness

7 The government tries hard to provide all facilities for .................. .
a) the disable b) the disability c) disabled d) the disabled

8 It is known that most .................. the shops and companies are shut on Fridays.
a) from b) of c) in d) about

9 There are .................. differences between people in Europe and those in Egypt.
a) cultures b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally

10 My father was a highly .................. man, so all people admired him.
a) culture b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally

11 During wars, floods and other disasters, food .................. provide the poor with food.
a) misers b) pirates c) mutinies d) banks

12 I think something .................. wrong with my car. I need to take it to the mechanic's.
a) went b) had c) made d) did

13 Reda and I have some interests in .................. . We both like reading and fishing.
a) common b) difference c) success d) expert

14 The ministry is responsible for future .................. so that we will not have unexpected problems.
a) planning b) drawing c) painting d) admitting

15 Children in poor areas have big dreams of living in a decent .................. to enjoy their rights.
a) school b) community c) culture d) volunteering

16 Ali won the first prize for reading .................. 2011.

a) since b) in c) from d) at

17 Yomna has begun to read short stories .................. 2008.

a) since b) in c) for d) at

18 My friend hasn't visited Aswan .................. he was young.

a) for b) when c) since d) after

19 Ahmed .................. in Qena for ten years. Now, he lives in Alexandria.

a) lived b) has lived c) were living d) had lived

20 Menna visited her close friend Sama .................. .

a) just b) just now c) ago d) yet

21 The little boy is crying because he .................. over and injured his arm.

a) has fallen b) is falling c) had fallen d) was falling

22 We .................. to a fantastic journey in Aswan last week.

a) have taken b) are taking c) were taken d) took

23 Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education .................. .

a) has made b) made c) was making d) has been made

24 The court will punish the gang العصابة as soon as they .................. them.

a) had arrested b) have arrested c) arrested d) will arrest

25 The last time we attended a party was .................. we were 20 years old.

a) since b) while c) already d) when

26 The famous player says that he has played football .................. as long as he can remember.

a) for b) when c) since d) while

27 Farida has gone to school. This means that she .................. there.

a) is still b) is no longer c) was d) won't be

28 Maha is so tired as she .................. so hard since morning.

a) has worked b) will work
c) had been working d) has been worked

29 When the patient cut his finger, he .................. antibiotic.

a) was giving b) will be given
c) was given d) had given

30 .................. at home when she smashed the glass window?

a) Were you being b) Did you be
c) Were you d) Be you

Study | Watch a video | Part (3) Lessons 5 & 6

# Chapter 3

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| attack | يهاجم | harbour | ميناء |
| bank | مصرف/ضفة نهر | join | ينضم إلى/يلحق بـ |
| barrel | برميل | mean | يعنى/يقصد |
| crew | طاقم | mutiny | تمرد/عصيان |
| crutch | عكاز | own | يمتلك |
| clue | دليل | parrot | ببغاء |
| destination | المكان المقصود/جهة الوصول | pirate | قرصان |
| empty | فارغ | past | مارًا أمام |
| explain | يشرح/يفسر | patient | صبور/مريض |
| gang | عصابة | secret | سر/سرى |

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| agree with | يتفق مع | nearly empty | شبه فارغ |
| become blind | يصاب بالعمى | pay for | يدفع لـ |
| climb inside | يتسلق للداخل | prepare to | يستعد لـ |
| full of | ملىء | run after | يلحق |
| go on a journey | يذهب فى رحلة | the front of | مقدمة |
| go on the ship | يصعد السفينة | tired of | متعب من |
| happy about | سعيد بشأن | walk around | يتجول |
| happy to | سعيد لـ | took some time to | استغرق بعض الوقت لـ |
| look after | يعتنى بـ | wait that long | ينتظر هذا الوقت الطويل |
| make me laugh | يضحكنى | walk up | يسير متجهًا |

# Practice




## Novel Exercises Chapter (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I saw a lot of ships and boats in the .................. this morning.
a) station b) airport c) harbour d) navy

2 A .................. of men attacked the prison and broke some prisoners out.
a) band b) gang c) pirate d) collection

3 I like .................. as they are beautiful and can speak like people.
a) cats b) lions c) butterflies d) parrots

4 Rami is ..................; he usually waits for us calmly for a long time! *(Longman)*
a) impatient b) hasty c) rash d) patient

5 The police are looking for .................. to solve the crime. *(Longman)*
a) keys b) clues c) symbols d) doubts

6 We weren't told about the .................. of our journey. It was a surprise.
a) position b) formation
c) distinction d) destination

7 The workers threaten that there will be a/an .................. if conditions don't improve.
a) matter b) mutiny c) attack d) party

8 The price of oil today is about 100 dollars per .................. .
a) barrier b) barrow c) barter d) barrel

9 A .................. is a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg. *(Longman)*
a) crutch b) crash c) wheel d) bike

10 You shouldn't tell anyone about your computer password. It must be ............... .
a) obvious b) available c) secret d) scared

11 In the past, ships were attacked by .................. who were very savage.
a) pirates b) birds c) pilots d) animals

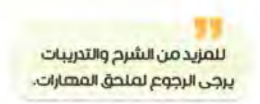
12 This device is designed for .................. people as it works by voice.
a) deaf b) blind c) dump d) blond

13 I like walking on the .................. of the river with my friends enjoying the beauty of nature.
a) shore b) beach c) coast d) bank

14 There was a violent storm and nearly all the ............... of the ship met their end.
a) staff b) group c) crew d) pack

15 I couldn't understand the lesson, so I asked my teacher to .................. it again.
a) prepare b) express c) join d) explain







**How to prepare for writing a short story:**

1. You should first plan your story. (Time, place, problem and the main characters)
2. Use adjectives and adverbs to describe people and actions briefly.
3. As the story continues, mention the problem and how was it solved.
4. There should be a lesson/moral that we should learn from your story.




## A Story of Good Luck

Five years ago, the night train from Cairo to Aswan was full of passengers. One of the passengers was called Maher. He was travelling to Aswan to see his aunt and uncle. Suddenly, the train stopped. Maher looked out of the window and found that they were in the middle of the country and everything was black. His train stopped because there was something in front of it which looked like a man in a big black coat. The man was moving his arms up and down slowly. Maher thought that it was terrifying. Two passengers started to walk towards the man in the black coat but couldn't touch him. Two other men came and said that all passengers were lucky as the train stopped. There was a terrible crash ahead.

A car accident caused the bridge to collapse on the railway. Luckily, there was a big light on the front of the train and in the middle of the big light, there was a butterfly. When it moved, its wings made a big shadow which looked like a man moving his arms. So, all passengers were saved thanks to their good luck.

## Practice




## Skills Exercises

**1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one plant that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree bark, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Natural remedies are attracting attention because they .................. .
   a) are used in Egypt
   b) have side effects
   c) are exported from Egypt
   d) can treat a lot of diseases

2 Garlic is an example of .................. .
   a) natural remedies
   b) artificial herbs
   c) chemical medicines
   d) modern drugs

3 The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the .................. .
   a) herbalist
   b) shop
   c) customer
   d) prescription

4 Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because .................. .
   a) it's cheaper and cleaner
   b) it's easily found and easily taken in
   c) it cures and protects from side effects
   d) many local people benefit from selling it

5 The main idea of the passage is "..................".

a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits

b) The Chemical Medicine Disadvantages

c) The Faculty of Medicine

d) Trees Can Cure

6 Which sentence is NOT correct about natural herbs?

a) They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.

b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.

c) They can be fried on fire to be served.

d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.

7 The bark of the .................. is used to make aspirin.

a) bush tree
b) shadow plant
c) palm tree
d) willow tree

**2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1 We should exert great effort to develop sports by all means and this is the responsibility of the government and the individuals as well.

a) علينا بذل جهود كثيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل المعانى وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد كذلك.

b) علينا بذل جهود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد، كذلك.

c) يجب علينا بذل جهود مضنية لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية الدولة والأفراد مثل جيدًا.

d) علينا عمل جهود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية المؤسسات والأشخاص.

2 Terrorism is one of the worst and most complicated problems that has a lot of destructive effects on both citizens and society.

a) الإرهاب يعتبر من أفضل المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.

b) تعتبر السياحة من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، ولها الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.

c) الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأقلها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.

d) يعتبر الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.

3 It is believed that money is the root of all evil. It is considered the main reason for the deviation, addiction, committing crimes and even wars among countries.

a) من المعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الخير. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسى للانعطاف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.

b) يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الفرعى للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.

c) يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسى للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.

d) إنه من الإيمان أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسى للانحراف والإرهاب وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.

4 There are a lot of people who are miserable as they don't have enough money to live a decent life or a good place to live in.

a) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البخل لأنهم يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش أو مكان للعيش فيه.

b) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص البائسين الذين لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال ليحظو بحياة غالية أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.

c) هنـاك الكثير من الأشـخاص الذيـن يعانون من البؤس لأنهـم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المـال ليحظو بحياة كريمة أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.

d) هناك القليل من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البؤس لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش.

5 Researches say that we must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease the bad effects of work stress.

a) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب ألا تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.

b) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.

c) الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنقاذ أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.

d) الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتسهيل الآثار الصعبة لضغوط العمل.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يلعب الآباء والمعلمون وكذلك الإعلام دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، وتعديل سلوكياتهم ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

a) Parents, teachers and the media play an important rule in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.

b) Parents, teachers and the media play an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.

c) Play parents, teachers and the median important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.

d) Parents, teachers and the media make an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.

7 مما لا شـك فيه أننا نعيش فى عصر العلم والتكنولوجيا. فالكمبيوتر والإنترنت من الاختراعات التى جعلت كل شـىء من السهل أن يحدث.

a) There is no doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything difficult to happen.

b) Undoubtedly, we live in the age of scientific and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything easy to happen.

c) There is no doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything easy to happen.

d) No doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make something easy to happen.

8 يُقال إن البشر فى خطر دائماً نتيجة لتدخلهم فى الطبيعة بسبب جشعهم وغبائهم.

a) It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.

b) It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and intelligence.

c) People say that human beings are always in safe as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.

d) They said that human beings are never in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.

9 يجب على الحكومة المصرية الاهتمام بتطوير المؤسسات الطبية لكى تتمكن من مواجهة أى خطر فى المستقبل.

a) The Egyptian government must play attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.

b) Must on the Egyptian government pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to hinder any danger in the future.

c) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.

d) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any dangerous in the future.

10 إن إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة ساهم فى تحسين العملية التعليمية بوجه عام وساعد الكثير من الأطفال والشباب على القراءة بحرية.

a) The establishment of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.

b) The establishment of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational operation in generally and helped many children and youths to read freely.

c) The building of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process with a general face and helped many children and youth to read freely.

d) The constructing of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improve the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.

**3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**"How to reduce the number of young people who give up education at early ages."**

................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ............ | I used the right structure. ............ | I used a topic sentence. ............ | I wrote the conclusion. ............ | I used the right punctuation. ............




## Al-Adwaa Test 40

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 Those who .................. ill from time to time should see a doctor regularly.
a) become b) make c) do d) get e) go

2 After months without rain, the ground was too hard to plough. The antonyms of the word "hard" are ".................." and "..................".
a) soft b) delicate c) rocklike d) blank e) pure

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 The little boy .................. out all his toys onto the floor and so his mother was angry.
a) tidied b) tricked c) emptied d) shut

4 I would like you to .................. my name from your mailing list.
a) add b) remove c) put d) stop

5 I think I've .................. why they had lied to me about their real identity هوية.
a) discovered b) invented c) explored d) scanned

6 All he needs is a/an .................. to show his ability.
a) opportunity b) solution c) admittance d) unusual

7 It would .................. you to get your teachers' advice before taking your final exams.
a) harm b) hurt c) gain d) pay

8 During my last holiday, I have .................. a lot of weight as I spent it eating a lot without moving.
a) won b) earned c) gained d) beat

9 We always .................. people who work hard.
a) insult b) award c) insist d) reward

10 I am a student in the third secondary grade. I .................. English for twelve years.
a) learn b) learnt c) have learnt d) am learning

11 We .................. our friends for a year. They are too busy.
a) never have met b) haven't met
c) have met d) haven't been met

12 The teacher has explained the lesson .................. the whole week.
a) when b) as long as c) for d) since

13 Noha .................. the house for three hours. She looks very tired.
a) has been cleaned b) had been cleaning
c) has cleaned d) was being cleaned

14 My son .................. the thief running away a moment ago.
a) have seen b) has seen c) see d) saw

15 My family has lived in Mansoura .................. the day I was born on.

a) for b) when c) while d) since

16 I can't go to bed now because I .................. my homework yet.

a) haven't done b) don't do c) hasn't done d) hadn't done

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Dear Mr Reda,

I hope everything is OK with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing table tennis and volleyball. But, let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmed and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transport, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home, I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mother solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing.

See you soon, my manager.

Best regards,

Anas

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 The writer thinks that his friends .................. .

a) didn't like his appearance b) liked his appearance

c) made fun of his appearance d) were ashamed of his shoes

18 The underlined word "up-to-date" means .................. .

a) old b) ancient c) modern d) fast

19 What is the purpose of this passage?

a) The writer wants to tell a story. b) The writer is not going to work.

c) The writer is proud of his mum. d) The writer is showing his abilities.

20 According to the passage, the writer is .................. .

a) careful b) punctual c) careless d) hard-working

**21** How much did it cost the writer to go home?

a) 150 pounds. b) 300 pounds. c) 75 pounds. d) 225 pounds.

**22** The writer sent .................. in the attachment.

a) his tasks b) his shoes c) his photos d) nothing

**23** How could the writer pay for the ride?

a) He paid by Visa card.
b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house.
c) His mother paid for him when he reached home.
d) The driver didn't take money.

**24** **Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم للغاية لأنك تحتاج إلى استمتاع بعملك حتى تحقق النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتأكد أن هذه الوظيفة لن تؤثر على حياتك الشخصية.

a) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.
b) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not effect your personal life.
c) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your public life.
d) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be success. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

**25** **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

a) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية، لذلك يجب علي المعلمين إحباط طلابهم للمشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة.
b) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة.
c) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تدعيم طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المشتركة.
d) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرًا عاديًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة.

**26** **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The advantages of living in a civilised city."

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 286

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Study again | Practise more | Take more exams | Well done! |

# Making new freinds

## Unit 4

## Objectives




استفيد بمحتوى
الوحدة الرقمى

- **Reading** : A magazine article about moving to a new town
- **Writing** : An email to a magazine's problem page
- **Listening** : A radio phone-in about bullying at school
- **Speaking** : Having a debate
- **Language** : Articles, countable/uncountable nouns
- **Life Skills** : Respect for diversity; communication

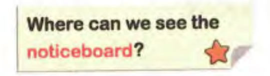
**Study** | Watch a video | Part (1)

# Lessons 1 & 2

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| advice (n) | نصيحة |
| connection (n) | صلة/علاقة |
| noticeboard (n)* | لوحة ملاحظات |
| take something for granted | يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه - مسلمًا به |





لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك


### Vocabulary on Reading

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| article (n) | مقال |
| conversation (n) | محادثة |
| cool (adj) | رائع/هادئ |
| enjoy (v) – ed | يستمتع بـ |
| face (v) – d | يواجه |
| favourite (adj) (n) | مفضَّل |
| feel (v) | يشعر بـ |
| follow (v) – ed | يتبع |
| friendship (n) | صداقة |
| grade (n) | مرتبة/تقدير |
| individual sport (n) | رياضة فردية |
| join (v) – ed | يلتحق بـ |
| magazine (n) | مجلة |
| personal (adj) | شخصى |
| personnel (n) | قسم شئون العاملين |
| relax (v) – ed | يسترخى |
| stressed (adj) | مضغوط |
| stressful (adj) | مُجهِد |
| team sport (n) | رياضة جماعية |
| teammates (n) | أعضاء الفريق |
| teenager (n) | شخص مراهق |
| wear (v) | يرتدى |

### Workbook Vocabulary

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| (be) allowed | مسموح له |
| connect (v) – ed | يتصل |
| extra (adj) | إضافى |
| inform (v) – ed | يخبر |
| information (n) | معلومات |
| pollute (v) – d | يلوث |
| practice (n) | تدريب |
| produce (v) – d | يُنتج |
| pronounce (v) – d | ينطق |
| useful (adj) | مفيد |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 There is a clear .................... between crime and poverty.

a) communication b) connection c) prediction d) line

2 It is important to .................... the instructions of your doctors to be better.

a) neglect b) ignore c) tell d) follow

3 I read a/an .................... about global warming in the newspaper today.

a) advice b) noticeboard c) article d) information

4 This .................... is concerned with the news of Egyptian artists.

a) noticeboard b) grant c) grade d) magazine

5 Ronaldo's .................... said that he helped them as a team captain.

a) teammates b) classmates c) colleagues d) relatives

6 Remas got a part-time job to earn some .................... money.

a) useful b) extra c) extended d) stressed

7 He found it very hard to teach a class full of .................... who are not adults yet.

a) grown-ups b) teammates c) teenagers d) grades

8 Mona is believed to have left school after the third .................... .

a) grade b) degree c) practice d) article

9 Many families .................... a lot of hardships as a result of high prices.

a) solve b) face c) wear d) make

10 My children used to fight, but they are .................... now.

a) nervous b) burning c) stressful d) cool

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| break-time | وقت الراحة/الفسحة | good to | عطوف على/بارٌ بـ |
| busy + (v-ing) | مشغول بـ | go out with | يخرج مع |
| do practice | يتدرب | make friends | يكـوِّن صداقات |
| do team sports | يمارس رياضات جماعية | make it easier | يجعله أسهل |
| enjoy yourself | أقضى وقتًا ممتعًا | on my own | بمفردى |
| feel better | يشعر بتحسن | part of a team | عضو فى فريق |
| feel like* | يشعر وكأنه | pass an exam | يجتاز اختبارًا |
| find out | يكتشف | put ... into practice | ينفذ شيء للتجربة |
| give advice | يعطى نصيحة | spend time with | يقضى وقتا مع |
| get easier | يصبح أسهل | instead of | بدلًا من |
| go online | يدخل على الإنترنت | move to | ينتقل إلى |
| ask for | يطلب | revise for | يراجع من أجل |
| connect with | يتصل بـ | stressed about | مضغوط بشأن |
| connected to | مرتبطًا بـ | talk about | يتحدث عن |
| good at | جيد فى | talk to | يتحدث إلى |
| good for | مفيد لـ | | |

I feel like a monster when I am hungry. *

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ------------------------ | | teenager | مراهق | teenage | خاص بفترة المراهقة |
| advise | ينصح | advice<br>adviser/advisor | نصيحة<br>مستشار | advisable<br>advisory | مستحسن/مستحب<br>استشارى/نُصحى |
| connect* | يتصل | connection<br>connector | اتصال/ارتباط<br>وصلة/موصل | connected | مربوط/موصول |
| converse | يتحاور/يناقش | conversation | محادثة/حوار | conversational | تحاورى/عامى |

- The cable connects the device to the internet.
- There is a connection between the two devices.
- The two devices are connected. *

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| grade | يصنف/يقيم | grade | درجة/رتبة | graded | مصنف/متدرج |
| grant | يهب/يمنح | grant<br>grantee<br>grantor | منحة/عطاء<br>مُعْطَى له<br>مانح/واهب | granted | ممنوح/متاح |
| personify | يجسد/يشخص | person<br>personification<br>personality | شخص<br>تجسيد/تشخيص<br>الشخصية | personal<br>personable | شخصي<br>جذاب/حسن المظهر |
| practise | يتمرن/يمارس | practice<br>practitioner | تدريب<br>صاحب مهنة | practising<br>practised | ممارس<br>خبير |
| relax | يستريح | relaxation | راحة/ارتياح | relaxed<br>relaxing | مستريح/مسترخ<br>مريح |
| stress | يضغط/يشدد على | stress | ضغط | stressed<br>stressful | مرهق<br>مُجهِد |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|
| connection | صلة/علاقة | relation/contact | separation/disconnection انفصال/عدم اتصال |
| cool | رائع | neat/fashionable | bad/uncool سيئ |
| enjoy | يستمتع بـ | appreciate/savour/like | detest/dislike يشمئز/يكره |
| face | يواجه | confront/encounter | withdraw/avoid ينسحب/يتجنب |
| favourite | مفضل | preferred/popular | unpopular/disliked غير محبوب/مكروه |
| follow | يتبع | pursue/chase | avoid/neglect يتجنب/يهمل |
| join | يلتحق بـ/يربط | unite/attach | detach/disconnect/disunite يفصل |
| relax | يسترخى | calm/rest | irritate/worry يقلق/يتوتر |
| start | يبدأ | begin/initiate | end/finish ينهي |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Finally, she took my .................... and gave up smoking.

a) advice b) advise c) advisable d) advises

2 Holidays always give us a chance to .................... .

a) relaxed b) relax
c) relaxation d) relaxing

3 My parents asked me to revise well .................... my next exams.

a) at b) for c) from d) with

4 The internet and social media have made it easier to .................... many friends.

a) take b) give c) make d) break

5 All of us should learn how to be good .................... old people.

a) at b) in c) by d) to

6 Our English teacher is very .................... . He always wears casual clothes.

a) personable b) personal
c) personality d) personify

7 I, as a teacher, always .................... the importance of studying for my students.

a) stressed b) stress
c) stressful d) stresses

8 Children must follow their parents' advice. The antonym of "follow" is .................... .

a) pursue b) chase c) unite d) avoid

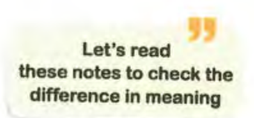
9 My favourite hobby is reading short stories. The synonym of "favourite" is ............ .

a) preferred b) disliked
c) detached d) neat

10 We enjoyed .................... during our last holiday in Aswan.

a) us b) ourselves d) our d) we

## Notes on Vocabulary




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **look at** | ينظر إلى | I looked at the sea to relax. |
| **look for = search for** | يبحث عن | She looked for a new flat to buy last month. |
| **look up** | يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس أو معلومة فى مرجع | Look the word up in your dictionary if you don't know its meaning. |
| **1** **look forward to** | يتطلع إلى | My mother says she's looking forward to meeting you. |
| **look like** | يشبه | What did the man look like? |
| **look out = watch out** | احترس | Look out! There's a car coming. |
| **look after = take care of** | يعتنى بـ | Don't worry, I'll look after the kids tomorrow. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **wear** | يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص) | We wear light clothes in summer. |
| **put on** | يقوم بارتداء ( تعبرعن الحدث وليس نوع الملابس) | Put on your shoes. We are late for school. |
| **2** **dress** | يرتدى (بدون مفعول) | I got up early, dressed and went to school. |
| **dress + مفعول** | يلبس شخصًا لا يستطيع اللبس بنفسه | My wife dressed our daughter, Noha. |
| **(be) dressed in = wear** | يرتدى | She is dressed in a white jacket.<br>= She is wearing a white jacket. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **life** | الحياة بوجه عام | There is no life on the moon. |
| **3** **a life** | وصف الحياة | We hope to live a better life. |
| **the life** | فترة حياة شخص/ حيوان/ طائر... | The life of blind people is difficult. |

| | Word | Example |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | **paper (uncountable noun)** ورق (مادة خام) | Dictionaries are usually printed on thin paper. |
| | **papers (n)** جرائد/وثائق/أوراق رسمية | - I like to sit in bed and read the Friday papers.<br>- The border guards stopped me and asked to see my papers. |
| | **a paper** صحيفة | My father likes to read a paper every day. |
| 5 | **connected to** متصل بـ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر مادى) | The printer is connected to the computer. |
| | **connected with** مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ (معنويًا) | Doctors believe that a lot of diseases are connected with pollution level. |
| | **contact** يتصل بـ/تواصل<br>with/between وهنا تأخذ حرف الجر | - Is there a phone number where I can contact you?<br>- We need a contact with the outside world. |
| 6 | **teenager** المراهق | It is difficult to deal with teenagers nowadays. |
| | **teenage (adj.)** مراهق | It is difficult to deal with teenage students these days. |
| | **teens** سن المراهقة (ما بين ١٣ - ١٩ سنة) | She was in her teens when she met him. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Yesterday, I had to stay home to look .................... my sick aunt.
a) for b) after c) up d) forward to

2 It is very kind of you to .................... the little baby while I am washing the dishes.
a) dress b) wear c) put on d) press

3 .................... is full of ups and downs النجاحات والإخفاقات.
a) The life b) A life c) Living d) Life

4 I keep my important .................... in a safe in my office.
a) paper b) papers c) a paper d) the paper

5 Young children need to contact .................... people outside their families.
a) with b) to c) by d) no word



## Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My son is going to .................... our local sports club to play football there.
   a) practise b) face c) follow d) join
2. I have read a very good .................... about education in today's paper.
   a) article b) connection c) noticeboard d) information
3. I asked my children to .................... heavy clothes if they wanted to go out.
   a) put b) wear c) dress d) feel
4. I always benefit from my teacher's advice as it is really .................... .
   a) useless b) harmful c) useful d) interested
5. The headmaster of our school always writes his instructions on a .................... on the wall.
   a) table b) notebook c) noticeboard d) booklet
6. It is taken for ............... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.
   a) denial b) granted c) refusal d) decided
7. It is important to .................... your coach's instructions carefully if you want to be in the first team.
   a) allow b) flow c) follow d) borrow
8. The teaching profession is very ...................., but it's the most important.
   a) stress b) pleased c) stressed d) stressful
9. I hate using my car during rush hours وقت الذروة. This makes me .................... .
   a) happy b) stressed c) praised d) dressed
10. In our house, our relationship is based on .................... and respect. We are all friends.
    a) communication b) accusation
    c) suspect d) friendship
11. It is disagreeable to .................... anyone late at night for any reason.
    a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link
12. Young children are always in need of having contact .................... others.
    a) with b) no word c) of d) by
13. Judges shouldn't let their .................... feelings influence their decisions.
    a) personnel b) personal c) personification d) person
14. The company where my father works is proud of its qualified .................... .
    a) personnel b) personal c) personification d) person
15. I am tired because today's work has been .................... . *(Longman)*
    a) peaceful b) helpful c) careful d) stressful
16. Mohammad Salah appeared on the cover of an international .................... once. What a pride!
    a) book b) magazine c) website d) noticeboard

17 You look .................... in this blue shirt. When did you buy it?
a) stressed b) nervous c) cool d) instead

18 I saw Mona and Safaa sitting in the corner deep in .................... .
a) articles b) advice c) friendship d) conversation

19 Very few students passed the final exams with a ........ "A" as they were so difficult.
a) grade b) degree c) certificate d) qualification

20 Prepare yourself; please .................... your jacket and follow me. *(Longman)*
a) put out b) put on c) dress d) wear

21 The music of today is very popular with .................... . It suits their language style.
a) teenage b) teens c) teen aging d) teenagers

22 It has become quite difficult to deal with .................... children.
a) teenage b) teens c) teen aging d) teenagers

23 These days, I'm stressed .................... my new position. I want your advice.
a) with b) about c) at d) by

24 .................... sport every day is very useful to get healthy bodies.
a) Taking b) Doing c) Going d) Winning

25 I like students who depend on themselves and do their homework .................... .
a) lonely b) by them c) on their owe d) on their own

26 My daughter is always busy .................... for the exams.
a) studying b) to study c) to studying d) studied

27 Tamer is good at .................... sports. He's been practising swimming since his childhood.
a) team b) people c) field d) individual

28 My mother is always .................... doing the housework. *(Longman)*
a) busy b) keen c) enthusiastic d) interested

29 It is advisable for all of us to be good .................... our parents, especially when they get old.
a) for b) to c) at d) about

30 As a result of modern technology, it has become easier to .................... .
a) walk online b) make online c) go online d) move online

31 Marwan always finds it easy to .................... friends at school. He is very sociable.
a) give b) take c) do d) make

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

32 He must be happy because he has .................... his final exams.
a) passed b) succeeded c) failed d) succeeded in e) managed

33 My son managed to do all his work .................... . No one helped him.
a) lonely b) of his own c) on his own d) only e) alone

34 The president faces the difficult task of putting the economy back on its feet. The synonyms of the word "face" are .................... .
a) confront b) encounter c) withdraw d) irritate e) detest

35 They followed the plan that the manager had worked out. The antonyms of the word "followed" are ....................
a) pursued b) chased c) neglected d) succeeded e) ignored

# B Language

## 1 Indefinite articles (a/an) أدوات النكرة

### What Is The Difference Between A & An?



- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a boy/ a house/ a friend/ a table/ a problem/ a car




- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد فى الكلمات التى تبدأ بحروف تنطق كأنه (u) مثل حروف (e-eu-ew).

a unit / a university / a uniform / a union / a European citizen / a useful tip / a ewe نعجة

- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد فى الكلمات التى تبدأ بحرف (o) وينطق كأنه (W).

a one-way street / a one-pound coin



- تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple / an orange / an egg / an elephant / an eagle




- تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق ويليه صوت متحرك.

an hour / an honest man

**A/An**

تستخدم (a/an) فى الحالات التالية:

١) قبل الاسم النكرة الذى يذكر فى الجملة لأول مرة.

When I was in the shop, I saw a boy with his two sisters.

٢) قبل الوظائف والمهن والحرف.

My father is a carpenter.

She is an engineer.

٣) قبل تعبيرات الكمية والأرقام مثل:

- a pair زوج - a couple زوج - a hundred مائة - a thousand ألف - a quarter ربع - a dozen دستة

My son bought a dozen of pens. (This means that my son bought 12 pens.)

٤) قبل اسم مفرد عند تعريف الكلمات.

A teacher is someone whose job is to teach others, especially in a school.
An egg is a round object with a hard surface, that contains a baby bird, snake, insect, etc.

٥) مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والسعر وعدد المرات بمعنى (في: per)

100 pounds a kilo. (This means that 100 pounds per kilo.)
90 kilometres an hour.

٦) قبل الصفة إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

اسم مفرد + الصفة + (a/an)

My father bought a new book.
I met an American friend.

أما إذا كان الاسم الموصوف اسمًا لا يعد أو جمعًا لا نستخدم (a/an)

My father bought new books.

٧) مع الاختصارات التي تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف.

I sent an SMS to my friend yesterday.
I downloaded an MP3 song online last week.
Dad has a DVD, so he always buys CDs.

## 2 The definite article (the)

تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية:

### The

١) قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها (الموجود منها واحد فقط).

the sun
the universe
the sky
the North Pole
the earth

٢) قبل الاسم الذي تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.

I read a book. The book was really interesting.

٣) قبل صفات الدرجة الثالثة (صيغة التفضيل).

Ali is the tallest boy at his school.

أما في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my – his – her – its – our – their – your) أو ('s) للملكية لا نستخدم قبلها (the).

Nora is my best friend at school.
Ali is my father's oldest uncle.

٤) قبل أسماء أو اختصارات البلاد التي تحتوي على:

Republic : جمهورية / Union : اتحاد / Kingdom : مملكة / State : ولاية / Federation : اتحاد / Emirates إمارات

the Arab Republic of Egypt = the A.R.E.
the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia = the K.S.A.
the United States of America = the U.S.A.

أو قبل أسماء الدول الجمع ... مثل:

the Netherlands هولندا
the Philippines الفلبين

٥) قبل أسـماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والقنوات ومجموعات البحيرات وسلاسـل الجبال الجمع والكتب المقدسة والصحارى ومجموعة الجزر الجمع والصحف.

the Pacific Ocean
the Alps
the Caribbean Islands
the Red Sea
the Great Lakes
the Sahara
the River Nile
the Suez Canal
the Quran
the Times

أما إذا جاء الجبل مفردًا أو جاءت البحيرة مفردة أو الجزيرة مفردة ... فلا نستخدم (the).

جزيرة سيشل Seychelles
بحيرة ناصر Lake Nasser
جبل كلمنجارو Kilimanjaro

٦) قبل الآلات الموسيقية إذا جاء قبلها : (play - listen to - learn - teach - study - practise)

I like listening to the piano with my family.
Hany enjoys playing the guitar every day.

٧) قبل الاختراعات والاكتشافات.

The mobile is one of the most important inventions.

أما إذا جاء اسم الاختراع جمع فلا يأتى قبله أداة.

Mobiles become necessary in our lives.

أما إذا قصدنا من الاختراع الجهاز وليس الاختراع بشكل عام يسبق بـ(a/an).

My father bought a mobile yesterday.

٨) قبل فصائل الحيوانات أو الطيور.

The lion is very strong.

أما إذا جاء اسم الحيوان أو الطائر جمعًا فلا نضع أداة.

Lions are very strong animals.

أما إذا قصدنا عددًا واحدًا من فصيلة الحيوان أو الطائر يسبق بـ(a/an).

I saw a lion at the zoo yesterday.

٩) قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع.

الصينيون the Chinese / الفقراء the poor = poor people / الأغنياء the rich = rich people
المعاقون the disabled = disabled people

We collected a lot of money to help the poor.

١٠) مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

the government/ the police/ the United Nations/ the climate/ the weather/ the press/ the army/ the environment

١١) قبل بعض الكلمات التى تفيد الترتيب ... مثل:

first/ second/ third/ only/ last

Mohammed was the last one to arrive.
It is the only chance for you.

١٢) عندما نقصد شخصًا واحدًا لا يوجد غيره.

the President of Egypt/ the King of Denmark/ the Queen of England

١٣) مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه والخدمات) ... مثل:

the cinema/ the theatre/ the club/ the library/ the shop/ the post office

١٤) للإشارة إلى فترات زمنية وخاصة عقد من الزمان (فترة ١٠ أعوام) أو قرن (فترة ١٠٠ عام)

the twenties العشرينيات/ the sixties الستينيات/ the nineties التسعينيات

- I like reading for the great novelists of the 1900s.
- My mother hated the fashions of the 1960s.

١٥) قبل اسم العائلة الجمع للإشارة إلى كل أفراد العائلة.

- The Johnsons have lived in this house for many years.

١٦) قبل ذكر التواريخ.

- I married on the 3rd of November, 1990.

١٧) قبل أسماء الأمراض ... مثل:

the measles الحصبة/ the flu الإنفلونزا/ the mumps النكاف/ the bubonic plague الطاعون الدبلى

- If one of the children got the measles, we all got the measles.

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأمراض لا يأتى قبلها أداة ... مثل:

AIDS/ cancer/ malaria

- There are several medications that can be used to treat malaria.

١٨) عند الإضافة (إضافة اسم لاسم آخر وهو ما يقابل المضاف إليه فى اللغة العربية).

- The **growth** of the steel industry is very big in our country.
- The **arrival** of our guests was very late.

١٩) للتخصيص.

- The man who stole my money, was my neighbour.
- My brother lives in the big villa with a black door.

## Language Check point 4

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 You must never look at .................... sun directly during the eclipse.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

2 Hend is .................... university student.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

3 I'll buy you .................... new bag which you saw online.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

4 We dream of climbing .................... Alps one day.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

5 Although my father is .................... engineer, I don't like maths.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

لا نستخدم أدوات نكرة أو معرفة فى هذه الحالات:

## No article

١ عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

- Children are sometimes noisy.
- Vitamins are very important for our bodies.
- Men should be patient and hardworking.

٢ مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

breakfast/ lunch/ dinner/ supper

- I usually have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

٣ مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.

advice/ freedom/ love/ sadness/ happiness/ beauty/ education/ success

- All countries try to develop education.

٤ مع الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم.

King Lear/ Professor Zewail/ President Nasser/ Doctor Magdy Yacoub

٥ مع كلمة home بعد أفعال (go – come – return).

- Mona **returned** home early last night.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- There's a home for the elderly at the end of our street.
- Ahmed moved out of the family home a year ago.

٦ مع كلمة work إذا جاءت بمعنى مكان العمل.

- I usually go to work in my car.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

- The work here is very tiring. (وهنا يقصد طبيعة العمل وليس مكان العمل)

٧ قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد والكميات ومنها.

- oil/ water/ milk/ money/ meat/ juice, etc.: أسماء الطعام والشراب
- English/ Arabic/ science/ history/ physics: المواد الدراسية
- glass/ wood/ gold/ silver/ paper: المواد الخام
- football/ tennis/ basketball/ volleyball/ swimming: الألعاب الرياضية

٨ مع أسماء القارات.

Africa/ Europe/ Asia/ South America

٩ مع أسماء المدن والقرى.

Alexandria/ London/ New York

١٠) مع أسماء اللغات.

English/ French/ Turkish/ Chinese

أما إذا جاء بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the):

the English **language** / the Turkish **language**

١١) مع كلمة space إذا جاءت بمعنى الفضاء.

- I like reading about the history of space travel.

أما إذا كان المقصود مكانًا فارغًا فنستخدم قبلها the:

- The space between the house and the garage is very big.

١٢) مع كلمة television إذا كنا نقصد المعروض فى التليفزيون.

- Can you tell me what is on TV tonight?

أما إذا كنا نقصد جهاز التلفزيون فنستخدم the:

- **A:** Can you tell me what is on the TV?

**B:** I think it's a vase.

١٣) مع الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله.

school/ bed/ hospital/ prison/ court/ church/ mosque/ college

- I go to school to learn. **(I am a student.)**
- He made an accident and was taken to hospital. **(He was a patient.)**
- He committed a crime and was sent to prison. **(He was a prisoner.)**
- I went to bed early. **(I went to sleep.)**

أما إذا كان الذهاب إليها لغرض آخر ... فنستخدم (the):

- I went to the school to meet the headmaster. **(I was a visitor.)**
- He went to the prison to visit his friend. **(He was a visitor.)**
- My sister is standing by the bed. **(The word "bed" here means a piece of furniture.)**

# Practice



## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Ali never tells lies. He is .................... honest boy.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

2 My family members are interested in visiting .................... United Kingdom.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

3 Nagwa likes playing .................... violin before sleeping.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

4 Everyone should sleep at least 7 hours .................... day to be fit.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

5 I bought a good basket made of .................... plastic.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

6 Nothing in our life is more important than .................... happiness.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

7 I like .................... physics although it is a difficult subject.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

8 We all know that .................... brain can't be transplanted.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

9 It is .................... first time that we have seen the temples of Luxor.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

10 Don't move! There is .................... snake near you!
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

11 I hope .................... exam we are going to have tomorrow will be easy. *(Longman)*
a) no article b) the c) an d) a

12 I work in .................... European company located in .................... Cairo.
a) a/no article b) an/no article
c) a/the d) no article/no article

13 The charity is trying to collect money for .................... disabled.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14 There are millions of stars in .................... space.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15 My father went to .................... school as the headmaster wanted to meet him.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

16 Hatem always goes to .................... school wearing a uniform.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

17 My son had a nightmare yesterday. In .................... nightmare, he was kidnapped by a gang.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

18 The .................. you drive, .................. safer you are. *(Longman)*
a) slower/- b) slowest/the c) slower/a d) slower/the

19 I went shopping and bought .................. computer for my son.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

20 .................. computers are necessary for all kinds of jobs all over the world.
a) A b) An c) The d) no article

21 I have just received .................. SMS from my best friend.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

22 .................. made the world a smaller place.
a) The planes have b) The plane has c) Some planes have d) This plane has

23 .................. one-way road is needed to be constructed on the west bank of Aswan.
a) A b) An c) The d) no article

24 When someone had broken into my house, I called .................. police.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

25 The man who stole the car was taken to .................. prison.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

26 They are talking to .................. 8-year-old boy called Ali.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

27 Nothing in .................. life is better than .................. peace of mind. *(Longman)*
a) a/- b) -/a c) the/- d) -/-

28 Carpenters use .................. glass and .................. wood to make windows.
a) no article/the b) a/no article c) an/no article d) no article/no article

29 I read .................. amazing article about .................. works of Taha Hussein. *(Longman)*
a) -/the b) a/the c) an/the d) an/-

30 Fortunately, I found .................. room on .................. bus going to my university. *(Longman)*
a) no/the b) a/- c) -/the d) a/the

31 I always have .................. lunch with my family at home. However, I will never forget .................. lunch I had with my friends on the beach last month. *(Longman)*
a) the/no article b) no article/no article
c) the/the d) no article/the

32 .................. Great Lakes are in .................. North America.
a) The/no article b) A/no article c) An/no article d) no article/no article

33 The journey to .................. Cairo by train takes .................. hour.
a) the/an b) a/no article c) no article/a d) no article/an

34 My father speaks Italian well. This means that he speaks .................. well.
a) an Italian language b) the Italian language
c) Italian language d) an Italian

35 All giraffes are long-necked animals. This means that .................. .
a) the giraffes have long necks b) the giraffes have a long neck
c) the giraffe has a long neck d) the giraffes are long necks

# Test yourself




Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## Vocabulary

1 In most of the world's countries, it is obligatory إجبارى for youth to .................... the army after finishing school.
a) leave b) enter c) join d) go

2 This film is a .................... of mine. I like it so much that I watched it 5 times.
a) distracted b) favourite c) favour d) personal

3 The final match of the Egyptian team went into .................... time.
a) extra b) lost c) missed d) passing

4 It is important to learn, but it is more important to put what we have learnt into .................... .
a) practise b) brain c) grade d) practice

5 Football is a team sport, but swimming is a/an .................... sport.
a) alone b) group c) individual d) pair

6 .................... is sometimes hard, but we have to try to make it enjoyable.
a) The life b) Life c) A life d) Live

7 .................... your shoes quickly and hurry to catch your train to Cairo.
a) Dress up b) Take off c) Put on d) Wear down

8 He will know if he has passed or failed his exams as the exam results are on the .................... .
a) connection b) notebook c) advice d) noticeboard

9 My friend becomes nervous when he .................... a difficult situation.
a) welcomes b) faces c) stresses d) drops

10 I admire the way my brother .................... words of English.
a) pronoun b) pronounce c) pronounces d) pronunciation

11 I admire my brother's .................... of English.
a) pronoun b) pronounce c) pronounces d) pronunciation

12 I want you to .................... me some advice about how to improve my English skills.
a) make b) have c) take d) give

13 Stop talking. The teacher gave us his .................... attention.
a) personnel b) personality c) personal d) person

14 We can't do without our parents' .................... which is based on love.
a) connection b) pronunciation c) advice d) personnel

15 Employees shouldn't feel .................... while working so that they can work effectively.

a) stressful b) stressed c) comfortable d) granted

## Language

16 .................... Egypt is a pioneering country in Africa and the Middle East.

a) A b) An c) The d) no article

17 I know that .................... Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

18 I think Omar Khairat is .................... best musician in Egypt.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

19 I often like to listen to .................... music to feel relaxed.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

20 Dad goes to .................... work at 7, so he doesn't have .................... breakfast with us.

a) no article/the b) no article/a

c) no article/no article d) the/a

21 The boy who saw .................... thief went fast to warn his neighbours.

a) any b) an c) the d) no article

22 What do you know about ....................?

a) an ant b) ants c) the ants d) ant

23 My son, Mohammed, plays .................... drum very well.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

24 There were over .................... thousand people at the party of the new singer.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

25 The Egyptian government tries to give due care to .................... education.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

26 To get the job, you need .................... experience with the computer.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

27 I am going to spend .................... week in Alexandria with my friends.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

28 I'm .................... teacher of English and I often listen to the radio in .................... English.

a) the/no article b) a/no article

c) a/the d) no article/no article

29 Mr Hassan is .................... better of the two teachers.

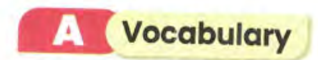
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

30 England and France are .................... European countries.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article




Part (2)
# Lessons 3 & 4




## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bullying (n) | تنمر/بلطجة | nursing (n) | التمريض |
| bully (v) - y ied (n) | يتنمر/متنمر/بلطجي | phone-in (n) | برنامج إذاعي أو تلفزيوني (يُسمح فيه بتلقي الاتصالات) |
| cheat (v) – ed* | يغش | police officer (n) | ضابط شرطة |

You're not supposed to cheat during the exam.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

## Vocabulary on Reading Texts

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| behave (v) – d | يتصرف | hostess (n) | مضيفة |
| continue (v) – d | يستمر | host (n) | مضيف |
| copying (n) | نسخ | list (n) (v) – ed | قائمة/يعد قائمة |
| debate (n) | مناظرة | lonely (adj) | وحيدًا |
| effect (n) | تأثير | nasty (adj) | مؤذٍ/ردىء الطبع |
| experiences (n) | خبرات حياتية | negative (adj) | سلبي |
| fight (v) | يتشاجر/يتعارك | radio show (n) | برنامج إذاعي |
| hard (adj) | صعب/قاسٍ | rucksack (n) | حقيبة الظهر |
| hate (v) (n) – d | يكره/الكره | scared (adj) | خائف/مذعور |
| hide (v) | يخفي | terrible (adj) | فظيع |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| exciting (adj) | مثير | social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي |
| laugh (v) – ed | يضحك | soon (adv) | سريعًا/حالاً |

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (be) on the line | على الخط (خط التليفون) | laugh at | يسخر من |
| a 15-year-old boy | ولد عمره ١٥ عامًا | list in | يدرج فى قائمة |
| add to | يضيف إلى | make ... clear | يوضح |
| angry with | غاضب من (شخص) | nice to | لطيف مع |
| any more = any longer | مجددًا/بعد الآن (تفيد عدم تكرار حدث ما) | on social media | على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى |
| as far as I'm concerned | على قدر اهتمامى | point at | يشير إلى |
| different to/from | مختلف عن | start conversations with | يبدأ محادثات مع |
| effect on | تأثير على | sure about | متأكد من |
| get along well with | يتناغم بشكل جيد مع | take a photo of | يلتقط صورة لـ |
| get good marks | يحصل على درجات جيدة | take time to | يستغرق وقتًا لكى |
| I'm well | أنا على ما يرام | take turns to | يتبادل الأدوار |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My grandson is very angry as the older children at his school .................... him.
a) please b) bully c) host d) behave

2 He decided to leave his job as he was feeling very .................... about it.
a) positive b) excited c) delighted d) negative

3 It is polite to write a thank-you letter to your .................... after this kind welcome.
a) guest b) host c) bully d) cheat

4 My jokes made them .................... out loud.
a) smile b) cough c) laugh d) continue

5 The secretary .................... as if he is the boss of the company.
a) behaves b) cheats c) hides d) deletes

6 I had a/an ............. with my brother whether studying late at night is useful or not.
a) effect b) debate c) belief d) bullying

7 I think that we should find a day and meet .................... .
a) hard b) scarcely c) soon d) lonely

8 My colleague is so funny and he always makes me .................... .
a) laugh b) fight c) scared d) hate

9 His name is in the waiting .................... for the operation.
a) cheat b) list c) lest d) media

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| affect | يؤثر على | effect<br>effectiveness | تأثير/أثر<br>فاعلية/كفاءة/جدوى | effective | مؤثر/فعال |
| behave | يتصرف/يسلك | behaviour | سلوك/تصرف | behavioural | سلوكى |
| cheat | يغش | cheat/cheater<br>cheating | غشاش/مخادع<br>غش/تضليل | cheated | مخدوع |
| fight | يحارب/يكافح/يتشاجر | fighting<br>fighter | اشتباك/مكافحة<br>محارب/مكافح | -------------------------- | |
| host | يستضيف | hostess<br>host | مضيفة<br>مضيف/حشد | hospitable | مضياف |
| laugh | يضحك | laugh<br>laughter | ضحك | laughable | مثير للضحك/هزلى |
| police | يحفظ الأمن والنظام | police<br>policing | شرطة<br>ضبط الأمن والنظام | -------------------------- | |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| continue | يستمر | resume/proceed | stop/cease | يتوقف |
| exciting | مثير | inspiring/thrilling | boring/dull | ممل |
| hard | صعب/قاسٍ | difficult/exhausting | easy/facile | سهل |
| hide | يخفى | conceal/cover | reveal/uncover | يكشف |
| host | مضيف/مقدم البرامج | presenter/moderator | guest/visitor | ضيف/زائر |
| nasty | مقرف/كريه | disgusting/offensive | agreeable/nice | مقبول/لطيف |
| negative | سلبى | bad/harmful | positive/beneficial | إيجابى/مفيد |
| scared | مذعور | frightened/afraid/fearful | unafraid/bold/brave | غير خائف/شجاع |
| terrible | فظيع | horrible/awful | beautiful/nice/wonderful | جميل/رائع |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 During the school trip, we .................... a lot of wonderful photos.
a) made b) took c) listed d) did

2 To answer all the questions, the students took .................... and I corrected them.
a) after b) off c) turns d) ahead

3 The medicine I have taken has a positive .................... on me.
a) effect b) affect
c) effective d) effectiveness

4 Hurry up, the manager of the company is ............ the line. He wants to talk to you.
a) at b) off c) on d) in

5 .................... is very important for any place, especially where there are many crimes.
a) Police b) Policies c) Policemen d) Policing

6 Smoking has many negative drawbacks on our health. The antonym of "negative" is .................... .
a) positive b) harmful
c) bad d) horrible

7 He couldn't hide himself from me. I could see him. The synonym of "hide" is .................... .
a) reveal b) cover c) uncover d) adore

8 Mr Ashraf is very .................... . He is generous with his guests.
a) host b) hostess
c) hosting d) hospitable

9 As .................... as I am concerned, they are the most honorable people I have ever met.
a) for b) long c) far d) soon

10 I get angry .................... those who treat their kids nervously.
a) to b) about c) of d) with

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

## Notes on Vocabulary

**1**

| | |
|---|---|
| **a 15-year-old boy**<br>ولد عمره ١٥ عامًا | I will play a game with a 15-year-old boy. He is my son's friend. |
| **15-year-old boys**<br>أولاد عمر كل منهم ١٥ عامًا | All the players in our team are 15-year-old boys. |

- لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

second/minute/hour/day/week/month/year/decade/century

We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.

- في حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و(s') في حالة الجمع:

He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

**2**

| | |
|---|---|
| **debate**<br>مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون | The law was passed after a long and sometimes angry debate. |
| **discussion**<br>مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم) | After a long discussion with her father, she decided not to take the job. |

**3**

| | |
|---|---|
| **too = as well**<br>في نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضًا | I like English, and he likes it too.<br>I will travel to Paris as well. |
| **either**<br>بمعنى أيضًا في نهاية الجملة المنفية | I don't like English, and he doesn't like it either. |

**4**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **move to** | ينتقل إلى | I've just moved to this town. |
| **move in** | يسكن في مسكن جديد | We moved in a new house. |
| **move out** | ينتقل من بيته | We moved out to live in a new flat. |
| **move off** | يبدأ رحلته | I waved to my friends as the bus moved off. |

**5**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **drop v. (ped)** | يُسقِط شيئًا | My daughter dropped the phone. |
| **fall v. (fell - fallen)** | يَسْقُط | The phone fell on the floor. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **hard (adj.)** | صعب | It is a hard question. |
| **hard (adv.)** | بجد | You must work hard. |
| **hardly (adv.)** | بالكاد (تعطى معنى النفى) | I can hardly walk. |

6

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 There was a long ..................., and we ended up with nothing. Each one stuck to their opinions.
- a) scenario
- b) discussion
- c) debate
- d) conference

2 Did you know? A ................... boy took his father's phone and sold it to his friend.
- a) 12 year old
- b) 12-year old
- c) 12-years
- d) twelve-year-old

3 In a ................... time, I will be a member of Al Ahly club.
- a) weeks'
- b) week
- c) week's
- d) weeks

4 I don't eat lamb meat, I can't stand its soup, ................... .
- a) too
- b) also
- c) either
- d) neither

5 The organisers of the trip said we would move ................... early in the morning.
- a) off
- b) in
- c) out
- d) to






## Vocabulary
## General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 It is easy to have a lot of friends on .................... media sites.
a) society b) sociable c) community d) social

2 Since my father's death, I have felt very .................... .
a) a lone b) only c) lonely d) lone

3 Dalia ................ eating meat or chicken when they are not fresh. She's a fussy eater.
a) hosts b) prefers c) objects d) hates

4 Students have to take .................... while answering the exercises.
a) turns b) parts c) places d) heads

5 My daughter hopes to be an air .................... when she graduates.
a) host b) guest c) hostess d) hostage

6 The little child .................... the bottle to the floor, and it broke into pieces. *(Longman)*
a) kept b) fell c) dropped d) filled

7 The little boy doesn't like to go to school as he suffers from .................... there.
a) bullied b) bullying c) hosted d) debating

8 She tried to .................... during her exams, but she was noticed and punished.
a) behave b) beat c) cheat d) check

9 There must be a severe punishment for those who .................... what is on other books illegally.
a) copy b) remove c) list d) neglect

10 She invited us to lunch. She was really a generous .................... . *(Longman)*
a) host b) hostess c) guest d) visitor

11 There has been a lot of .................... about the educational system and its effects on students. A lot of parents hate change!
a) chat b) passion c) debate d) agreement

12 My father's advice has a strong .................... on me and my lifestyle.
a) affect b) effective c) defect d) effect

13 My father's advice has .................... me and my lifestyle.
a) affected b) effective c) defected d) effected

14 The boys hid their friend's book for a .................... .
a) love b) laugh c) smile d) hate

15 I expressed my opinion about the loss of our team in a .................... shown on TV.
a) phone-in b) phone-up c) phone-out d) phone-by

16 Sama is learning foreign languages, and Mido is doing this, .................... .
a) either b) too c) neither d) also

17 I had no friends in my new school, so I felt really .......... for the first month. *(Longman)*
a) only b) lonely c) alone d) sadly

18 Travelling to Aswan is one of my enjoyable .................... that I can't forget.
a) experiences b) experiments c) experts d) conversations

19 You have to .................... the names of the students alphabetically to find their names easily.
a) list b) contain c) grab d) create

20 I asked my colleague to .................... a photo of me and our manager.
a) have b) make c) take d) do

21 I can't stay even a day in such a .................... hotel.
a) terrific b) terrified c) terrible d) terribly

22 Haneen has decided to go into .................... because she likes helping people.
a) nurse b) nursing c) nursery d) nurses

23 Haneen has decided to be a .................... because she likes helping people.
a) nurse b) nursing c) nursery d) nurses

24 I am not sure .................... what I saw on the street yesterday. Please, don't ask me.
a) for b) that c) with d) about

25 As far as I'm ....................; the government is working hard to help us live well.
a) amazed b) concerned c) concerning d) frightened

26 Your performance is totally .................... to the last one. You improved yourself a lot!
a) similar b) compared c) different d) difficult

27 The phone rang and I replied, but there was no one .................... the line.
a) at b) on c) in d) with

28 A good teacher is the one who can get .................... with his students.
a) up b) together c) away d) along

29 Don't laugh .................... him. He can't help the way he speaks.
a) in b) at c) on d) about

30 Finally, we have .................... in a bigger house! *(Longman)*
a) removed b) moved c) spent d) migrated

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

31 Don't let that nasty, old dog come up here. The synonyms of the word "nasty" are .................... and .................... .
a) thrilling b) exhausting c) disgusting d) agreeable e) offensive

32 My friend is .................... enough not to get scared of any animal! *(Longman)*
a) brave b) afraid c) bold d) generous e) weak

33 Sohaila continued to work after she had her baby. The synonyms of the word "continued" are .................... and .................... .
a) resumed b) concealed c) ceased d) proceeded e) adored

34 Smoking has a very bad impact on health. It leads to cancer, .................... .
a) either b) too c) neither d) as well e) as well as

35 I used to study at night, but now I don't do that .................... .
a) no more b) no longer c) any more d) either e) any longer



## Countable and Uncountable nouns

### Countable nouns

هى الأسماء التى يكون لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها (a/an) أو شكل جمع

**Examples:**

1. **Regular plurals (add s)**

| | |
|---|---|
| a car | 2 cars |
| a dog | 2 dogs |
| an apple | 2 apples |

2. **Nouns ending in (s,ss,sh,ch,x,z) add es**

| | |
|---|---|
| a bus | 2 buses |
| a box | 2 boxes |
| a quiz | 2 quizzes |

3. **Nouns ending in consonant + y (remove y and add ies)**

| | |
|---|---|
| a baby | 2 babies |
| a city | 2 cities |
| a story | 2 stories |

4. **Nouns ending in f/fe (remove f/fe and add ves)**

| | |
|---|---|
| a loaf | 2 loaves |
| a wife | 2 wives |
| a wolf | 2 wolves |

5. **Irregular nouns**

| | |
|---|---|
| a man | 2 men |
| a child | 2 children |
| an ox | 2 oxen |
| a mouse | 2 mice |
| a tooth | 2 teeth |
| a goose | 2 geese |
| a woman | 2 women |
| an oasis | 2 oases |
| a foot | 2 feet |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 sheep | 2 sheep | **no change** |
| 1 deer | 2 deer | |
| 1 fish | 2 fish | |

### Uncountable nouns

هى أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع ومن ثم لا يأتى قبلها (a/an) وهذه الأسماء تعامل معاملة المفرد

**Examples:**

1. **Liquids**
   water/coffee/oil/milk/soup/blood/tea/juice/petrol
2. **Gases**
   oxygen/nitrogen/hydrogen/carbon dioxide
3. **Languages**
   Arabic/English/French/Italian/Spanish/German
4. **Meals**
   breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper
5. **School subjects**
   psychology/statistics/science/mathematics/physics/chemistry/biology/economics
6. **Sports**
   football/dominos/billiards/tennis/gymnastics/squash/athletics/chess
7. **Food**
   meat/rice/butter/macaroni/cheese/sugar/salt/bread/toast/beef
8. **Abstract nouns**
   happiness/knowledge/freedom/business/hatred/education/honesty/advice/luck/courage/sadness/fun/peace/progress/behaviour/fear/confidence/help/sorrow/horror/information/beauty

| **Countable nouns** الأسماء المعدودة | **Uncountable nouns** الأسماء الغير معدودة |
| --- | --- |
| يأتى معها فعل مفرد أو جمع.<br>- That painting is beautiful.<br>- Those paintings are beautiful. | يأتى معها فعل مفرد فقط.<br>- Swimming is a popular sport.<br>- That petrol was expensive. |
| يأتى قبل الاسم المفرد منها (a/an).<br>- Is there a park here?<br>- He ate an apple. | لا يأتى قبلها (a/an).<br>- This table is made of wood.<br>- We play football every week. |




(a lot of/much/many (كثير) – few – a few – little – a little قليل (some بعض – any أى)

| | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| a lot of + مفعول<br>a lot بدون مفعول | فى الجملة المثبتة (كثير من) | He always drinks a lot of water.<br>He was tired as he worked a lot. |
| some + عدد/كمية | فى الجملة المثبتة<br>فى أسلوب العرض و الطلب | I have some good friends.<br>Would you like some soup? |
| any + عدد – كمية | فى السؤال<br>فى الجملة المنفية | Do you want any money?<br>There isn't any water in the bottle. |
| many + اسم جمع | فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال<br>من الممكن فى الإثبات مع<br>there are – so – too | How many brothers have you got?<br>I didn't see many films, only a few.<br>There are many books on the desk. |
| much + اسم لا يعد | فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال<br>من الممكن فى الإثبات مع<br>there is – so – too | How much money do you need?<br>There isn't much furniture here.<br>There is much sugar in the tea. |
| a few/few + اسم جمع يعد | فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للعدد | I have a few books here. يكفى<br>I have few books here. لا يكفى |
| a little/little + اسم لا يعد | فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للكمية | I have a little money. يكفى<br>I have little money. لا يكفى |




**only a (few مع الأسماء المعدودة / little مع الأسماء التى لا تعد)**

I bought only a few **books.**

She listened to only a little **music.**

| a few | قليل ويكفى (مع الأسماء المعدودة) | a little | قليل ويكفى (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة) |
|---|---|---|---|
| few | قليل ولا يكفى (مع الأسماء المعدودة) | little | قليل ولا يكفى (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة) |

My wife bought a few bottles of water. — اشترت زوجتى القليل من زجاجات المياه (وتكفى)

My wife bought few bottles of water. — اشترت زوجتى القليل من زجاجات المياه (ولا تكفى)

Randa bought a little sugar. — اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ويكفى)

Randa bought little sugar. — اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ولا يكفى)

- تستخدم many مع so / too / there are
- تستخدم much مع so / too / very / there is
- تستخدم a lot of مع such

I met such a lot of people yesterday.



## Important Notes

بعض الكلمات فى ظاهرها جمع ولكنها تعامل معاملة المفرد:

**1** **athletics/politics/gymnastics/mathematics/maths/news/economics/statistics/physics/genetics/classics/electronics.**

- Mathematics is my favourite subject.
- Statistics shows progress in our economy.
- Gymnastics helps us to keep fit.
- The good news is "we passed the test."

هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى مجموعة. وهذه الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون مفردًا أو جمعًا حسب المقصود منها:

**2** **team/staff/family/government/company/committee/army/couple/crew/crowd/gang/group/navy/population/university.**

- The English staff is the best one in our school.

كلمة staff مفرد لأن المقصود بها القسم كواحد من ضمن الأقسام فى المدرسة.

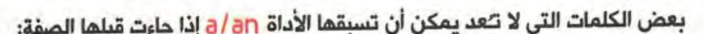
- The English staff in our school are all wonderful.

وهنا جمع لأننا نقصد مجموعة المدرسين فى القسم.

**3** تعتبر المبالغ المالية/الفترات الزمنية/المسافات شيئًا واحدًا لذا تعامل معاملة المفرد:

- Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- Five hours is a long time to do this.

**4**



بعض الكلمات التى لا تعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:

- We usually have lunch at 2.00 p.m.
- We had a wonderful lunch at a big restaurant yesterday.

هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعنى مثل:

**5** **paper – glass – coffee – time – cold – light – orange – iron – chicken**

| | |
|---|---|
| I'd like some writing paper. | (ورق الكتاب/لا يعد) |
| I'm going to buy a paper. (= a newspaper) | صحيفة (تعد) |
| The window's made of unbreakable glass. | (الزجاج/لا يعد) |
| Would you like a glass of water? | كوب |
| Have you got any coffee? | القهوة (سائل لا يعد) |
| Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee) | فنجان قهوة (يعد) |
| Don't hurry. There's plenty of time. | الوقت (لا يعد) |
| He went to London three times. | مرات |
| He has black hair. | شعر (لا يعد) |
| I'm starting to get a few grey hairs. | قليل من الشعر (يعد) |
| There are two oranges on the table. | برتقال |
| I don't like orange. I prefer red. | اللون البرتقالى (لا يعد) |
| This table is made of iron. | الحديد (لا يعد) |
| She bought an iron yesterday. | مكواة |
| Do you like chicken? (= chicken meat) | لحم الدجاج |
| We bought a chicken. | دجاجة |
| The sun gives us light. | الضوء/لا تعد |
| We need two lights in this room. | مصباح كهربى |
| I want to buy a new company. | شركة (اسم يعد) |
| I hope to have good company. | صُحبة (اسم لا يعد) |

**6** هناك كلمات مثل trousers/glasses/shoes/gloves تعامل معاملة الجمع. أما إذا جاء قبلها a pair of فتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much.
- A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

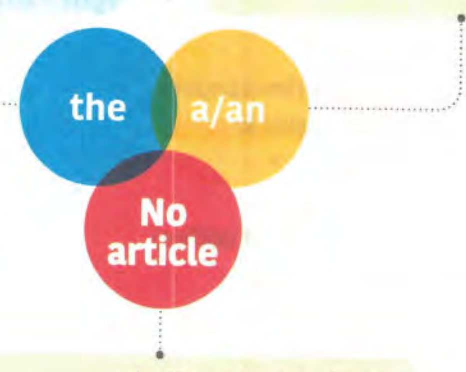
من الممكن استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة مع الكميات لتحويلها إلى اسم يعد:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a piece of jewellery | a piece of furniture | a piece of luggage | a piece of information |
| a slice of cake/cheese | a loaf of bread | a jar of jam | a cup of coffee |
| a glass of lemonade | a tube of toothpaste | a bar of soap | a sheet of paper |
| a bottle of milk | a bar of chocolate | a piece of advice | a bag of chips |

## Language Summary

- قبل الاسم المفرد
- قبل الاسم النكرة الذى يذكر فى الجملة لأول مرة.
- قبل الوظائف والمهن والحرف.

- للتخصيص.
- قبل الاسم الذى تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.
- قبل ذكر الاختراعات والاكتشافات والحيوانات بشكل عام.
- قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها الموجود منها واحد فقط.




- قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد والكميات.
- عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.
- مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.
- مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.






- هى أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع.
- لا تجمع ولا تأخذ (a/an).
- يأتى معها فعل مفرد فقط.
- تأخذ much/a little - a lot of / lots of

## Countable



1. هى الأسماء التى يكون لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها (a/an) أو شكل جمع.
2. تجمع بطرق مختلفة.
3. يأتى معها فعل مفرد أو جمع.
4. تأخذ many/a few - a lot of / lots of

## Practice




## Language
## General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Mohamed doesn't have .................... money.
a) much b) many c) some d) few

2 Most of our furniture .................... in Damietta.
a) are made b) is made c) makes d) is making

3 Would you like .................... tea after the meal?
a) some b) much c) a d) any

4 Fortunately, the news .................... as bad as we had expected.
a) wasn't b) weren't c) haven't been d) don't

5 There .................... too many passengers on the train. I can't get on it.
a) aren't b) isn't c) are d) is

6 The police .................... to question يستجوب two men about the robbery.
a) want b) wants c) has wanted d) is wanted

7 I have found a job in .................... clothes factory.
a) an b) a c) no article d) any

8 Would you like .................... more sugar? *(Longman)*
a) many b) a few c) some d) a

9 Can you tell me how .................... times you have seen this film?
a) many b) any c) much d) often

10 Would you like to have .................... help with this project?
a) any b) an c) the d) some

11 .................... exercise keeps your body fit, so you should join a gym class.
a) Many b) Much c) A lot d) Few

12 A bag of money .................... from my father while he was walking last night.
a) was stolen b) is stolen c) were stolen d) are stolen

13 Three days .................... long enough for a good holiday.
a) weren't b) aren't c) haven't been d) isn't

14 I bought a .................... of toothpaste last night.
a) sheet b) slice c) jar d) tube

15 It is very good that I don't have .................... luggage; I can move easily.
a) many b) some c) much d) a lot

16 There are .................... books available; we have 4 and we need at least 20. *(Longman)*
a) a few b) few c) many d) less

17 There is plenty of meat in the fridge, but there isn't .................... bread.
a) much b) many c) little d) a lot

18 Mariam was listening to .................... music on the radio.
a) a b) many c) one d) some

19 My friends managed to get a lot of useful information, but I haven't got ................ .
a) some b) many c) any d) few

20 One should drink enough .................... of water daily.
a) lots b) many c) quantity d) a lot

21 Five million pounds .................... too much money for this villa.
a) is b) is being c) are d) are being

22 The money of the clothes .................... on that table.
a) was b) were c) has d) had

23 Everyone knows that athletics .................... us fit and healthy.
a) keep b) are keeping c) keeps d) have kept

24 My son bought a new pair of shoes which .................... very expensive.
a) are b) were c) was d) have

25 All the money I have .......... to buy the books I need to buy. What can I do? *(Longman)*
a) is enough b) is sufficient c) is insufficient d) are enough

26 I am very busy; I have .................... to do today. *(Longman)*
a) little b) many c) a lot of d) a lot

27 I want you to enjoy your trip and have .................... good time.
a) many b) a c) a few d) any

28 A: .................... coffee have you drunk today? B: Two cups.
a) How many b) How much c) How d) How long

29 What Mr Osama does .................... because he has been very ill recently.
a) is b) are c) has d) have

30 I was very angry when I found .................... in my soup at the restaurant.
a) any hairs b) no hairs c) a hair d) the hair

31 I need a .................... of oil and .................... of sugar, please. *(Longman)*
a) litre/a kilo b) bottle/a few c) kilo/a litre d) litre/an amount

32 One of the following sentences is not grammatically correct?
a) We need some water to drink during the journey.
b) He told me an important information about the crime.
c) I saw lots of students waiting for their results at school.
d) I met some kind people while I was in the village.

33 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.
b) Lentils soup are my favourite kind of appetizers.
c) Gymnastics aren't easy sports as they need a lot of practice.
d) Two hours are very long to wait for the doctor.

# Test yourself




Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My sister was lucky because she saw that .................... who rescued her.
a) police b) cheat c) officer d) bully

2 Aya .................... with her family on how to spend the holiday.
a) cheats b) debates c) fights d) controls

3 Our company has a .................... . It is a very ambitious one.
a) three-year-business plan b) three-year-business plans
c) three-year's-business plan d) three-years'-business plan

4 Carrying a .................... over your shoulder for a long time is likely to harm you.
a) money b) wallet c) purse d) rucksack

5 I don't understand why someone would do that unless they are .................... and cruel.
a) favourite b) dear c) nasty d) dirt

6 After a long .................... with his family, Ali decided to move to a new flat.
a) agreement b) phone-in c) discussion d) quarrel

7 The last time I went to the dentist, I was .................... as I fear his medical instruments.
a) scared b) broken c) amazed d) delighted

8 Hany from Cairo is on the .................... . He wants to participate in our programme.
a) row b) line c) ground d) paper

9 The medical and .................... staff plays a great role in fighting diseases all over the world.
a) farming b) engineering c) nursing d) advertising

10 It's very stressful to work in a ....................; I can't deal with toddlers at all.
a) nurse b) nursed c) nursing d) nursery

11 My son got angry when his classmates .................... him rudely.
a) honoured b) paid c) bullied d) pampered

12 Don't look at the book during the exam. That's .................... .
a) cheat b) cheats c) cheated d) cheating

13 My friend is looking at the book during the exam. He is a .................... .
a) cheat b) cheats c) cheated d) cheating

14 My father made .................... of the things he had to buy.
a) list b) listed c) listing d) a list

15 A: What are you .................... behind your back, Omar? B: Nothing, dad!
a) bullying b) hiding c) hosting d) laughing

16 Would you like .................... cup of coffee?
a) a b) any c) some d) an

17 I don't have .................... furniture. I feel more comfortable with less furniture.
a) many b) much c) some d) a

18 One of the players in our team .................... very tall.
a) are b) is c) be d) is being

19 I was served .................... food in the wedding, but it was really delicious.
a) a few b) few c) a little d) a lot

20 .................... books are very useful, but others are not.
a) Any b) Some c) A lot d) Much

21 If you want to know the news, you can read it in .................... .
a) much paper b) paper c) some paper d) the papers

22 The train is .................... of transport. I really like using it.
a) means b) the means c) a means d) some means

23 There isn't .................... traffic on the ring road today.
a) few b) some c) much d) many

24 A: How .................... coffees do you want to have? B: Three, please.
a) much b) many c) little d) few

25 .................... the police know how the accident happened?
a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Was

26 Three hours .................... a long time to wait for her to come.
a) is b) are c) have been d) were

27 I am going to buy .................... to have my breakfast.
a) some breads b) many bread c) a bread d) some bread

28 A: Can I borrow your scissors? B: Mine .................... sharp enough.
a) isn't b) doesn't c) aren't d) don't

29 .................... lunch we had together was delicious.
a) The b) A c) No article d) An

30 My father asked me to buy a .................... of jam.
a) tube b) bar c) piece d) jar

Study 

Part (3)

# Lessons 5 & 6

## Chapter 

### Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| as usual | كالعادة |
| branch | فرع شجرة/فرع لشركة أو محل |
| close | قريب |
| continue | يستمر |
| correct | صحيح |
| count | يعد/يحصى |
| crutch | عكاز |
| diseases | أمراض |
| downstairs | الطابق الأسفل |
| expect | يتوقع |
| expression | تعبير |
| follow | يتبع |
| forever | إلى الأبد |
| glasses | نظارات |
| hold onto | يمسك فى |
| hills | تلال |
| immediately | فى الحال |
| marked | مشار إليه |
| mistake | خطأ |
| organise | ينظم |
| plan | خطة |
| prefer | يفضل |
| pretty | جميلة |
| relax | يسترخى |
| rocky tops | قمم صخرية |
| shore | شاطئ |
| thought | فكر |
| trust | ثقة |
| whistle | صفارة/يصفر |

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | |
|---|---|
| along the beach | بمحاذاة الشاطئ |
| as usual | كالعادة |
| as fast as I could | بأسرع ما يمكننى |
| climb out of | يقفز من |
| close to | قريب من |
| fight them for | يقاتلهم من أجل |
| find out | يكتشف/يعرف |
| jumped out of | قفز من على |
| prefer to | يفضل أن |
| walked off | خرج |
| excited to | متحمس لـ |




## Novel Exercises
## Chapter (4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I usually put my .................... in my son and he really deserves it.
a) truth b) trust c) true d) truly

2 The referee .................... and the game was over.
a) whistled b) ran c) coughed d) sneezed

3 I didn't find what I wanted in this shop, so I went to their new ............. .
a) root b) trench c) branch d) trunk

4 Don't worry, you should .................... and think again.
a) relax b) hesitate c) worry d) quite

5 When I go to Matrouh, I usually stand on the .................... and look at the sea.
a) bank b) branch c) edge d) shore

6 Eating healthy food can protect us from many serious .................... .
a) illness b) diseases c) dangers d) sick

7 I was very .................... when I saw him walking after the operation.
a) surprise b) surprising c) surprised d) annoying

8 I decided to spend my next holiday .................... an island in the Pacific.
a) on b) at c) in d) into

9 I realised that something bad had happened when I saw a sad .................... on his face.
a) crutch b) explanation c) preparation d) expression

10 When I saw my son and daughter walking together .................... the beach. I felt happy.
a) a long b) in c) along d) away

11 My niece looked .................... in her fascinating wedding dress.
a) ugly b) pretty c) terrible d) keen

12 I feel .................... when I hear that there is a match for my favourite team.
a) excited b) surprised c) terrible d) exciting

13 They saw some low .................... and began to climb them easily.
a) hells b) hills c) wells d) shells

14 I have done all my homework and asked my teacher to .................... my mistakes.
a) collect b) realise c) connect d) correct

15 A criminal was punished for holding up a man with a .................... .
a) gun b) canon c) bullet d) rocket



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Writing an email

New message

From .................................................... اسم وعنوان الراسل الإلكترونى إذا وجد:

To .................................................... اسم وعنوان المرسل إليه الإلكترونى إذا وجد:

Subject .................................................... الموضوع باختصار:

(invitation - congratulation - complaint - apology - request)

**Dear** .............................., اسم المرسل إليه

How are you? I want to tell you that ..........................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................... موضوع الرسالة:

**Best wishes**

...................... اسم الراسل:

Send



You can have more information about writing emails in the booklet.

## Practice  Practise more — Skills Exercises

**1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A good education has the ability to change the world. When we pay attention to quality education, the results can be transformational for an individual, a community and society at large. The value of investing in education is indisputable: it improves economic development, promotes peace, and lifts people out of poverty.

The right to education is not only the right to access education but also the right to receive an education of good quality. Education must be available and accessible but also acceptable and adaptable. Students must receive a quality education that enables their personalities, talents and abilities and to live a full and satisfying life within society.

The aims of education go far beyond acquiring numeracy and literacy skills. Basic skills also include life skills such as the ability to make well-balanced decisions; to resolve conflicts in a responsibility, critical thinking, creative talents, and other abilities which give children the tools needed to pursue their options in life.

Also, schools should have a sufficient number of trained teachers. All teachers should be paid competitive salaries. There should be an appropriate number of classrooms, accessible to all, with adequate and separate sanitation facilities for girls and boys.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The benefits of a good education can be noticed on .................. .
   a) people and their families
   b) people, their community and their society
   c) countries, continents and islands
   d) poor people and workers

2 When we invest in education, this will .................. .
   a) make people poor and powerless
   b) improve economic development and ignorance
   c) encourage wars and illegal competitions
   d) improve people's income and bring peace

3 The education provided to students must .................. .
a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
b) be for free and be online
c) provide good salaries to students and their families
d) activate violence among students to motivate them

4 Education should provide students with the techniques that .................. .
a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine
b) follow their options in life
c) enrich their argumentative abilities
d) strengthen their flexibility in life

5 In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should .................. .
a) get paid competitive salaries
b) arrest students who make troubles
c) have power and authority
d) wear formal clothes with much money

6 Educational institutions should have .................. .
a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions
b) only one classroom for all students
c) large playground with whiteboards
d) enough classrooms and separate toilets

7 The best title for this passage is "..................".
a) How Can Education Be Good?
b) Quality Education and Teachers
c) Classrooms and Schools
d) Education Investment

**2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1 Many young people use the internet to make new friends and spend hours chatting with them.

a) يستخدم الإنترنت العديد من الشباب لصناعة صداقات جديدة وصرف ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.
b) يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين مجموعات جديدة وقضاء ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.
c) العديد من الشباب يستخدم الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء أيام فى الدردشة معهم.
d) يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.

2 School libraries contribute much to the development of our children's minds and awareness.

a) تساعد المكتبات كثيرًا فى تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
b) تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرًا فى تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
c) تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرًا فى تنمية عقول رجالنا ووعيهم.
d) تشارك المكتبات المدرسية قليلًا فى تنمية مخ أطفالنا وجعلهم واعين.

3 No doubt that friends are either good or bad. Some of them are worthy of respect while others are hateful ones.

a) لا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر بغيض.

b) لا شكوك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم لا يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر بغيض.

c) لا شك أن الأصدقاء ليسوا طيبين ولا سيئين. بعضهم محترم والبعض الآخر بغيض.

d) لا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر كريم.

4 We have to rationalise the consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.

a) علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

b) علينا تيسير اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

c) لدينا ترشيد اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

d) لدينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمقاطعة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

5 The educational institution seeks to deepen the democratic thought and train the young generations on positive participation.

a) المؤسسة التعليمية تسعى إلى تهميش الفكر الديمقراطى وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.

b) المؤسسة التعليمية تسعى إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطى وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة المناسبة.

c) تسعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطى وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.

d) تسعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الحلم الديمقراطى وتدريب الأجيال الكبيرة على المشاركة المثبتة.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يجب أن نتعاون جميعًا مع وزارة البيئة للتخلص من الكميات الهائلة من القمامة فى شوارعنا.

a) We must all help with the Ministry of Industry to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.

b) We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Education to save the huge amounts of garbage in our ways.

c) We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.

d) We must all operate with the Ministry of Environmental to provide the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.

7 لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا فى حياتنا، فالإنسان لا يستطيع أن يحيا بدونها.

a) Electricity has become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot live without it.

b) Electrical has become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot live with it.

c) Electrician has become an essential part of our lives, as a person can live without it.

d) Wires have become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot life without it.

8 من الواضح أن الجرائم قد زادت بمعدل كبير هذه الأيام فلا يكاد يمر يوم دون أن نسمع عن جريمة فى التلفزيون أو الإنترنت.

a) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on the television or in the Internet.
b) Apparently, crimes have doubled at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a criminal on television or the Internet.
c) It is safe that crimes have decreased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us knowing about a crime on television or the Internet.
d) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on television or the Internet.

9 يشكل الوالدان شخصيات أبنائهما منذ بداية طفولتهم فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات.

a) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the end of their childhood, as they show them values and habits.
b) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
c) Fathers shape the characters of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
d) Grandmothers shape the personalities of their daughters from the beginning of their childhood, as they learn them values and habits.

10 للعولمة تأثير خطير على الدول النامية. ويجب على هذه الدول أن تبدأ بجدية للاستفادة من ثمار التكنولوجيا.

a) Globalisation has a serious effect on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously to benefit from the fruits of technology.
b) Globalisation has a dangerous effect on developed countries. These countries must begin seriously to benefit from the fruits of technology.
c) Globalisation has a serious effect on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously benefitting from the impacts of technology.
d) Science c has a serious affection on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously benefit from the fruits of technology.

**3 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words to a new friend you have met recently telling him about your interests and daily activities.**

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.




# Al-Adwaa Test

40

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 Mona is ........................ a very nice dress for her friend's wedding. Everyone admires her look.
a) putting upon b) dressing c) dressed in d) wearing e) putting

2 There's so much to do and I don't know where to start. The antonyms of the word "start" are ........................ and ........................ .
a) finish b) initiate c) end d) neglect e) pursue

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 One of the main jobs of the special forces is to ........................ the city centre and other important buildings.
a) police b) nurse c) close d) stop

4 Don't look at my answer sheet. That's ........................ .
a) cheating b) cheat c) cheated d) cheater

5 The students asked me to have the lecture on Monday ........................ Friday.
a) instead b) except for c) instead of d) except

6 I read a wonderful book about ........................ of Gamal Abdel Nasser.
a) a life b) the life c) life d) living

7 My ........................ position when I play football is a goalkeeper.
a) favourite b) cool c) stressed d) distant

8 I had no close ........................ with other boys at school, so I feel lonely.
a) articles b) conversations c) advice d) friendships

9 Please do not hesitate to ........................ me if you want anything.
a) communicate b) connect c) collect d) contact

10 ........................ oldest lion is roaring in its cage now.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article

11 When I leave school, I want to be ........................ tour guide.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

12 She asked me for ........................ advice about how to revise her lessons.
a) an b) any c) some d) few

13 Walking to ........................ work is part of my daily routine.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14 I was so thirsty and asked for ........................ of water.
a) the glass b) pair of glass c) a pair of glasses d) a glass

15 .................... intelligent you are, the better marks you will get.

a) The much b) The most c) The more d) More

16 There isn't .................... pharmacy near us. We can't get any medicine.

a) many b) some c) few d) a

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans, air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 Desertification means ................ a wide area of trees.

a) clearing b) planting c) irrigating d) spraying

18 The underlined word "its" refers to ................ .

a) desertification b) global warming

c) environment d) carbon dioxide

19 Burning fossil fuels ................ global warming.

a) causes of b) results of c) leads to d) results from

20 The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ................ .

a) environmental b) biological

c) chemical d) material

21 Using non-renewable sources of energy is not safe because it ................ .
a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
b) can be stolen easily
c) can be flamed
d) can't be moved from a place to another

22 According to the passage, we ................ the destructive effects of the global warming.
a) will face
b) faced
c) are already facing
d) have never faced

23 The best title for this passage is "................".
a) National Disasters
b) Global Disasters
c) Trees and Nature
d) Anthropogenic Activities

**24 Choose the correct English translation:**

- العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتاحة بدون إسراف.

a) Hard work is the only way to rise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
b) Hard working is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all unavailable economic resources without extravagance.
c) Working hard is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economical resources without extravagance.
d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.

**25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in peace process and combating terrorism.

a) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر محلى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
b) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
c) اضطرت مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ودعم السياحة.
d) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى اجتماع دولى يستهدف عدم استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

**26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The best way to reach success is patience and hard work.

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 286

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practise more | Take more exams | Well done! |

# Units 3 & 4 Al-Adwaa Test

40

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 I am in heavy debts. I .................... many people and I can't repay them.
a) owe money from
b) borrowed money from
c) lent money to
d) lent money from
e) owe money to

2 Mai is miserable as she has got low marks in her exams. The word "miserable" gives the same meaning as .................... .
a) cheerful b) sad c) happy d) depressed e) pleased

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Hana does .................... work for Resala charity two days a week.
a) volunteer b) contact c) voluntary d) naïve

4 A teacher's work can .................... a difference to a lot of his students' lives.
a) do b) make c) play d) have

5 It is advisable to encourage young people to .................... the work of charities.
a) experiment b) volunteer c) spend d) experience

6 The thief had a long curved .................... on his cheek, so we could recognise him.
a) skate b) sky c) skin d) scar

7 We just take it .................... that people over a certain age can drive.
a) of granted b) for granted c) with granted d) for grand

8 Having too many exams in a short time is .................... .
a) stress b) stressed c) stresses d) stressful

9 You must cover your food or it will attract flies and other insects. The opposite of the word "cover" is .................... .
a) conceal b) hide c) uncover d) stop

10 Marwan has .................... Alexandria. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
a) been to b) been on c) gone to d) gone in

11 My father .................... abroad for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
a) had worked b) worked c) is working d) has worked

12 Ali and his family have never travelled since .................... .
a) he gets married b) he marries c) his marriage d) married

13 How .................... kilos of meat do you need?
a) long b) many c) much d) often

14 He is a space scientist. Now, he is studying .................... moon.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15 Egypt has .................... unique location in the world.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

16 My father went to .................... hospital to visit his friend.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Interests are important to think about. But it is more important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines or managing multiple tasks at once – some jobs more than others (surgeons or firefighters, for example). In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 According to the writer our choice of jobs is influenced by .................. .

a) our education b) work values c) personality d) salaries

18 According to the passage working under pressure means .................. .

a) meeting a deadline b) finishing at any time

c) making mistakes d) enjoying our job

19 In most time, pressure leads to .................. .

a) relaxation b) satisfaction c) freedom d) sickness

20 A very important skill that employers always look for is working .................. .

a) without pressure b) calmly

c) under pressure d) personally

21 One disadvantage of working under pressure for some people is ................ .

a) meeting the deadline
b) working a lot
c) being lazy
d) making mistakes

22 A person should be ................ to work under pressure.

a) honest
b) nervous
c) calm
d) stressed

23 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ................ .

a) work value
b) working under pressure
c) working with no pressure
d) job

**24 Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن الفقر والبطالة هما قنبلة موقوتة، فلو لم نبذل جهودًا غير عادية لاستئصالهما سنعانى كثيرًا، ولا تستطيع الحكومة أن تقوم بهذا وحدها.

a) Poverty and employment are a time bomb, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.
b) Poverty and unemployment are a time rocket, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a little.
c) Poverty and unemployment are a time bomb, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.
d) Poverty and unemployment are a time weapon, unless we make ordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.

**25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

The government and the individuals should work together to offer more support and help to the handicapped and children with special needs.

a) يجب على الحكومة والشعب العمل سويًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعوقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.
b) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل سويًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمكفوفين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.
c) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل بشكل منفصل لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعوقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.
d) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل سويًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

**26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The reasons why people travel abroad.

..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
|---|---|---|---|
| Study again | Practise more | Take more exams | Well done! |

# Communication

## Unit 5

## Objectives




**Reading** : A science article on how we may communicate in the future

**Writing** : An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online

**Listening** : A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

**Speaking** : Give a presentation

**Language** : Future forms *will, be going to and present continuous*

**Life Skills** : Self-management; Decision making




Part (1)
# Lessons 1 & 2

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| app = application (n) | تطبيق حاسب آلى |
| communication (n) | نظام الاتصال/تواصل |
| connected (adj) | متصل |
| hack (n) (v) – ed* | اختراق/يخترق |
| the internet (n) | شبكة الإنترنت |
| security (n) | أمن |
| smartphone (n) | الهاتف الذكى |
| technology (n) | تكنولوجيا |

Someone **hacked** my phone and stole important files.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



### Vocabulary on Reading Texts

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| accident (n) | حادث |
| business (n) | عمل تجارى |
| cause (v) – d | يسبب |
| check (v) – ed | يفحص |
| control (v) – led | يتحكم فى |
| create (v) – d | يخلق/ينتج |
| criminal (n) (adj) | مجرم/إجرامى |
| develop (v) – ed | يتطور |
| device (n) | جهاز |
| disadvantages (n) | عيوب/مساوئ |
| driverless (adj) | ذاتية القيادة (بلا سائق) |
| electric (adj) | كهربائى |
| empty (v) – ~~y~~ ied | يفرغ |
| enough (adv) | كافٍ/بقدر كافٍ |
| flexible (adj) | مرن |
| heating (n) | التدفئة |
| imagine (v) – d | يتخيل |
| latest (adj) | أحدث |
| lighting (n) | إضاءة |
| lightning (n) | البرق |
| link (v) – ed | يتصل/يرتبط |
| machine (n) | ماكينة |
| major (adj) | رئيسى |
| network (n) | شبكة |
| online (adv) (adj) | عبر الإنترنت |
| organisation (n) | منظمة |
| petrol (n) | بنزين |
| possible (adj) | محتمل |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| power stations (n) | محطات توليد الطاقة | satellite navigation (sat-nav) (n) | نظام الملاحة عن طريق الأقمار الصناعية |
| protect (v) – ed | يحمى | system (n) | نظام |
| rubbish bin (n) | سلة قمامة | tablet (n) | كمبيوتر لوحى (تابلت) |
| safe (adj) | آمن | worldwide (adv) (adj) | عالمى/فى جميع أنحاء العالم |

### Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| camping (n) | التخييم (الخروج فى معسكرات ومخيمات) | shopping (n) | التسوق |
| illegally (adv) | بشكل غير قانونى | survey (n) | دراسة/استطلاع |
| particular (adj) | خاص | task (n) | مهمة/مأمورية عمل |
| recent (adj) | حديث | | |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 It is very easy for anyone to .................... into my grandfather's Facebook account.
a) hack b) contact c) empty d) control

2 He wasn't sure whether he had locked the door, so he went to .................... .
a) create b) click c) check d) control

3 The machine has a safety ................ which switches the power off if there is a fault.
a) tool b) device c) instrument d) machinery

4 We have a new computerised .................... in the library.
a) system b) security c) image d) control

5 Never share your personal information if you want to be .................... online.
a) safety b) safely c) safe d) save

6 Mohamed Salah is a .................... football player. We are all proud of him.
a) worldwide b) connected c) local d) minor

7 Mostafa is a .................... officer for one of the most famous companies in Cairo.
a) secure b) securing c) security d) safety

8 My wife likes to go .................... every Friday for our weekly needs.
a) survey b) camping c) shop d) shopping

9 It is a .................... act to steal from people.
a) legal b) criminal c) good d) terrific

10 There are many new .................... that we can benefit from on our smart phones.
a) hacks b) apps c) causes d) disadvantages

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (be) known as | معروف كـ | in particular | على وجه الخصوص |
| a driverless car | سيارة بدون سائق | information about | معلومات عن |
| as often as I can | بقدر ما أستطيع | listen to | يستمع إلى |
| break into | يقتحم | live on | يعيش على |
| by accident | بالصدفة | lose money | يخسر مالًا |
| collect + (someone) | يصطحب/يوصل شخصًا بسيارة | make a decision | يتخذ قرارًا |
| collect information | يجمع معلومات | on your phone | على تليفونك |
| communicate with | يتواصل مع | on the internet | على الإنترنت |
| connect to | يتصل بـ | on business | فى عمل |
| connect with | يربط بـ/ يتناغم مع شخص | outside world | العالم الخارجى |
| do a survey | يقوم ببحث شامل | take control of | يسيطر على/يتحكم فى |
| do the shopping | يقوم بالتسوق | protect from/against | يحمى من/ضد |
| go shopping | يذهب للتسوق | send messages to | يرسل رسائل نصية لـ |
| hack into | يخترق | worried about | قلق بشأن |
| important to/for | مهم لـ | | |

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| apply | يطبق | application<br>applicant | تطبيق/نموذج طلب وظيفة<br>طالب الوظيفة | applicable<br>applied | قابل للتطبيق<br>تطبيقى |
| communicate | يبلغ/يتصل | communication<br>communicator | تواصل/اتصال<br>محاور | communicative | صريح/تواصلى |
| control | يتحكم | control<br>controller | تحكم/قيادة<br>مراقب/مشرف | controlling<br>controllable<br>controlled | متسلط/مسيطر<br>مطيع/مذعن<br>مراقب/موجه |
| create | يخلق | creation<br>creativity<br>creator | خلق/تكوين<br>إبداع<br>خالق/بديع | creative | إبداعى/مبتكر |
| develop | يتطور | development<br>developer | تطور/تنمية<br>مطور | developed<br>developing | متطور<br>نامٍ (فى مرحلة التطور) |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| hack | يخترق | hacking (uncountable)<br>hack (countable)<br>hacker | اختراق<br>اختراق<br>مخترق/قرصان | hacked | مُخْـتَـرَق |
| imagine | يتخيل | imagination<br>imaginings | خيال<br>خيالات/تصورات | imaginable<br>imaginary<br>imaginative | ممكن تخيله<br>خيالى<br>واسع الخيال |
| incriminate | يتهم شخصًا بجريمة | crime<br>criminal | جريمة<br>مجرم | criminal | إجرامى |
| secure | يؤمن | security | أمان/حماية | secure | مأمون/مطمئن |

- I can't imagine that we lost the cup.
- Films help us use our imagination.
- The new employee has imaginative thoughts.

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| connected | متصل | linked/joined | disconnected/detached | غير متصل/منفصل |
| control | يتحكم فى | command/dominate | follow/surrender | يتبع/يستسلم |
| develop | يتطور | advance/flourish | decline/decrease | يتدهور |
| disadvantages | عيوب | demerits/drawbacks | advantages/merits | مزايا |
| empty | يفرغ | clear/evacuate | fill/occupy | يملأ |
| enough | كاف | adequate/sufficient | inadequate/insufficient | غير كاف |
| heating | التدفئة | warming/boiling | cooling/freezing | تبريد/تجميد |
| illegal | غير قانونى | unlawful/banned/ unauthorised | legal/lawful/authorised | قانونى |
| major | رئيسى | main/primary/leading | minor/secondary/trivial | ثانوى/تافه |
| safe | آمن | secure/protected | insecure/risky | غير آمن/خطير |
| security | أمن | safety/protection | insecurity/danger | عدم الأمان/الخطر |

The antonym of "major" is ... .

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I like cars in general, but I like Mercedes in .................... .

a) particular
b) control
c) particularly
d) private

2 The telephone is the only means of .................... in remote areas.

a) communication
b) communicate
c) communicative
d) communicator

3 To solve the problem of pollution, we should use .................... cars.

a) petrol-powered
b) electrical
c) electronic
d) electric

4 Teachers must have the ability to .................... control of their classes.

a) do
b) play
c) take
d) make

5 My computer is connected .................... the wifi, but there is no internet.

a) with
b) to
c) into
d) up

6 It is illegal to have a gun with you without a special license. The antonym of the word "illegal" is "....................".

a) lawful
b) banned
c) unlawful
d) minor

7 I asked them to empty the house at once. The synonym of the word "empty" is "....................".

a) fill
b) occupy
c) evacuate
d) unclear

8 The thieves managed to break .................... the house and steal much money.

a) up
b) off
c) into
d) with

9 Our teacher is very .................... as he has a very wonderful technique in teaching.

a) imagination
b) imaginable
c) imaginary
d) imaginative

10 It is important to think well before .................... any decision.

a) making
b) doing
c) breaking
d) collecting

## Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

| | Word | Example |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | (be) able to + (inf.) قادر على | Birds are able to fly using their wings. |
| | (be) capable of + (v-ing) قادر على | Birds are capable of flying using their wings. |
| | (have) the ability to + (inf.) لديه القدرة على | Birds have the ability to fly using their wings. |
| | (someone/something) + enable + (someone/something) + to + (inf.) .... يُمكِّن .... من ..... | Wings enable birds to fly. |
| | electric (adj) كهربائى أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة) | - Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries. |
| | electrical (adj) كهربائى أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص) | - My father works as an electrical engineer. |
| 2 | electricity (n) الكهرباء | We can't do without electricity in our daily life. |
| | electrician (n) عامل فنى كهرباء | A company needs four electricians to be employed. |
| | electronic (adj) إلكترونى | The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday. |
| | experience الخبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تعد) | They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience in the field of engineering. |
| 3 | experiences مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات فى الحياة (تعد) | She had some interesting experiences while she was travelling to many countries. |
| | experiment تجربة عملية/علمية (داخل معمل) | Teachers usually do simple experiments in the laboratory. |

**task**
مهمـة أو عمل صعب أو غيـر محبوب يقوم به شخص

I was given the task of organising the school trip.

4 **mission**
بعثـة أو مأمورية ينتقل فيها الشـخص من مكان لمكان آخر للقيام بها

He went on a mission to Japan.

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The first .................... of the secretary was to file some letters.
a) mission b) mask
c) task d) trip

2 This job requires a lot of .................... to get it.
a) experiment b) experiences
c) experts d) experience

3 I got a/an .................... to install electrical systems in my new flat.
a) electricity b) electrical
c) electrician d) physician

4 Having healthy food .................... us to build our bodies well.
a) is able to b) enables
c) has the ability d) capable of

5 I chose the cleverest assistant for a .................... to London.
a) mission b) task
c) mansion d) picnic

# Practice




## Vocabulary
## General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I have to .................... my work for mistakes before I hand it in.
a) collect b) create c) check d) calculate

2 .................... help people to communicate with each other and also to use the internet easily.
a) Intelligent phones b) Smartphones
c) Smile phones d) Start phones

3 During my holiday, I like to go .................... as it is cheaper than staying in expensive hotels.
a) visiting b) heating c) climbing d) camping

4 To get the job, the applicants need to have at least 5 years' .................... .
a) experience b) experiences c) experiment d) experts

5 You have to bring .................... photos of you when you first join the club.
a) modern b) recently c) recent d) secure

6 I think someone has tried to .................... into my computer. What do you think I should do? *(Longman)*
a) kick b) hack c) kill d) attack

7 Smoking is one of the .................... causes of lung diseases.
a) minor b) major c) mainly d) mean

8 The government pays great attention to the roads .................... all over Egypt.
a) net b) circle c) website d) network

9 I haven't heard the .................... news. Can you tell me what has happened?
a) late b) later c) latest d) lately

10 Electricity is produced in what we call .................... .
a) power stations b) energy stations c) power cut d) solar energy

11 I have a useful .............. that helps me to learn English on my smartphone. *(Longman)*
a) machine b) security c) instrument d) app

12 We met our old friends in the street .................... accident, so we were all so happy.
a) in b) through c) by d) for

13 People like to have many electronic .................... at their homes.
a) cars b) bikes c) devices d) carpets

14 A recent .................... shows that a large percentage of people are getting into debt now.
a) statue b) survey c) app d) bill

15 .................... for the job should be sent to the personnel manager.
a) Applications b) Communications c) Developments d) Movements

16 Nowadays, there is little real .................... between parents and their children.
a) comment b) comparison c) application d) communication

17 My account was easily .................... into as my password was so easy.
a) broken b) picked c) hacked d) backed

18 Kareem behaved in a/an .............. way when some people tried to hack his phone.
a) smart b) malware c) linked d) empty

19 I am sorry. I didn't mean to step on your foot. It was a/an .................... .
a) chance b) opportunity c) incident d) accident

20 These days, small ............ can't survive due to the economic depression الركود الاقتصادى.
a) tablets b) tasks c) businesses d) surveys

21 One of the .................... of this job is the flexible working hours.
a) cons b) advantages c) disadvantages d) demerits

22 I don't know how some families live .................... 2000 pounds a month.
a) on b) with c) at d) into

23 We all must work together for the .................... of our country.
a) develop b) developed c) developer d) development

24 My friends and I .................... helping the old man who needed help yesterday.
a) can b) were able to c) had the ability d) were capable of

25 Mekky is a very .................... actor. His works are creative and worthwhile.
a) depressing b) imaginative c) boring d) imaginary

26 The police are trying to keep security everywhere. Security is an antonym for ".....................". (Longman)
a) danger b) safety c) sense d) comfort

27 This part of the form is only .................... to those who have a driving license.
a) applicable b) application c) applicant d) apply

28 Studying hard and revising regularly is very important .................... any student.
a) to b) with c) by d) from

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

29 I asked my teacher to .................... him if I want to inquire about any information.
a) connect to b) contact c) communicate
d) communicate with e) contact with

30 This room has under floor heating, isn't it wonderful? The antonyms of the word "heating" are .................... and .................... .
a) warming b) cooling c) signing d) deleting e) freezing

31 There is a plan to .................... the building in only five minutes in case of emergency.
a) install b) fill c) evacuate d) empty e) clean

32 Turtles .................... in water and on land.
a) able to exist b) are able to exist c) are capable to exist
d) are capable of existing e) capable of existing




## Future forms

هناك العديد من أشكال التعبير عن المستقبل وهى:

١- will + inf.

٢- (be) going to + inf.

٣- مضارع مستمر (am – is – are) + v-ing

٤- مضارع بسيط present simple

### 1 Subj. + will + inf. مصدر الفعل




**USAGE الاستخدام**

1. **For prediction with no evidence (based on guesswork)**
   تنبؤ بدون دليل (يعتمد على التخمين).
   He will win the first prize as I think he is clever.
   We will probably be there for about five or six days.

2. **For future facts** للتعبير عن حقيقة فى المستقبل
   I'll be forty-seven next year.

3. **For quick decision** لاتخاذ قرار سريع
   My phone is ringing; I will answer it.

4. **Offer & request** العرض والطلب
   Will you open the door for me, please?
   I will lend you the money you need. Don't worry.

5. **Threat & promise** الوعد والتهديد
   I'll get you a nice present.
   I'll call the police next time you come here.

6. **We can use "will" with present evidence with adverbs like:**
   **(probably – definitely – certainly – surely ...)** مع بعض الظروف مثل:
   Look at those dark clouds; it will probably rain.

7. **We can use "will" with the following words:** مع الكلمات التالية:
   **promise – expect – predict – hope – think – believe – perhaps – I'm sure**
   Scientists predict that we will live on the moon in the future.

**8** With some time conjunctions: مع الروابط الزمنية:

**(after/as soon as/before/until/when/by the time/ ...)**

When Samir comes/has come, he will eat his dinner.

We won't send the email until Ali confirms/has confirmed it.

## 2 be going to

**Subj. + (am / is / are) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل**

**USAGE الاستخدام**

**1** **For future plans, decisions and intentions.** خطط مستقبلية وقرارات ونوايا.

We can use "going to" with the following:

**(plan – intend – intention – (have) decided – (have) made a decision)**

I am going to buy some clothes online this afternoon.

I am going to study medicine. That's my plan.

I have decided to travel. - I am going to travel to London.

Watch out! You are going to fall in the hole.

ولكن لاحظ الجملة التالية:

Watch out or you will be robbed.

**2** **For predictions with evidence.** التنبؤ بدليل.

Look at the sky. It is going to rain.

She is pregnant. She is going to have a baby.



### Important Notes

**1** لاحظ الجمل التالية:

**promise – expect – predict ... الفاعل + will + inf.**

He promises he will do his best to come first.

**promised – expected – predicted ... الفاعل + would + inf.**

He promised he would do his best to come first.

أما مع عدم وجود فاعل فنستخدم بعدها (to + inf.).

He promises/promised to do his best to come first.

**2** يتم استخدام will غالبًا للتفاصيل والتعليقات على الحدث.

I am going on holiday. I will be away for a week.

I am going to do some walking. Oh, that'll be nice.

**3** لاحظ الجمل التالية:

Liverpool is a very good team. I think it will win the final match. (تنبؤ قائم على رأى شخصى)

These players are very big. I think the match is going to be very difficult. (تنبؤ قائم على دليل مرئى)






**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 That's my phone. I .................... answer it.
a) will b) am going to c) shan't d) could

2 I have applied for the job and I hope I .................... it.
a) will get b) am getting
c) get d) am going to get

3 I .................... in the hospital where I have applied for the training post.
a) am probably working b) will probably work
c) am probably going to work d) would probably work

4 Tomorrow, I .................... the match with my friend. I have intended to do that.
a) will watch b) am watching
c) watching d) am going to watch

5 The twins .................... seventeen next week. What presents will we buy for them?
a) turning b) turn c) are going to turn d) will turn

6 I think we .................... the match. *(Longman)*
a) are going to win b) are winning
c) win d) will win

7 Look at this careless driver! He .................... into the car in front of him.
a) will crash b) is going to crash c) is crashing d) crashes

8 I .................... hire استأجر a car to travel around London as planned.
a) am going to b) may c) would d) will

9 A: I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella?
B: Yes, perhaps it .................... .
a) is raining b) will rain c) probably rains d) rains

10 The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. I think it .................... down.
a) will fall b) is going to fall c) is falling d) falls

11 My young sister .................... 10 next Friday. *(Longman)*
a) has been b) will be c) is being d) is going to be

12 Don't raise your voice in the class or you .................... out.
a) will send b) will be sent
c) are going to send d) are going to be sent

13 Look! He .................... off his bicycle.
a) will fall b) is going to fall c) falls d) has fallen

14 Be careful or you .................... your finger.
a) will cut b) are going to cut c) are cutting d) cut

15 If you are too busy to clean your room, I .................... it for you.
a) am going to clean b) are cleaning
c) would clean d) will clean

16 I want to be the first to congratulate Mona as her birthday .................... tomorrow.
a) is going to be b) is being c) will be d) will have been

17 My brother is saving money, he .................... a new bike.
a) is buying b) is going buying c) will buy d) is going to buy

18 I think my brother .................... a doctor. All of us predict that.
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) would be

19 I .................... to Sharm El Sheikh as planned. (Longman)
a) am going to go b) am going c) will go d) go

20 Our team are attacking hard. They .................... a goal.
a) are going to score b) will score
c) are scoring d) score

21 My friend is very intelligent. I think, he .................... the test easily.
a) is going to passing b) will pass
c) is passing d) would pass

22 Ramy is studying medicine. He .................... the first doctor in the family.
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) must be

23 A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: I .................... my friends on Saturday morning.
a) will meet b) am going to meet c) meet d) will be met

24 A: Why are you turning on the television?
B: I .................... some educational programmes.
a) will watch b) am watching c) will be watched d) am going to watch

25 It was predicted that our school .................... in the competition.
a) would participate b) is going to participate
c) is participating d) will be participating

26 Today is Thursday so tomorrow .................... be Friday.
a) is going b) is c) will d) is going to

27 A: We haven't got any tea. B: OK. I .................... some.
a) am going to get b) am getting c) will get d) would get

28 Will you open the window, Medhat? This sentence expresses a/an .................... .
a) offer b) request c) intention d) threat

29 Which of the following sentences isn't grammatically correct?
a) I promise I will study hard.
b) The sky is cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
c) Be careful or you are falling.
d) Loujee will be 40 next month.

30 Which of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) My son will marry again. He has decided to do that.
b) Ali is studying hard. He will get high marks.
c) I promise, I am going to give you a lot of money.
d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

# Test yourself




Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Vocabulary

1. A: Are you going to Al-Fayyoum for a .................... reason? B: No, just for a holiday.
   a) flexible  b) particular  c) recent  d) lighting
2. The telephone lines are down, so .................... are very difficult in this area.
   a) apps  b) communications  c) contacts  d) conversations
3. The stick I have is .................... as I can bend it easily without being broken.
   a) hard  b) light  c) flexible  d) stiff
4. ................ is a natural phenomenon ظاهرة that produces very strong light in the sky.
   a) Lighting  b) Thunder  c) Tide  d) Lightning
5. There was no evidence that the suspect was .................... with the crime.
   a) contacted  b) communicated  c) collected  d) connected
6. .................... was tightened at the airport before the Prime Minister arrived.
   a) Security  b) Maturity  c) Community  d) Insecurity
7. I found learning Chinese to somehow an impossible .................... .
   a) work  b) mission  c) task  d) profession
8. It was a long drive, so we needed to fill the tank with .................... before we set off.
   a) machine  b) lightning  c) petrol  d) electricity
9. Many .................... on our phones are used to listen to music and watch some videos.
   a) tabs  b) gaps  c) taps  d) apps
10. The word "sat-nav" is short for اختصار لـ satellite .................... .
    a) navigation  b) navy  c) naval  d) nave
11. The new project is expected to .................... at least 2000 new jobs for the youth.
    a) consume  b) create  c) control  d) develop
12. There have been major new developments in satellite .................... .
    a) psychology  b) physiology  c) biology  d) technology
13. The secret information on my Facebook account was lost in a .................... .
    a) hack  b) hacked  c) hacker  d) hacks
14. Real Madrid is considered a .................... team that is known all over the world.
    a) sat-nav  b) worldwide  c) local  d) national
15. We can warm up the room quite quickly with this .................... fire مدفأة.
    a) electric  b) electrical  c) electricity  d) electrician

## Language

**16** My younger brother .................... 15 next Monday.

a) will be  b) is going to be  c) is being  d) going to be

**17** I am sure it .................... an exciting match tomorrow.

a) is going to be  b) is  c) is being  d) will be

**18** She is travelling to Paris tomorrow. She .................... the Eiffel Tower.

a) will probably visit  b) is probably going to visit

c) is going visiting  d) probably visits

**19** I expected he .................... his exams easily.

a) would pass  b) is passing  c) will pass  d) is going to pass

**20** Sally .................... her friends soon. That's her plan.

a) is meeting  b) is going to meet  c) meets  d) will meet

**21** My family promised they .................... me out today for passing my exams.

a) would take  b) are going to take  c) to take  d) will take

**22** I am going on holiday with my family to Italy. I am sure I .................... it.

a) are enjoying  b) will enjoy

c) are going to enjoy  d) should enjoy

**23** It's my birthday next Tuesday. I .................... 17.

a) am being  b) am going to be  c) have been  d) will be

**24** Don't come late again or I .................... punish you.

a) are going to  b) shan't  c) are gone to  d) will

**25** Look over there! He .................... off his bike.

a) is falling  b) is going to fall  c) will fall  d) falls

**26** I have planned. I .................... lunch with my uncle next Friday.

a) will have  b) am having

c) am going to have  d) would have

**27** He is filling the bucket with water. He .................... the car.

a) will wash  b) washes

c) has washed  d) is going to wash

**28** I expect my son .................... high marks in the exam.

a) gets  b) will get

c) is getting  d) will be getting

**29** What time .................... your plane take off tomorrow?

a) will  b) is  c) does  d) should

**30** Although prices are sky-high in London, I .................... there sooner or later. I have made up my mind.

a) am going to live  b) will live

c) won't live  d) was living



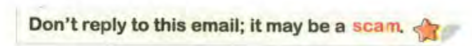

Part (2)

# Lessons 3 & 4

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| antivirus software (n) برنامج مضاد للفيروسات | lock (v) – ed يغلق |
| click (v) – ed يضغط على (رابط) | password (n) كلمة المرور |
| cyberbullying (n) التنمر/التسلط الإلكترونى | phishing (n) التصيد/الاحتيال |
| download (n) (v) – ed تحميل/يحمل من الإنترنت | posting photos نشر الصور |
| downloading malware (n) تحميل برمجيات خبيثة/ضارة | scam* (n) احتيال |
| hacking (n) القرصنة (على الإنترنت) | uploading personal details رفع بيانات شخصية على الإنترنت |
| link (n) رابط | |






لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



### Vocabulary on Reading & Listening

| | |
|---|---|
| abilities (n) قدرات | data (n) بيانات |
| account (n) حساب (بنكى/على موقع إلكترونى) | delete (v) – d يمسح |
| address (n) عنوان | details (n) تفاصيل |
| advert = advertisement (n) إعلان | embarrassing (adj) محرج |
| almost (adv) تقريبًا | employment (n) توظيف |
| bank account (n) حساب بنكى | excited (adj) فرحان/مبتهج |
| bully (v) – ~~y~~ied يتنمر | experience (n) (v) – d تجربة شخصية/يجرب |
| careful (adj) حريص | free (adj) (adv) = free of charge = for free مجانًا |
| change (v) – d يغير | funny (adj) مضحك |
| comment (n) (v) – ed تعليق/يعلق | furious (adj) غاضب جدًا |
| credit card (n) كارت ائتمان | google (v) – d يبحث على محرك البحث (جوجل) |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| happen (v) – ed | يحدث | recognise (v) – d | يعرف/يميز |
| horrible (adj) | فظيع | rude (adj) | وقح/قليل الأدب |
| impossible (adj) | مستحيل | scary (adj) | مخيف |
| join (v) – ed | يلتحق بـ/ينضم إلى | socialise (v) – d | يختلط (اجتماعيًا) |
| kids (n) | أطفال/صغار | support (v) – ed | يدعم |
| post (n) (v) – ed | منشور/ينشر (على الإنترنت) | surprise (v) – d | يندهش |
| properly (adv) | تمامًا | ugly (adj) | قبيح الشكل |
| really (adv) | حقًّا | website (n) | موقع إنترنت |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| allow (v) – ed | يسمح | frighten (v) – ed | يرعب/يخيف |
| (be) in trouble (v) | يكون فى ورطة | provide (v) – d | يزود |
| believe (v) – d | يصدق | steal (v) | يسرق |
| dishonest (adj) | مخادع/محتال | trick (v) – ed | يخدع |
| document (n) | وثيقة | unwanted (adj) | غير مرغوب فيه |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My father was .................... when I failed my exam. He decided to punish me.
a) pleased b) scary c) furious d) careful

2 After writing the message, I .................... it as I didn't want to annoy my friend.
a) dated b) deleted c) commented d) posted

3 Don't tell me the summary of what happened, I want the .................... .
a) scams b) briefs c) accounts d) details

4 The government salaries are now transferred to the employees' bank .................... .
a) maths b) accounts c) boxes d) amounts

5 I think it was .................... of them not to phone and say that they weren't coming.
a) wonderful b) rude c) scared d) excited

6 To get information about my project, I decided to .............. it to see what I will find.
a) goggle b) google c) log d) download

7 My little son put me in a/an .................... situation yesterday. I was very upset.
a) embarrassing b) embarrassed c) amusing d) supported

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| build friendships | يبنى صداقات | on the internet | على الإنترنت |
| believe in | يصدق/يؤمن بـ | safe place for | مكان آمن لـ |
| complete a form | يكمل/يملأ استمارة | stay safe online | يبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت |
| do it online | يفعل شيئًا على الإنترنت | read about | يقرأ عن |
| get ... for free | يحصل على شيء مجانًا | socialise with | يختلط اجتماعيًا مع |
| get a job | يحصل على وظيفة | steal from | يسرق من |
| give advice | يعطى نصيحة | think about | يفكر فى |
| advert for | إعلان لـ | worried about | قلق بشأن |
| comment about | تعليق على | write about | يكتب عن |
| complete ... with | يكمل ... بـ | in details | بالتفصيل |
| delete ... from | يمسح من | make comments on | يعلق على |
| plenty of | وفرة من | careful about/with | حريص على |
| keep a note of | يحتفظ بملحوظة من | click on | ينقر على |
| look like | يبدو كأنه/يشبه | rude to | وقح مع |

Just reading them may help!

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| account | يمثل/يشرح/يعلل | account<br>accountant<br>accountancy | حساب/رصيد<br>محاسب<br>علم المحاسبة | accountable | مسئول/ممكن تفسيره |
| allow | يسمح | allowance | إجازة/أجر /مصروف | ---------------- | |
| care | يعتنى | care<br>carer | رعاية/عناية<br>راعٍ (مقدم الرعاية) | careful<br>caring | حذر/حريص<br>مهتم |
| embarrass* | يحرج/يربك | embarrassment | إحراج | embarrassed<br>embarrassing | محرج/خجلان<br>مخجل/مربك |

- Dad never embarrasses me.
- He knows well that embarrassment will harm my feelings.
- My cheeks get red when I'm embarrassed.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| employ | يعين/يوظف | employee<br>employer<br>employment<br>unemployment | موظف<br>صاحب العمل<br>عمالة<br>بطالة | unemployed<br>employable | عاطل عن العمل<br>قادر على العمل |
| frighten | يخيف | fright | خوف/هلع | frightened<br>frightening<br>frightful | خائف/مذعور<br>مخيف/مرعب<br>كريه/بغيض |
| ---------------------- | | fury | غضب/سخط | furious | غاضب/ثائر |
| trick | يخدع/يحتال | trick<br>trickery<br>trickster | خدعة<br>مراوغة/تحايل<br>مخادع/محتال | tricky<br>trick | مخادع |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| careful | حريص | cautious/concerned | careless/incautious | غير حريص/مهمل |
| change | يغير | alter/adjust | preserve/remain | يحفظ/يظل |
| embarrassing | محرج | awkward/uncomfortable | elegant/convenient | غير محرج/مناسب |
| employ | يوظف | hire/enlist/retrain | fire/discharge | يفصل من العمل |
| funny | مضحك | comical/humorous | serious/unfunny | جاد/غير مضحك |
| furious | غاضب جدًا | very angry/raging/boiling | calm/quiet | هادئ |
| horrible | فظيع | unpleasant/awful | attractive/pleasant | جذاب |
| lock | يغلق | close/shut | open/unlock | يفتح |
| personal | شخصى | private/individual | public/common | عام/شائع |
| scary | مخيف | frightening/terrifying | normal/calming | طبيعى/مهدئ |
| socialise | يختلط (اجتماعيًا) | mix/mingle | dissociate/separate | ينفصل اجتماعيًا |
| ugly | قبيح | unattractive/bad-looking | beautiful/pretty | جميل |

You can make your own notes and mind maps to remember them.

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The internet and social networking sites help us to .................... many friendships.
a) take b) click c) build d) attach

2 Robbers are those who steal .................... other people.
a) of b) with c) by d) from

3 There are a lot of .................... advertisements on the internet.
a) a trick b) trickster c) tricky d) trickery

4 I can't answer such an embarrassing question. The opposite of "embarrassing" is "....................".
a) uncomfortable b) awkward c) inconvenient d) convenient

5 Children should socialise with others to gain experience. The synonym of "socialise" is "....................".
a) separate b) dissociate c) mix d) shut

6 To open any file, just .................... on the menu icon.
a) pick b) trick c) click d) clip

7 I like to spend time talking and .................... with people to build new friendships.
a) social b) sociable c) socialisation d) socialising

8 Please, walk quietly so that you don't .................... the birds away.
a) frightening b) frightened c) fright d) frighten

9 It was so .................... driving through the desert at night.
a) scar b) scared c) scare d) scary

10 Several people .................... on my last post. I was very happy with what they said.
a) commented b) excited c) completed d) clicked

## Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

**allow + مفعول + to + inf.** يسمح لـ.... — I allowed him to play here.

**allow + v-ing/noun** يسمح بـ — I allowed playing here.

| Word | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| scam | غش – عملية احتيال | The email was only a scam to take my money. |
| 2 skim | يقـرا أو يتصفـح سريعـًـا لمعرفـة الفكـرة الرئيسية فقط دون تفاصيل | I usually skim the newspapers in the morning. |
| scan | يفحص أو يتصفح بدقة للبحث عن شيء محدد | We scanned the list until we found our friend's name. |
| download ... from | يحمل أو ينزل من الإنترنت | If I like anything on the internet, I download it onto my computer. |
| 3 upload ... to | يرفع على الإنترنت | When I finished my research, I uploaded it to the internet. |
| unload | يقوم بتفريغ الحمولة (سيارة مثلًا) | He parked his vehicle and began to unload it. |
| upgrade | يرقى – يصعد (من أقل لأعلى) | You must upgrade your computer version as it is very old. |
| 4 update | يحدث | You must update your computer programs more often. |
| free | حر/مجانى | Choose anyone. You are free. |
| 5 free of/from | خالٍ من/لا يعانى من (مرض) | - Dad is free of/from any disease.<br>- This drink is free of/from alcohol. |
| freely | بحرية | Say your opinion freely. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 You must be careful when you .................... files from the internet.
a) download b) upload c) overload d) upgrade

2 From time to time, we must .................... the programs and applications on our phones.
a) upload b) download c) update d) up-to-date

3 Parents mustn't allow .................... for any reasons.
a) to smoke b) smoking c) smokes d) smoke

4 To find the piece of information I wanted, I .................... the whole site.
a) skimmed b) scammed c) phished d) scanned

## Practice



Practise more

## Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 .................... on "next" when you have finished filling out the form.
a) Download b) Load c) Select d) Click

2 You must .................... the car when you leave it. It is not safe here.
a) look b) lock c) unlock d) locker

3 There is a strong .................... between lung diseases and smoking.
a) link b) connect c) communication d) website

4 When people began speaking rudely with each other, the situation became ......... .
a) relaxing b) excited c) confusing d) ugly

5 Don't .................... programs from untrusted websites to your computer. *(Longman)*
a) download b) upload c) load d) load

6 You should give ............. of your education and experience on the application form.
a) components b) documents c) accounts d) details

7 Children like to download new games and movies .................... the internet.
a) to b) of c) from d) by

8 The email said it was from a bank, but we all knew it was really a .................... .
a) software b) lock c) scam d) hack

9 When I met one of my students after a long time, it was hard to .................... him.
a) recognise b) show c) realise d) understand

10 Frightening or worrying people by sending them messages on the internet is called .................... .
a) security b) anti-virus c) cyberbullying d) shoplifting

11 Someone has tried to trick me into giving confidential سرية information over the internet. This is called .................... . *(Longman)*
a) bullying b) virus c) phishing d) scamming

12 The .................... we have on our computer and mobiles are very important. We mustn't lose them.
a) people b) letters c) data d) hackers

13 I have uploaded all my personal .................... on this website. I am so frustrated now.
a) software b) accounts c) details d) components

14 My brother is an .................... in a great company in Alexandria.
a) account b) accountancy c) accountable d) accountant

15 When you want to remove unwanted programs from your computer, you can install an .................... .
a) antivirus b) antibiotic c) anticipation d) anticlimax

16 It was ....................; they just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money. *(Longman)*
a) malware b) bullying c) cyberbullying d) a scam

17 I have to .................... this old version of Windows to enjoy having more programs.
a) upload b) download c) upgrade d) overload

18 I usually just .................... the newspaper in the morning. I read headlines.
a) skim b) scam c) scan d) count

19 Did you know that .................... is a computer program or something that is harmful to the computer system? *(Longman)*
a) hardware b) phishing c) malware d) scam

20 You must .................... a note of everything you hear from your teachers.
a) make b) do c) safe d) scan

21 Our .................... change began in the 1980s.
a) sociable b) social c) society d) socialism

22 I think that my daughter is a very .................... character. She likes meeting and discussing people.
a) sociable b) social c) society d) socialism

23 The magician performed a .................... in which he made a rabbit disappear.
a) tricky b) trickster c) trick d) truck

24 Spending too much time .................... the internet is harmful to your mental and physical health.
a) on b) in c) at d) with

25 I never allow .................... while students are taking exams.
a) cheating b) to cheat c) cheated d) anyone cheat

26 I applied for a job and they asked me to .................... an application form.
a) fill out b) full c) fill in d) complete in

27 Do you remember any funny stories about work? The word "funny" is the antonym of "....................".
a) careless b) serious c) humorous d) attractive

28 Try to be more careful with your exams. The synonym of the word "careful" is "....................".
a) careless b) cautious c) raging d) pleasant

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

29 Menna .................... her father in his appearance and lifestyle.
a) looks like b) likes c) is like d) similar e) alike

30 My teacher sometimes allows .................... between sessions.
a) eating b) to eat c) to eating d) us to eat e) ate

31 The secretary at the company asked us to .................... the application form and wait for the interview.
a) fill out b) complete c) full d) fill in e) complete in

32 Our grandfather used to tell us some funny stories about people in the past. The antonyms of "funny" are "...................." and "....................".
a) careless b) serious c) humorous d) attractive e) unfunny

33 Drivers must be careful when driving especially in city centres. The synonyms of "careful" are "...................." and "....................".
a) careless b) cautious c) raging d) concerned e) incautious




# Future forms

## 1 Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

**(am, is, are) + v + ing**

استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل.

**USAGE الاستخدام**

1. **To talk about actions that you have arranged to do.** أحداث تم الترتيب لها مسبقًا.
   I am meeting my friends in the club tomorrow evening.



(المناسبات الاجتماعية أو الأنشطة التى تقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلًا تحتاج إلى ترتيبات ... لذا تستخدم مع زمن المضارع المستمر).

2. **We can use "present continuous" with the following:**
   **(arrange – make arrangements – prepare)**
   Amira is visiting her aunt; she has arranged everything.

- عدم القدرة على فعل شىء فى المستقبل، تعنى وجود ترتيبات لفعل شىء آخر.

I can't attend your wedding tomorrow. I'm travelling with my father to France.

## 2 Present Simple المضارع البسيط

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة المواعيد الثابتة (القطارات/الطائرات/الأتوبيسات/السينما/البرامج التلفزيونية/الحصص المدرسية).

The train to Tanta leaves at 6:30 tomorrow morning.
The English lesson starts at 2:30.

## 3 Future Continuous (will be + v.ing) المستقبل المستمر

حدث سوف يكون مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

Ali will be playing a match with his friends this time tomorrow.
At 5 tomorrow, I will be sleeping.

مع الترتيبات فى المستقبل.

I can't meet you at 7 p.m. tomorrow because I will be watching the match.



## Future Perfect (will have + P.P.) المستقبل التام

حدث سوف يكتمل حدوثه قبل وقت معين فى المستقبل أو فى خلال فترة معينة.

In two hours, we will have finished our work.

By 2025, I will have graduated from Tanta University.



### Important Notes



لاحظ: استخدام be about to + inf. لحدث فى المستقبل القريب.

The audience are in their seats, and the performance is about to start.

Hurry up. The coach is about to leave.



أيضًا من الممكن استخدام be + to + inf. للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الترتيبات الرسمية.

The Prime Minister is to watch the final match in the stadium.

## Language Summary

I **will** turn on the fan because it's hot.






I **will have done** my homework by 9 tomorrow morning.



I **am going to** join the football team next week.

# Future forms

I **will be doing** my homework at 7.30 tomorrow.

I **am meeting** the school manager next week.










The bus **leaves** at 6 tomorrow.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I .................... my next summer holiday in Marina. I have arranged everything.
a) have spent b) spend c) am spending d) will spend

2 According to the timetable, our exams .................... in May.
a) start b) starts c) will start d) are starting

3 Tomorrow, I .................... my friends for dinner. We have already reserved the tables at the restaurant.
a) am meeting b) will meet c) meet d) meeting

4 He .................... to America tomorrow. He's got the tickets.
a) will fly b) is flying c) flies d) is going to fly

5 We made all the arrangements; we .................... a wedding party. *(Longman)*
a) are going to give b) give
c) will give d) are giving

6 Marwan .................... married next week. Everything is arranged.
a) will get b) is going to get c) is getting d) gets

7 I .................... John tomorrow morning. He has accepted my invitation and booked a flight.
a) meet b) am meeting c) will meet d) am going to meet

8 Look at the schedule! The first train to Aswan .................... at 5:00 a.m.
a) leaves b) is leaving c) is going to leave d) will leave

9 This museum .................... at 9:00 a.m. tomorrow.
a) will open b) opens
c) open d) is going to open

10 **A:** .................... to Canada tomorrow? **B:** Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa. *(Longman)*
a) Do you travel b) Are you travelling
c) You will travel d) Are you going to travel

11 We ............... a party for my daughter's success tomorrow. Would you like to come?
a) are having b) going to have c) would have d) has

12 **A:** Are you leaving this evening? **B:** Yes, my train .................... at 7:15.
a) is going to leave b) leaves
c) will leave d) will be leaving

13 Dina can't see her friends this afternoon. She .................... her mother in the kitchen.
a) is helping b) helps c) helped d) was helping

14 I can't meet you tonight because I .................... my brother at the airport. *(Longman)*
a) had met b) am meeting c) will meet d) going to meet

15 I .................... my uncle at the airport at six o'clock. Everything is arranged.
a) going to meet b) am meeting c) will meet d) meet

16 This bus .................... exactly at 10:30 in the morning.
a) leave b) leaving c) is leaving d) leaves

17 Salwa .................... to London next week. Her flight leaves at 7 in the evening.
a) going to fly b) is flying c) will have flown d) would fly

18 I .................... to London next Friday. I've packed my luggage.
a) will travel b) am going to travel c) am travelling d) travel

19 When he arrives, I .................... dinner with him. I have just decided.
a) am having b) would have c) have d) will have

20 I hope .................... all my dreams in life.
a) will achieve b) would achieve c) to achieving d) to achieve

21 I .................... my father what you said. I promise.
a) won't tell b) am not going to tell c) am not telling d) don't tell

22 Somebody is knocking on the door. I .................... and open it.
a) am going b) would go c) will go d) have gone

23 Stop piling up يكدس your lessons. You .................... fail.
a) will b) would c) are going to d) will be

24 Hany .................... to France tomorrow. His flight is after an hour.
a) is going to travel b) is travelling
c) will travel d) travels

25 Are you .................... tennis after school today?
a) going to play b) played
c) play d) probably playing

26 I .................... that mountain one day.
a) am climbing b) am going to climb c) will be climbed d) will climb

27 Look, the sky is really dark, I .................... indoors.
a) will be staying b) will be stayed c) stay d) will stay

28 It is predicted that ordinary people ............ on space holidays in the next fifty years.
a) are going b) are going to go c) will go d) will be going

29 Everything is prepared for my sister's wedding next week. This means that ............. .
a) my sister will marry next week b) my sister is going to marry next week
c) my sister is getting married next week d) my sister marries next week

30 Jana is about to sleep soon. This means that .................... .
a) she will sleep soon b) she is going to sleep soon
c) she is sleeping soon d) she sleeps soon

31 I'm going to attend the conference tomorrow. This sentence is a/an .................... .
a) future fact b) intention c) threat d) promise

32 Ramy will join the Faculty of Medicine. This sentence is a/an .................... .
a) intention b) plan c) prediction d) fact

33 The train to Alexandria leaves at 10 o'clock. This is according to a/an .................... .
a) intention b) quick decision c) prediction d) timetable

# Test yourself




Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## Vocabulary

1 It was so .................... . Few people attended the wedding party.
a) embarrassed b) wonderful c) amusing d) embarrassing

2 .................... means putting photographs online.
a) Posting photos b) Downloading malware
c) Scamming d) Cyberbullying

3 She had had a dream in which .................... monsters were chasing her.
a) scary b) scared c) frightened d) pleasant

4 It is known that fame الشهرة always .................... people, but not my father!
a) exchanges b) changes c) charges d) challenges

5 Yesterday, I got up late, missed my train, lost my mobile and injured my leg. It was a/an .................... day.
a) incredible b) horrified c) terrified d) horrible

6 .................... and hacking technologies have made it possible to steal users' accounts and misuse their private information.
a) Fishing b) Skimming c) Scanning d) Phishing

7 I saw some adverts .................... different jobs in Cairo and Alexandria.
a) with b) for c) on d) from

8 All drivers should really know how to .................... a flat tyre.
a) buy b) change c) take d) have

9 We all .................... our colleague Adel to overcome his serious disease.
a) support b) allow c) give d) let

10 Computer .................... has become a real threat over the last decade. It leads to a lot of problems.
a) downloading b) uploading c) hacking d) account

11 You need to update your .................... software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.
a) malware b) antivirus c) antibiotic d) antibodies

12 The largest company in our town has 600 .................... .
a) employers b) employments c) employees d) employable

13 The special word you need before you can sign in a Facebook account is called a .................... .
a) key b) secret c) passport d) password

14 I never .................... my students to waste their time. I always instruct them.
a) let b) make c) allow d) prevent

15 Readers can .................... the author's latest novel to read on a computer or tablet.
a) upload b) unload c) offload d) download

## Language

16 We .................... in the forest next Friday as arranged.
a) will camp b) are going to camp c) are camping d) would camp

17 According to the timetable, the exam .................... at 12 p.m.
a) finish b) finishes
c) will finish d) is going to finish

18 I can't attend your birthday party tonight because I ................ my uncle at hospital.
a) will visit b) going to visit c) am visiting d) to visit

19 Amal .................... her birthday party next week. She has made a lot of preparations.
a) gives b) will give c) is giving d) is going to give

20 Tarek! What time .................... your friend tomorrow?
a) are you meeting b) you will meet
c) you are meeting d) do you meet

21 He will introduce us to his friends as soon as we .................... .
a) arrived b) will arrive c) arriving d) have arrived

22 Al-Ismaily is a very good team. It .................... the match.
a) would win b) is going to win c) will win d) are winning

23 I can't watch the film in the cinema with you as it .................... at 6:30 and I have work at this time.
a) will be started b) starts c) is going to start d) is starting

24 There is no doubt that we .................... out of petrol one day.
a) will run b) are going to run c) are running d) would run

25 Mum .................... to the dentist on Monday morning.
a) will go b) going to go c) goes d) is going

26 I need to get in shape. I .................... on a diet.
a) will go b) am going to go c) am going d) have gone

27 Look at the chicken on the edge of the roof. I think it .................... fall down.
a) would b) going to c) is going d) is about to

28 Take your umbrella with you .................... you will get wet.
a) and b) so c) or d) but

29 Amr .................... in Boston University. That is his aim.
a) is studying b) may study
c) will study d) is going to study

30 The series .................... at seven o'clock sharp.
a) starts b) will start c) is going to start d) is starting

Study

Watch a video

Part (3)

# Lessons 5 & 6

## Chapter 5

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| allow | يسمح | fresh | منعش |
| believe | يصدق | group | مجموعة |
| bottom | الأسفل | interested | مهتم |
| crazy | مجنون | kneel | يركع |
| dangerous | خطير | leader | زعيم/قائد |
| dead | ميت | sail | شراع |
| different | مختلف | spade | جاروف |
| dry voice | صوت جاف | | |

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| allow me to | يسمح لى أن | from up the hill | من أعلى التل |
| at the end | فى نهاية المطاف | in front of me | أمامى |
| burned by the sun | احترقت من الشمس | knelt down | ركع |
| come out from behind | يخرج من الخلف | left here by a ship | غادر من هنا على سفينة |
| dream of | يحلم بـ | on your own | بمفردك |
| flying above | تحلق فوق | to my surprise | لدهشتى |
| from the start | من البداية | work for | يعمل لدى |



# Novel Exercises Chapter (5)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 A .................. has a long wooden handle and a flat piece of metal and is used for digging.
a) sword b) spade c) spam d) knife

2 It'd be crazy to go out in this heavy rain. Crazy is similar in meaning to .................. . *(Longman)*
a) not sensible b) not polite c) common d) quiet

3 My father always advises me not to get into a .................. at school.
a) right b) flight c) figure d) fight

4 I'm beginning to ............ that teaching profession isn't as easy as I thought it was.
a) decide b) hear c) realise d) kneel

5 The child I met was so short that I .................. down to talk to him.
a) knelt b) reeled c) kicked d) spent

6 We have chosen Ali to be the .................. of our group as he is the best one.
a) waiter b) leader c) pirate d) employer

7 I asked the traffic warden رجل المرور to give me .................. to the post office.
a) infections b) destinations c) directions d) taxis

8 Communications companies shouldn't .................. anyone to obtain يتحصل على personal information about their customers.
a) let b) make c) allow d) prevent

9 I'd like you to write a few notes while the lecture is still .................. in your mind.
a) burned b) fresh c) different d) dead

10 I couldn't swim in the sea as the waves were too high and it was .................. .
a) safe b) attractive c) interesting d) dangerous

11 A sailor is someone who works .................. the navy.
a) for b) as c) against d) out

12 I spoke in a very low .................. with my mother as my father was asleep.
a) cry b) shout c) noise d) voice

13 It was a pity that nearly all the passengers were .................. when the ambulance arrived.
a) alive b) survived c) dead d) death

14 When the minister arrived at our school, some students were carrying .................. and waving with them.
a) flats b) flags c) clothes d) signals

15 A .................. is a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship. *(Longman)*
a) sale b) seal c) sail d) cell



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



## A reflective essay

- **It is an essay in which the writer examines his/her experiences in life.**

- مقال التدبر يكتب فيه الكاتب عن خبراته وتجاربه فى الحياة وكيفية الاستفادة من هذه التجارب. ويتكون من:

**1. Introduction المقدمة:**

It should be more direct to explain what experience that he/she will talk about.

**2. The body الموضوع:**

It explains how the writer has changed or what he/she has learned.
What things caused him/her to change.

**3. Conclusion الخاتمة:**

The writer sums up why the change is beneficial and how it will affect him/her in the future.

## A blog

It is a personal website in which a person can write about his/her personal life and make comments.

**The problems children might have with the internet.**

Children, who are among the most active internet users, are unfortunately prone to a number of threats and problems. If you allow your children to spend much time surfing the web, it's important to know what threats they face to be able to deal with. The most common problems that face children are loneliness, depression and anxiety. Parents should be aware of what their kids see and hear on the internet. Also, who they meet and what they share about themselves.

You must talk with your children, using tools to protect them and keep an eye on their activities. They must never post or reveal personal information such as addresses or phone numbers.

Practice | Practise more | Skills Exercises

## 1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives him without wasting his time in useless things. Childhood is a time when a child relies[1] on parents who offer him everything he needs, such as food, clothes and money. During this period, there are a few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain or on beach sand. But, a child has pains since he is not free to do what he wishes and he is always told what to do or to be punished for what he has done wrong.

When a child becomes a young man, he or she starts to earn his or her own living[2], and becomes free from the discipline[3] and the control of school and parents, and accepts responsibilities. However, if they work hard, they can have the great happiness of seeing themselves make sustainable[4] progress in their professions to build up for themselves their own position in society.

Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with the old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children doing great things in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time, <u>they</u> may suffer from loneliness and illness.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 There are .................. periods of life mentioned in the passage.
   a) two  b) three
   c) four  d) five

2 The underlined word "<u>they</u>" refers to .................. .
   a) children  b) young people
   c) grandchildren  d) old people

3 A child is not free to do what he wishes. The synonym of "wishes" is "..................".
   a) desires  b) dislikes
   c) hates  d) refuses

4 Young people are usually .................. according to the passage.
   a) lazy  b) wise
   c) hardworking  d) inactive

(1) يعتمد
(2) المعيشة
(3) انضباط
(4) مستدام

5 The happiest persons are those who .................. .

a) spend much time in bed
b) waste time
c) enjoy good and bad things
d) play all the time

6 There are .................. responsibilities in the first period of our life.

a) many
b) a lot of
c) little
d) not many

7 A suitable title for this passage is "..................".

a) Childhood and its trouble
b) Old age and loneliness
c) Periods of life
d) Youth and hardworking

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Scientists make achievements and advances which help us to cope with the changes in our world.

a) يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تعوقنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
b) العلم يقوم بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
c) يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
d) قام العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.

2 In peace time, money can be used for building new factories, improving health care and solving the problems of housing and transport.

a) فى وقت السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.
b) فى السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لهدم مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.
c) فى وقت السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء عوامل جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل التلوث والمواصلات.
d) فى وقت السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية المهنية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل.

3 Modern technology plays an important role in the progress of industry, agriculture, education, medicine and surgery.

a) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
b) لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
c) التكنولوجيا الحديثة تلعب دورًا مهمًا فى تأخر الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
d) تلعب التكنولوجيا الأخيرة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.

4 The great development in industry has led to an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide and this has led to climate change and global warming.

a) أدى التطور العظيم فى الصناعة إلى قلة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.
b) أدى التأخر الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة مبلغ ثانى أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.
c) أدى التطور الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة مبلغ الأكسجين مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.
d) أدى التطور الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.

5 Our historical monuments are priceless treasures, so we should do our best to protect them.

a) إن آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

b) إن لحظاتنا التاريخية كنوز تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

c) إن لحظاتنا القديمة كنوز ليس لها ثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

d) إن آثارنا التاريخية كنوز ليس لها ثمن، لذا لا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

## (B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يجب على كل فرد تعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لأن الحياة أصبحت معتمدة عليهما بشكل أساسي.

a) Everyone should teach computer and internet skulls because life has become dependent on them mainly.

b) Should everyone learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.

c) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become independent on them mainly.

d) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.

7 لقد أصبح التلفزيون وسيلة لنشر المعرفة ويستمتع بمشاهدته الكبار والصغار على حد سواء.

a) Television has become a means of spreading knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children alike.

b) Television has become a way of publishing knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children on the same level.

c) Broadcasting has become a means of publishing knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children alike.

d) TV has become a means of spreading knowledge, and the elderly and children enjoy it like.

8 تعتبر حياة الريف أكثر جمالاً من حياة المدينة لما يتمتع به الريف من مناظر طبيعية خلابة وهواء نقي.

a) Rural life is more beautiful than city life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and pure air.

b) City life is more beautiful than rural life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and pure air.

c) Rural life is more beautiful than city life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and dirty air.

d) Rural life is most beautiful than city life because of the city's fantastic landscapes and clean air.

9 الإنسان بطبيعته محب للطبيعة والجمال، فهو يبحث عن الجمال فى كل شىء حتى بين الأشياء الغريبة.

a) People are by nature lovers of nature and beauty, they seek for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
b) Man is by natural a lover of nature and beauty, they run for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
c) Man is by nature a lover of nature and beauty, he searches for beauty in everything, even among ordinary things.
d) Man is by nature a lover of nature and beauty, they search for beauty in everything, even among strange things.

10 المواطنة تعنى أن يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق وما عليهم من واجبات.

a) Citizen means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and homework.
b) Citizenship means that the people of the some country are equal in terms of their laws and duties.
c) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and duties.
d) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their writes and duties.

## 3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Your expectations concerning future communications.

..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.




## Al-Adwaa Test

40

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 Eating a lot of sweets is a major cause of tooth decay. The antonyms of the word "major" are .................. and .................. .
a) minor b) leading c) warming d) secondary e) adequate

2 Children should be prevented from using the internet .................. .
a) everyday b) every-day c) every day d) dairy e) daily

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 The email looked like it came from my bank, but it was an example of .................. .
a) antivirus b) phishing c) locking d) uploading

4 The email says I have won a prize, but I don't believe it. I think it's a .................. .
a) scam b) click c) link d) change

5 Upload your .................. details. Include your name, address and phone number in the space provided.
a) personnel b) personal c) personality d) personally

6 My schedule is quite .......... . I could arrange to meet with you any day next week.
a) stuck b) sticky c) flexible d) rubbery

7 The new modern .................. are enabling more people to work from home.
a) internet b) hacks c) contacts d) communications

8 The police are searching for them as they entered the country .................. .
a) legality b) illegally c) lawfully d) easily

9 Don't come late please, the train .................. at 5 p.m.
a) leaves b) is leaving c) will leave d) is going to leave

10 I've booked five seats for the new play. My family and I .................. it in the theatre.
a) are watching b) will watch c) shall watch d) watch

11 The boys are collecting some dry branches. They .................. a fire.
a) make b) are making
c) are going to make d) will make

12 Watch out or you .................. into the hole.
a) will fall b) are falling c) fall d) are going to fall

13 Hassan has decided that he .................. Omra in Mecca next month.
a) will perform b) is performing
c) is going to perform d) will be performing

14 I don't think I .................. able to finish this research on time.
a) am going to be b) would be
c) am being d) will be

15 I am having dinner with my colleagues tomorrow. We .................. at my house at noon.
a) will be met b) will have met c) are meeting d) meet

16 My daughter .................. a doctor in 57357 Hospital when she finishes university. That's her intention.
a) is being b) is going to be c) will be d) will have been

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

There are some who question whether globalisation is really something new. Companies in Europe and North America, supported by their governments, were opening up the rest of the world, searching for cheap raw materials. They transported these back to their own factories and produced manufactured goods, then sold them at a huge profit. The world became linked by trade and business.

This view is correct, but what it underestimates is the scale and speed of the changes that have taken place in the last thirty years or so. And the key role in these changes is that of computer technology, because it underlies all of them. Thanks to developments in digital technology, for example, it is now possible to move vast amounts of money around the world in seconds. Currency trading now goes on almost 24 hours a day, and it has been estimated that the amount of money traded has gone up by several thousand per cent in the last forty years. Decisions taken in a stock market in one country can have a disastrous effect on countries on the other side of the world, and entire national economies can be destroyed almost overnight.

It affects us all, and it relates not just to areas like trade, business and economics, but also to culture, entertainment, what we eat, how we communicate with each other and even how we see ourselves, our relationships and our lives.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 Recent changes are different from what has happened before because of ............... .
a) computer technology b) transport
c) business d) culture

18 The world at first became linked by .................. .
a) technology b) the internet
c) trade and business d) currency

19 Economies of different countries can be affected by the decisions of .................. .
a) trading b) goods
c) computer technology d) stock market

20 Globalisation affects everything even the way we .................. with each other.
a) connect b) communicate c) entertain d) estimate

21 It is now possible to move vast amount of money around the world in seconds with the help of ................ .

a) digital technology
b) stock market
c) hard currency
d) means of transport

22 Which sentence is the best summary of what the text says about globalisation?

a) How transport has developed.
b) The effect of stock market on economy.
c) The advantages of globalisation.
d) Computer technology and communication.

23 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ................ .

a) communication
b) globalisation
c) culture
d) economy

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- تعتبر القراءة من الوسائل الرئيسية والأساسية لنهضة مختلف الشعوب والحضارات.

a) Reading is one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of difficult peoples and civilisations.
b) Consider reading is one of the mean and essential mains for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.
c) Reading is one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of difference peoples and nurseries.
d) Reading is considered one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Poverty and unemployment are time bombs. Unless we exert efforts to uproot them, we will suffer a lot.

a) الفقر والتوظيف قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهما، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.
b) الفقر والبطالة قنابل شديدة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهما، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.
c) الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهما، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.
d) الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لزرعهما، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

What the world would be like without means of communication.

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................



# Learning from literature

## Unit 6

## Objectives




**Reading** : A biography on Stevenson; A poem, *The Gardener*

**Writing** : A short review of a poem; A book review

**Listening** : A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson

**Speaking** : Polite requests

**Language** : Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

**Life Skills** : Communication; Critical thinking

Study | Watch a video | Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| currant row (n) | صف من العنب/الزبيب | novel (n) | رواية |
| dig (v) | يحفر | plot (n) | قطعة أرض زراعية |
| gravel (n) | حصى | poem (n) | قصيدة |
| literature (n) | الأدب | poet (n) | شاعر |
| hay (n)* | قش/تبن | poetry (n) | شعر |

Fortunately, my cat fell on a pile of hay.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



### Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| adventure (n) | مغامرة | kidnapped (adj) | مختطَف |
| biography (n) | السيرة الذاتية | lawyer (n) | محامٍ |
| case (n) | حالة/قضية | line (n) | سطر/خط |
| choice (n) | اختيار | lock (v) – ed | يغلق/يحبس |
| consider (v) – ed | يعتبر/يضع فى الاعتبار | piracy (n) | القرصنة |
| discuss (v) – ed | يناقش | pirate (n) | قرصان |
| discussion (n) | مناقشة | popular (adj) | محبوب |
| form (n) | شكل | publish (v) – ed | ينشر |
| full-time (adj) (adv) | دوام كامل | rhyme (n) (v) – d | قافية الشعر/يتناغم |
| gardener (n) | جناينى | rhythm (n) | الإيقاع |
| helpful (adj) | مفيد/متعاون | romantic (adj) | رومانسى |
| improve (v) – d | يحسن | sailing (n) | إبحار |
| issue (n) | قضية | Scottish (n) (adj) | إسكتلندى الجنسية |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| serious (adj) | جاد/خطير | unwell (adj) | مريض/معتل الصحة |
| suppose (v) – d | يفترض | warm (adj) | دافئ |
| tools (n) | أدوات بسيطة | wish (v) – ed | يتمنى |
| treasure (n) | كنز | | |

## Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| call (v) – ed | يسمى/يدعى | favour (n) | معروف/جميل |
| compare (v) – d | يقارن | manager (n) | مدير |
| joy (n) | فرح | sentence (n) | جملة |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I think the real .................... for man is health, not money.
   a) pressure b) adventure c) treasure d) measure
2. The farmer has brought some .................... for his animals to eat.
   a) water b) hay c) gravel d) mud
3. On the beach, the children are always busy .................... in the sand.
   a) picking b) dragging c) sailing d) digging
4. You have to consult a .................... in this case. I'm not an expert on laws.
   a) lawyer b) doctor c) poet d) gardener
5. He isn't .................... as he never shows any aspects مظاهر of love for his family.
   a) romantic b) favourite c) popular d) kidnapped
6. The child was .................... by a gang who asked his family for a big ransom.
   a) hijacked b) stolen c) rhymed d) kidnapped
7. I like reading about the history and .................... of El-Sadat.
   a) discussion b) autograph c) biography d) geography
8. Pollution is one of the most .................... problems that face the whole world.
   a) illegal b) serious c) lawful d) warm
9. This player is .................... . I saw him play for the national team versus Poland.
   a) Scottish b) Scotland c) Polish d) Poland
10. Ali is a daydreamer. He always .................... actions and imagines scenarios.
    a) thinks b) paints c) supposes d) appears

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (be) best known for | معروف جيدًا كـ | for a while | لفترة من الوقت |
| (be) born | يولد | form of | شكل من |
| a piece of writing | قطعة مكتوبة | from different times | من أوقات مختلفة |
| a variety of forms | مجموعة متنوعة من الأشكال | get away from | يبتعد عن |
| arranged in | مرتب/منظم فى | go for me | يذهب من أجلى |
| bring ... to ... | يُحضر ... إلى ... | hear about | يسمع عن |
| compare to | يشبه بـ | keep the gravel walk | يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات |
| compare with | يقارن بـ | kind of | نوع من |
| different to/from | مختلف عن | learn about | يعلم ... عن |
| do a favour | يسدي معروفًا | make a film | ينتج فيلمًا |
| do a job | يقوم بعمل/بوظيفة | popular with | محبوب لـ |
| do something for | يفعل شيئًا من أجل | put ... away | يرتب |
| each other | بعضهم البعض | sail from ... to ... | يبحر من ... إلى ... |
| follow rules | يتبع القواعد | were made into films | حولت إلى أفلام |

## Derivatives

| Verb | | Noun | | Adjective | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| venture* | يغامر | adventure<br>adventurer | مغامرة<br>مغامر | adventurous | جرىء/متهور |
| ------------------- | | biography<br>biographer | سيرة حياة شخص<br>كاتب سيرة | biographical | متعلق بسيرة شخص |
| joy | يمرح | joy | مرح/فرح | joyful | فرحان/مسرور/مفرح |
| kidnap | يخطف | kidnapping<br>kidnapper | اختطاف/خطف<br>خاطف | kidnapped | مختطف |

- I like adventures.
- I used to be an adventurer when I was young.
- My actions seemed to be adventurous.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ---------------- | | law<br>lawyer | قانون<br>محامٍ | lawful | قانونى/مشروع |
| ---------------- | | literature | الأدب | literate<br>literary | متعلم<br>أدبى |
| popularise | ينشر/يروج/ينتشر | popularity | انتشار/شعبية | popular | شائع/شعبى/متداول |
| ---------------- | | poetry<br>poet | الشعر<br>شاعر | poetic | شعرى (متعلق بالشعر) |
| ---------------- | | seriousness | خطورة | serious | خطير/عنيف |
| suppose | يفترض/يظن | supposition | افتراض/ظن | supposed | مفروض/افتراضى/مزعوم |
| treasure | يعز/يبجل | treasure<br>treasurer<br>treasury | كنز<br>أمين صندوق<br>وزارة المالية | ---------------- | |
| warm | يدفئ/يسخن | warmer<br>warmth<br>warming | سخان/أداة تدفئة<br>دفء/حميمية<br>تسخين/إحماء | warm | دافئ/ودى/حميم |

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| far | بعيد | remote/distant | near/close | قريب |
| improve | يحسن/يطور | enhance/develop | decline/damage | يتدهور |
| joy | فرح | charm/delight | sadness/sorrow | حزن |
| popular | محبوب | favoured/beloved | unpopular/disliked | غير محبوب |
| serious | خطير | dangerous/severe/tough | safe/facile/calm | آمن |
| strange | غريب | unfamiliar/deviating | familiar/common/ conventional | مألوف/شائع/تقليدى |
| successful | ناجح | fruitful/favourable/ profitable | unsuccessful/losing/hopeless | غير ناجح |
| warm | دافئ | heated/hot | cold/freezing | بارد |
| wish | يأمل | desire/aspire | spurn/reject | يأبى/ينبذ |

The synonyms of the word "warm" are ... and ... .

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Can you .................... me a favour and pick my children up from school?
a) take b) give c) do d) make

2 His birthday was a .................... occasion on which we were all very happy.
a) joy b) joyfully c) joyfulness d) joyful

3 My friends compare me .................... Mohammad Salah as we both have curly hair.
a) at b) for c) to d) by

4 What attracts me in these verses is the amazing .................... expressions.
a) poetically b) poet c) poem d) poetic

5 I am a .................... person. Everyone asks me for help once they see me.
a) helping b) help c) helpful d) helpless

6 You must .................... the rules of the place if you want to stay here for long.
a) seek b) run c) create d) follow

7 Watching .................... films is one of my hobbies.
a) adventurer b) adventurous
c) adventuring d) adventure

8 Mohammed Salah's .................... all over the world is a pride for all Egyptians.
a) popularity b) popular
c) popularise d) population

9 Pollution is one of the most serious problems all over the world. The synonym of the word "serious" is "....................".
a) safe b) simple c) dangerous d) cold

10 The writer's new novel is very successful and has won many prizes. The antonym of "successful" is "....................".
a) losing b) profitable
c) popular d) favourable

## Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

| | Word | Example |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **publish** ينشر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة) – يمكن أن يبنى للمجهول | She was only 19 when her first novel was published. |
| | **come out** يَصْـدُر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة) – لا يمكن أن يبنى للمجهول | She was only 19 when her first novel came out. |
| 2 | **biography** سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها شخص آخر | Famous people have different biographies written about them. |
| | **autobiography** سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها الشخص نفسه | He published his autobiography last year. |
| 3 | **(be) born in + (مكان/سنة)** ولد في ... | - My sister was born in Alexandria.<br>- Ali was born in 2002. |
| | **(be) born on + (تاريخ/يوم)** ولد في ... | His mother was born on 21st August 1979. |
| | **(be) born into ...** ولد في عائلة | Nora was born into a good family. |
| | **(be) born with + (disease)** مولود (بمرض) | Madonna was born with a small hole in her heart. |
| 4 | **at the the age of = aged** في سن | At the age of 30, Ali got married for the second time. |
| | **in the age of** في عصر | They inherited this house which had been built in the age of their grandfather. |
| 5 | **success** نجاح | The company achieved a great success under the new leadership. |
| | **(be) a success** يمثل نجاحًا/ناجح | Taking part in the competition was a success. |
| | **successful** ناجح | You should work properly to be successful. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **kidnap** | يخطف شخصًا (طمعًا فى فدية) | Two businessmen were kidnapped by terrorists. |
| **hijack** | يختطف (عربة/طائرة) | The plane was hijacked by two armed men on a flight from London to Cairo. |
| **capture** | يأسر/يقبض على | - The town was captured by enemy troops after 10 days fighting.<br>- She was captured at the airport as she had illegal drugs. |
| **arrest** | يلقى القبض على | He was arrested for shoplifting سرقة المعروضات yesterday. |
| **imprison** | يسجن | They were imprisoned for possession of drugs. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Many famous footballers were born .................... poor families and now they give money to the poor.

a) of b) into
c) with d) in

2 The plane was .................... and all of the crew were killed.

a) arrested b) hijacked
c) kidnapped d) captured

3 A lot of novels and stories are .................... every year by many great writers.

a) published b) come out
c) spread d) punished

4 Taha Hussein wrote about his childhood suffering and struggling in his .................... .

a) biography b) autobiography
c) magazine d) notes

5 My father died .................... 66 years old.

a) in the age of b) at the edge of
c) aged d) when he is

# Practice




## Vocabulary General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Ahmed Shawky is considered one of the greatest .................... in Arabic literature.
a) poets b) poems c) poetic d) poetry

2 The path isn't paved. It is full of .................... .
a) barrel b) funnel c) saddle d) gravel

3 The lion ran away from the zoo, but the police could .................... it.
a) arrest b) kidnap c) capture d) hijack

4 A/An .................... is a piece of land that is surrounded by water.
a) ocean b) forest c) jungle d) island

5 Farmers use .................... as food for cattle. *(Longman)*
a) clay b) hay c) pie d) tea

6 .................... the age of modern technology, we can live an easier life.
a) At b) By c) In d) With

7 I always .................... any matter with my parents before making a decision.
a) regret b) remove c) discuss d) improve

8 I like to read English .................... with all its wonderful novels, plays and poems.
a) agriculture b) literature c) culture d) structure

9 Far in plots, I see him dig. The word "plots" can be replaced by "....................".
a) plans b) hay c) fields d) dreams

10 Does "hit" .................... with "sit"? *(Longman)*
a) read b) roll c) write d) rhyme

11 Mohammad Salah's success is really a .................... of hard work, not a chance.
a) cause b) case c) reason d) treasure

12 Our English teacher has always been very .................... with his students and colleagues.
a) popular b) populate c) liked d) fame

13 He usually wears suits. It is really .................... to see him in jeans.
a) familiar b) common c) foreign d) strange

14 Ali had to wait for .................... when he went to apply for the job.
a) a while b) while c) whole d) hall

15 .................... you won the prize and took the car, what would you do?
a) Discuss b) Think c) Suppose d) Suspect

16 She is not a good pianist as she has no sense of .................... .

a) rhyme  b) rhythm  c) verse  d) plot

17 The government is trying hard to solve the .................... of homeless children everywhere.

a) issue  b) tissue  c) form  d) itch

18 Hanan left home to travel, hoping for excitement and .................... .

a) adventure  b) furniture  c) creature  d) structure

19 We have a two-acre .................... of land which we use to grow vegetables. *(Longman)*

a) plate  b) plot  c) pet  d) pot

20 Don't walk on the plants in the garden. You must .................... .

a) make the gravels walk  b) keep the gravel walk

c) make the gravel walk  d) keep the gravels walk

21 Literature comes in a .................... of forms poetry, novels, etc.

a) various  b) different  c) many  d) variety

22 The poor child was born .................... a disability that prevents him from walking.

a) into  b) on  c) in  d) with

23 On the beach, the children used to .................... a small hole in the sand to bury their eggs. *(Longman)*

a) sit  b) cut  c) dig  d) beg

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

24 The writer's new book .................... last week.

a) published  b) came out  c) was published

d) was come out  e) spread

25 The story written by the great writer was .................... into a film.

a) turned  b) made  c) taken

d) placed  e) put

26 We can walk if it's not far. The synonyms of the word "far" are .............. and .............. .

a) remote  b) near  c) close

d) safe  e) distant

27 I could hear strange voices outside the room. The antonyms of the word "strange" are .................... and .................... .

a) familiar  b) conventional  c) unpopular

d) deviating  e) safe

28 The writer's last novel which was published last year was .................... .

a) a success  b) succeed  c) successful

d) succession  e) success

## B Language

### 1 Verbs followed by (-ing form)

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| admit (to) | يعترف بـ | involve | يشمل/يتضمن | recommend | يوصى بـ |
| avoid | يتجنب | resist | يقاوم | fancy | يتخيل (تستخدم للاقتراح) |
| suggest | يقترح | risk | يخاطر | delay | يؤجل |
| practise | يمارس | postpone | يؤجل | prevent | يمنع |
| consider | يعتبر | enjoy | يستمتع بـ | escape | يهرب |
| mind | يمانع | finish | ينهى | forgive | يسامح |
| imagine | يتخيل | deny | ينكر | miss | يفتقد |
| understand | يفهم | go | يذهب | dislike | يكره |

- The criminal admitted to committing the crime.
- He enjoys meeting people from other cultures.
- My brother suggested spending the weekend on the beach.

### 2 Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| decide | يقرر | wish | يتمنى | offer | يعرض |
| agree | يوافق | swear | يقسم | need | يحتاج |
| promise | يعد | determine | يصمم | prepare | يجهز/يعد |
| hope | يأمل | fail | يفشل | attempt | يحاول |
| plan | يخطط | expect | يتوقع | prove | يثبت |
| manage | يتمكن | threaten | يهدد | neglect | يهمل |
| refuse | يرفض | intend | ينوى | can't afford | لا يتحمل |
| seem | يبدو | arrange | يرتب | deserve | يستحق |

- I have decided to play a match with my friends.
- He asked me for some money, but I refused to give him any.
- Do you want to come with me to the party?
- Ali proved to be the cleverest in the class.

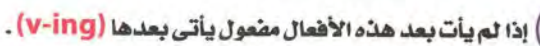
Make your own mind maps to memorise these verbs and expressions. You can draw circles on a sheet of paper and write each group in a different circle with different colours.

## 3 Verbs followed by (object + to + inf.)

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| advise | ينصح | permit | يسمح | tell | يخبر |
| recommend | يوصى بـ | instruct | يعلم/يخبر | order | يأمر |
| expect | يتوقع | ask | يطلب | warn | يحذر |
| encourage | يشجع | persuade | يقنع | teach | يعلم |
| force | يجبر | allow | يسمح | remind | يذكر |
| invite | يدعو | promise | يوعد | request | يطلب |

- He advised me to study and revise regularly.
- I managed to persuade my wife not to travel alone.
- Parents encourage their children to be good citizens.






**(advise – recommend – encourage – allow – permit + (v-ing))**

He doesn't allow smoking in his office.
I often encourage playing football on Fridays.
The company recommends using their buses instead of private ones.

## 4 Expressions followed by (-ing form)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| feel like | يرغب فى | It's no good | ليس من الصالح |
| It's worth | يستحق | It's no use | لا فائدة من |
| can't help | لا يستطيع التوقف عن | (have) difficulty (in) | لديه صعوبة فى |
| can't stand | لا يستطيع تحمل | (be) busy | مشغول |
| can't stop | لا يستطيع التوقف | (have) fun | يمرح |
| What/How about ...? | ما رأيك؟ (اقتراح) | | |

- This film is worth watching more than once.
- My mother has difficulty (in) climbing up and down the stairs.
- It's no use eating fast food.

## 5 Expressions followed by (to + v-ing)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| look forward to | يتطلع إلى | (be) used to | معتاد على |
| object to | يعترض على | (be) accustomed to | معتاد على |
| contribute to | يساهم فى | take to | يعتاد على |
| in addition to | بالإضافة إلى | owing to | بسبب |
| (be) exposed to | معرض لـ | prefer (v-ing) to (v-ing) | يفضل ... عن |
| own up to | يعترف بـ | | |

- We look forward to livingon a remote island.
- All people object to usinghorns late at night.






## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My son admitted .................... his time before the exam.
a) to waste b) wasting c) of wasting d) both b & c

2 The teacher threatened the lazy student .................... him out of the class.
a) sends b) sending c) to send d) sent

3 The manager arranged .................... some of the workers to know their problems.
a) to meet b) meeting c) to meeting d) meet

4 Please, don't bother me. I'm busy .................... my homework.
a) to do b) did c) doing d) to doing

5 Do you mind .................... some photos of your wedding on Facebook?
a) sharing b) to share c) in sharing d) to sharing

6 My father taught us .................... people with respect.
a) treats b) to treat c) treat d) treating

7 Do you fancy .................... on a day trip to Alexandria next week?
a) to come b) come c) to coming d) coming

8 I dislike .................... away from my family for a long time.
a) to be b) to being c) be d) being

9 We're planning .................... to Europe for our holiday next year.
a) flying b) to fly c) fly d) to flying

10 Mona offered .................... us do the washing up.
a) to be helped b) helping c) to help d) help

11 I can't stand .................... around doing nothing.
a) sit b) sitting c) to sit d) to sitting

12 My son was very annoyed. He seemed .................... bad marks in the exams.
a) to get b) getting c) to getting d) get

13 When you finish .................... the report, send it to the manager.
a) writing b) write c) to write d) to writing

14 It's no good .................... to revise your vocabulary at the last minute.
a) trying b) try c) to try d) tried

15 We look forward .................... Egypt a better place.
a) to see b) to seeing c) seeing d) to being seen

16 They couldn't afford .................... the house at that high price.
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying

17 I hope .................... a new car instead of the old one. *(Longman)*
a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) will buy

18 My friend suggests .................... the midyear holiday in Luxor. *(Longman)*
a) will spend b) to spend c) spending d) spend

**19** **We ................... mixing with bad friends because of their terrible behaviour.** *(Longman)*

a) prefer b) wouldn't like to c) fail d) avoid

**20** **................... attending all today's meetings. I finished my tasks.**

a) In addition to b) In addition c) Addition to d) Addition

**21** **Owing ................... hard, my daughter could join the university she liked.**

a) study b) to study c) to studying d) studying

**22** **We had fun ................... many historic places during the summer holiday.**

a) visiting b) to visit c) to visiting d) visit

**23** **It is a holiday tomorrow, so we could go ................... together.**

a) sailing b) to sailing c) to sail d) sail

**24** **Our national team is expected ................... in the next World Cup finals.**

a) play b) playing c) to play d) to playing

**25** **I am looking forward ................... a well-known club when I grow up.**

a) to join b) for joining c) join d) to joining

**26** **Many people in our town objected ................... the new bridge.**

a) to build b) to building c) build d) building

**27** **I couldn't neglect ................... his invitation to his wedding party.**

a) accept b) to accepting c) accepting d) to accept

**28** **What a hot day! I feel like ................... for a swim in the sea in Alexandria.**

a) go b) going c) to go d) to going

**29** **I couldn't talk to him. He couldn't stop ................... his homework.**

a) do b) to do c) doing d) in doing

**30** **The salesman ................... taking the money from me. He said he hadn't taken it.**

a) wanted b) refused c) denied d) admitted

**31** **My father allowed me ................... my friend using his own phone.**

a) phoning b) phone c) to phone d) to phoning

**32** **My father always allows ................... our friends using his phone.**

a) phoning b) to phone c) to phoning d) phone

**33** **Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT?**

a) My father suggested leaving his new job.
b) I don't really enjoy going to the opera.
c) She accused her neighbour of stealing her money.
d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.

**34** **Which of the following sentences is CORRECT?**

a) I promised helping her with her problems.
b) She agreed bringing her new laptop with her.
c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.
d) I don't mind to watch this movie again.

# Test yourself




Part 1
**(Lessons 1 & 2)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## Vocabulary

1 .................... are very bad as they live on attacking and robbing ships at sea.
a) Parrots b) Robbers c) Burglars d) Pirates

2 He has the ability to write the whole story in ...................., he is a talented writer.
a) rhyme b) rhythm c) verse d) plot

3 The members of the gang were trying to look for a hidden .................... in the island.
a) pressure b) treason c) treason d) treasure

4 All the prisoners must be .................... in for the night and taken to court then.
a) looked b) lucked c) blocked d) locked

5 The writer's new collection of short stories .................... last week.
a) was come out b) came out c) published d) came in

6 The diplomat was .................... and two million dollars was demanded for his release.
a) hijacked b) captured c) kidnapped d) arrested

7 My son won the writing competition .................... 12. I was so proud of him.
a) aged b) when he was
c) at the age of d) all the mentioned

8 Some animals usually .................... holes in the sand to bury their eggs.
a) drill b) dig c) look d) research

9 .................... row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
a) Currant b) Current c) Bad d) Fruitless

10 .................... is long grass that has been cut and dried, often used as food for cattle.
a) Case b) Plot c) Gravel d) Hay

11 My husband always buys red roses for me on my birthday. How ....................!
a) romantic b) horrible c) funny d) comic

12 The writer became well-known because his novel was .................... .
a) success b) a success c) a successful d) successfully

13 Students can't get .................... jobs because they have to attend college every day.
a) temporary b) part-time c) full-time d) permanently

14 My friend is a very polite person who was born .................... a respectable family.
a) into b) on c) in d) with

15 Judges must be .................... with all people whatever their social ranking is.
a) exciting b) fair c) bias d) unfair

## Language

16 Menna hopes .................... the Faculty of Medicine one day.

a) to join b) joining c) joins d) to joining

17 My son suggested .................... to the club today.

a) goes b) went c) going d) to go

18 Ahmed avoided .................... his old friends at the wedding yesterday.

a) meet b) to meet c) to meeting d) meeting

19 The girl decided .................... a new dress before attending the party.

a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) buy

20 The old man denied .................... my money last week.

a) steal b) to steal c) stealing d) to stealing

21 My father advised .................... early to keep healthy.

a) to sleep b) sleeping c) to sleeping d) sleep

22 Thousands of people .................... looking at the Pyramids. They are wonderful!

a) decide b) promise c) dislike d) enjoy

23 Children deserve .................... well respected and treated.

a) being b) to be c) having been d) be

24 Do you think we will be able to afford .................... on holiday this year?

a) to go b) going c) to going d) go

25 I think this nice story is worth .................... by all students.

a) to read b) to reading c) reading d) read

26 The principal .................... to using the mobile phone at school.

a) agreed b) refused c) objected d) enjoyed

27 Hala agreed .................... to her younger sister.

a) apologise b) to apologise c) apologising d) to apologising

28 My wife was busy .................... the flat, so she didn't go out with us.

a) cleaning b) with cleaning c) cleans d) to clean

29 I regret .................... this old car as it breaks down a lot.

a) to buy b) buy c) to buying d) buying

30 The headmaster doesn't allow .................... to school late.

a) to come b) coming c) came d) with coming

Study | Watch a video

Part (2)

# Lessons 3 & 4

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| activities (n) | أنشطة | fair (adj) | عادل |
| author (n) | مؤلف | *grown-up (adj) (n) | راشد/بالغ |
| candlelight (n) | ضوء الشمعة | hate (v) – d | يكره |
| clear (adj) | صافٍ/واضح | hop (v) – ped | يقفز على قدم واحدة |
| describe (v) – d | يصف | season (n) | فصل فى السنة/موسم |
| differently (adv) | باختلاف | situation (n) | موقف |
| dress (v) – ed (n) | يرتدى ملابس/فستان | subject (n) | موضوع |
| especially (adv) | خصوصًا | seem (v) – ed | يبدو |
| exciting (adj) | مثير | verse (n) | بيت (فى قصيدة) |

I'm grown-up now, and I'm aware of what's going on.

### Workbook Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| brief (adj) | مختصر | repeat (v) – ed | يكرر |
| broken (adj) | مكسور | summary (n) | ملخص |
| narrate (v) – d | يروى (قصة - حكاية) | toy (n) | لعبة أطفال |
| fun (adj) (n) | ممتع/مرح | | |

## Vocabulary Check point 1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My son was injured in his leg, so he can't walk without ...................... .
a) running b) hopping c) repeating d) breaking

2 I don't want to know the details, please give me a ...................... of the topic.
a) summary b) verse c) subject d) narration

3 We didn't find a torch, so we used ...................... to see in the darkness.
a) lamp b) season c) candlelight d) lightning

4 I can't write well as a result of my ...................... finger.
a) healthy b) wealthy c) hopped d) broken

5 The sky is ...................... today. I think it is going to be a nice day.
a) clean b) clear c) cloudy d) muddy

6 I asked my teacher for ...................... notes of the lesson I didn't attend.
a) hidden b) deleted c) broken d) brief

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| at night | ليلًا | stay in | يبقى فى |
| by day | نهارًا | the other way | على العكس تمامًا |
| go past | يمر أمام | write about | يكتب عن |
| look for | يبحث عن | in my opinion | فى رأيى |
| in brief | باختصار | have fun | يمرح |
| at different times | فى أوقات مختلفة | | |

## Derivatives

| Verb | Noun | Adjective |
|---|---|---|
| break يكسر/يتوقف عن العمل | break استراحة<br>breakage كسر/حطام | breakable قابل للكسر/هش<br>broken مكسور/متعطل |
| clear يوضح/يظهر | clarity وضوح/اتضاح | clear واضح/ظاهر |
| describe* يصف | description وصف | describable يمكن وصفه<br>descriptive تصويرى/وصفى |
| dress يلبس/يداوى/ينظف الجرح | dress ملابس<br>dresser من يساعد الممثلين على ارتداء ملابسهم<br>dressing ضمادة/خليط من السوائل يضاف إلى الطعام | dressed لابس<br>dressy متأنق/أنيق |
| narrate يروى | narration سرد/أخبار<br>narrator راوٍ/قصاص | narrative روائى/قصصى |
| repeat يعيد/يكرر | repeat حدث مكرر<br>repetition تكرار/إعادة | repetitive متكرر<br>repeated متكرر/معاد<br>repeatable يمكن تكراره |
| situate يعين/يضع فى مركز معين | situation حالة/موقع | situated قائم/واقع فى مكان معين |
| specialise يتخصص | special شىء خاص<br>specialist أخصائى/خبير<br>specialty اختصاص/تخصص | special خاص/مخصوص<br>specialised متخصص |

- I can **describe** the suspect for you.
- I have the **description** of the suspect.
- The suspect is easily **describable**.



## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد |
|---|---|---|---|
| brief | مختصر | short/compressed | long/lengthy/detailed طويل |
| broken | مكسور | crushed/damaged | intact/complete سليم/كامل |
| clear | صافٍ/واضح | apparent/bright/cloudless | ambiguous/cloudy/foggy غامض/غير واضح/غير صافٍ |
| describe | يوصف | explain/detail | conceal/hide يخفي |
| especially | خصوصًا | particularly/specifically/ exceptionally | generally/normally/commonly عمومًا |
| exciting | مثير | inspiring/astonishing | boring/dull ممل |
| fair | عادل | unprejudiced/impartial | prejudiced/partial متحيز |
| grown-up | كبير/بالغ | adult/mature | immature/teenager/ adolescent غير ناضج/مراهق |
| narrate | يروي | describe/detail | conceal/hide/suppress يخفي |
| repeat | يكرر | duplicate/do again | stop/cease يوقف |

## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 It is wrong for children to go to bed .................... day.
a) on b) by c) in d) for

2 We have decided to meet each other .................... different times.
a) on b) of c) at d) by

3 The boy was injured so his mother put a .................... on his wound.
a) dress b) dressing c) dressed d) dresser

4 My father is a .................... in heart surgery. He is a famous surgeon.
a) special b) specialised c) specialty d) specialist

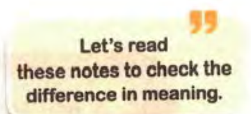
5 The sky is clear today. It is going to be a nice day. The synonym of "clear" is "....................".
a) cloudy b) bright c) hide d) foggy

6 You should be fair when dealing with your students. The antonym of "fair" is "....................".
a) apparent b) crushed c) prejudiced d) justice

7 I have to .................... my wallet as I can't find it.
a) write about b) look at c) look for d) go past

8 My house is .................... in the middle of the city.
a) situated b) situate c) situation d) situates

## Notes on Vocabulary




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | quiet هادئ | We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby. |
| | quite إلى حد ما/تماماً | The food in the canteen is usually quite good. |
| | quit يغادر (يترك العمل) | He quit his job after an argument with a colleague. |
| 2 | lay – laid – laid يضع/تضع البيض/يجهز | - He laid his hand on my shoulder.<br>- The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food.<br>- John was laying on the table for lunch. |
| | lie – lay – lain ينام/يرقد | Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful. |
| | lie – lied – lied يكذب | She lied to her father about her exam results. |

## Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 You mustn't ………………… on a cold surface for long as it may hurt you.
a) lay
b) lie
c) laid
d) lain

2 He injured his leg and now he can ………………… walk without a stick.
a) hard
b) hardly
c) harden
d) hardy

3 I was angry when I discovered that my son ………………… to me about his exam results.
a) laid
b) lay
c) lied
d) lain

4 I could answer the test in half an hour as it was ………………… easy.
a) quite
b) quiet
c) quit
d) quietly

5 My wife ………………… her job to look after our baby.
a) quite
b) quiet
c) quit
d) quietly






## Vocabulary
## General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I really enjoyed your party, it was really .................... .
a) funny b) fun c) clear d) brief

2 It was a very good party. We .................... a lot of fun there.
a) had b) spent c) did d) went

3 You have to .................... on the path in order not to damage the small plants.
a) do b) stay c) make d) score

4 In my ...................., plastic will disappear when we stop depending on it.
a) idea b) mind c) opinion d) brief

5 Children mustn't use the cooker unless .................... are there to help them.
a) grown-up b) grown-ups c) kids d) toddlers

6 I saw some birds .................... on the tree. *(Longman)*
a) hoping b) hopping c) helping d) heaping

7 He lost all his money and he is in a difficult .................... at the moment.
a) situation b) position c) station d) activity

8 Before the new lesson, I always give my students a brief .................... of the last one.
a) summer b) situation c) summary d) sum

9 We had to have dinner by .................... as there was a power cut.
a) TV b) wax c) lamp d) candlelight

10 Think of the word which .................... with "eight".
a) hops b) plots c) narrates d) rhymes

11 .................... is a regular repeated pattern of sounds in music, speech, etc.
a) Verse b) Poem c) Rhyme d) Rhythm

12 After the baby had slept, his mother .................... him gently down on his bed.
a) lied b) lay c) laid d) lain

13 I like to have some .................... in my house to keep the children amused.
a) toys b) trays c) machines d) keys

14 The students are very worried. The exam .................... difficult for them.
a) seems b) appears
c) looks d) all the mentioned

15 Most Egyptians speak in .................... English. They can't speak it perfectly.
a) native b) perfect c) broken d) smashed

16 The club arranges social and cultural .................... for its members.
a) activities b) subjects c) toys d) problems

17 I asked my wife to tell me what has happened .................... not in detail.
a) in particular b) on brief c) in brief d) on show

18 I was ill in bed and I was eager to be outside .................... with my friends.
a) play b) played c) plays d) playing

19 Look .................... my key while you're in the street. I think I have lost it there.
a) at b) up c) for d) like

20 Three boys .................... past us on mountain bikes last week.
a) went b) made c) did d) took

21 We want to do things .................... as we don't want to do the same things.
a) differently b) different c) difference d) differences

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

22 I never liked long walks, especially in winter. The synonyms of the word "especially" are .................... and .................... .
a) generally b) interestingly c) specifically
d) particularly e) amazingly

23 I've got some very exciting news for you. The antonyms of the word "exciting" are .................... and .................... .
a) dull b) boring c) interesting
d) fair e) clear

24 We stopped by Ali's house for a brief visit. The synonyms of the word "brief" are .................... and .................... .
a) long b) short c) compressed
d) lengthy e) mature

25 The main character narrates the story. The synonyms of the word "narrates" are .................... and .................... .
a) dresses b) repeats c) hops
d) describes e) details

26 The building of the new tower has been .................... .
a) a successful b) successful c) success
d) a success e) succeed

27 Ryham married .................... 32.
a) in the age of b) for the age of c) aged
d) at the age of e) ageing

## B Language



### Important Notes

١) أفعال تتبع بـ -ing أو to + inf. دون تغير فى المعنى:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| like | يحب | love | يحب |
| hate | يكره | prefer | يفضل |
| start | يبدأ | begin | يبدأ |
| continue | يستمر | intend | ينوى |

I like to play football.
= I like playing football.
He started to study English.
= He started studying English.




١- عند وجود كلمة would أو اختصارها 'd قبل الأفعال السابقة لابد أن يأتى بعدها (to + inf.).

I'd like/hate/prefer/love to go to school early.

٢- إذا كانت would تعبر عن زمن الماضى.

'd (like - prefer - love ...) to have + P.P.

It's a pity we didn't visit Ali. I'd like to have seen him again.

٣-استخدامات 'd rather - 'd prefer

| prefer | rather |
|---|---|
| (1) **'d prefer + to + inf.**<br>- I'd prefer to have lunch. | (1) **'d rather + inf.**<br>- I'd rather have lunch. |
| (2) **prefer + v-ing + to + v-ing**<br>- I prefer studying to sleeping. | (2) **'d rather + inf. + than + inf.**<br>- I'd rather study than sleep. |
| (3) **'d prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf.**<br>- I'd prefer to study rather than sleep. | (3) **'d rather + فاعل + past simple/past perfect**<br>- I'd rather he played well. |

٢) أفعال تتبع بـ ing أو (to + inf.) مع اختلاف فى المعنى:

| | |
|---|---|
| stop (to + inf.) | يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل. |
| stop + (v-ing) | يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل. |

When he saw the restaurant, he stopped to eat. (the reason why he stopped)
He decided to stop smoking as he felt so ill. (He no longer smokes.)

| | |
|---|---|
| go on + ( to + inf. ) | ينتقل من عمل لآخر |
| go on + (v-ing) | يستمر (فى القيام بنفس العمل) |

After he finished his maths homework, he went on to study English.
My son went on studying English all night.

| | |
|---|---|
| remember (to + inf.) | يتذكر ثم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد). |
| remember + (v-ing) | يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم فى الماضى). |

I remembered to phone her. (I remembered first, then I phoned her.)
I remembered phoning her. (I phoned her and now I remember that.)

| | |
|---|---|
| forget (to + inf.) | ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم). |
| forget + (v-ing) | قام بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم). |

I forgot to go to that meeting. (I forgot so I didn't go.)
I forgot going to that meeting. (I went to the meeting, but I forgot the action.)

| | |
|---|---|
| try + (to + inf.) | يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا |
| try + (v-ing) | يُجرب فعل شىء ليرى النتيجة |

She tried to answer all the questions.
Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

| | |
|---|---|
| regret (to + inf.) | يأسف لفعل شىء سوف يقوم به لأنه مضطر لذلك (الفعل لم يتم بعد). |
| regret + (v-ing) | يندم على فعل قام به (الفعل تم). |

I regret to say that your interview was not successful. (I am sorry to say that.)
I really regret being so rude to my friend.
(The action here took place in the past and the regretting takes place now.)

## Extra Points

**1 suggest/recommend + v-ing**

= suggest/recommend that + فاعل آخر + inf. or (should + inf.)

- I suggest going for a swim. = I suggest that we (should) go for a swim.

**2**
**see – hear + مفعول + inf.** رؤية واستماع الحدث كله
**see – hear + مفعول + v-ing** رؤية واستماع جزء من الحدث

- I heard them talk about global warming. It was a very useful programme.
- I saw my friend Ali playing but I left before the end of the match.

**3 the first – the second – the third – the last ... + n. + to + inf.**

- Hana was the last person to come to the party.

**4 ask – decide – know – remember – forget – explain – understand**

- هذه الأفعال إذا جاء بعدها أداة استفهام نستخدم .to + inf

- We asked him how to get to the station.
- I haven't decided where to go yet.

**5**
**make + مفعول + inf. = cause + مفعول + to + inf.** يجعل ...
**make + مفعول + inf. = force + مفعول + to + inf.** يجعل/يجبر ...
**let + مفعول + inf. = allow + مفعول + to + inf.** يسمح ...

- My teacher always makes me study. (= causes me to study)
- I only did it as they made me do it. (= forced me to do it)
- He let me go out with my friends. (= allowed me to go out)

- ولكن فى حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم بعدها .to + inf

- He was made to come early.







Practise more

## Language General Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Noha would rather .................... lunch in the club.
a) to have b) have c) having d) to having

2 I soon began .................... what the problems were.
a) to understanding b) understand
c) understands d) to understand

3 My wife prefers cooking at home .................... fast food.
a) to buy b) than buy c) to buying d) than buying

4 Would you like .................... out for a meal tonight?
a) going b) to going c) go d) to go

5 Dalia would prefer .................... lunch in the club.
a) to have b) have c) having d) to having

6 You should avoid .................... friends with such bad people.
a) to making b) makes c) making d) to make

7 The police never allow .................... in this area.
a) parking b) park c) to park d) to be parked

8 Marwa recommended .................... that new restaurant. She said it was good.
a) trying b) to try c) to trying d) that try

9 I really regret .................... up late; I missed the first lecture. *(Longman)*
a) staying b) to stay c) to staying d) for staying

10 I like listening to Dr El-Baz .................... on television. I can't miss a word of his speech.
a) talking b) to talk c) to talking d) talk

11 Please, remind your brother .................... me the book he has borrowed.
a) getting b) to get c) to getting d) get

12 The police forced the criminal .................... the truth about the theft.
a) tell b) telling c) to telling d) to tell

13 Would you like .................... the summer holiday with us in Port Said? *(Longman)*
a) to spending b) spend c) spending d) to spend

14 I consider .................... Luxor and Aswan my best memory ever.
a) visit b) to visit c) to visiting d) visiting

15 I'll never forget .................... down in the middle of the road. It was terrible.
a) breaking b) to break c) to breaking d) broke

16 What a terrible thing! You forgot .................... the important documents.
a) signing b) sign c) to signing d) to sign

17 I forgot .................... my medicine, so I took it twice.
a) taking b) to take c) take d) to taking

18 Stop .................... noise; your father is asleep. *(Longman)*
a) to making b) making c) make d) to make

19 The postmen stopped ...................... letters to the houses in our area. It took them 30 minutes.
a) deliver b) to deliver c) to delivering d) delivering

20 I was driving along the motorway when I saw a restaurant, so I stopped ...................... something.
a) eat b) to eat c) to eating d) eating

21 My father usually stops ...................... us some sweets on his way back home.
a) to get b) getting c) to getting d) get

22 Jehan regrets ...................... her time before yesterday's exams.
a) for washing b) wasting c) to waste d) will waste

23 I remember ...................... this young man before when I was in Alexandria. *(Longman)*
a) meeting b) to meet c) to meeting d) had met

24 I regretted ................. my mother with the housework yesterday as she was really ill.
a) helping b) to help c) not to help d) not helping

25 On my first day at school, I remember ...................... into the classroom and seeing my teacher.
a) to go b) went c) to going d) going

26 I remember ...................... the Queen in London. It was a wonderful day.
a) meet b) to meet c) meeting d) to meeting

27 I advised my children ................... their time before the exam.
a) to waste b) wasting c) not to waste d) not wasting

28 I always hear the birds ................... in the mornings.
a) to sing b) to singing c) singing d) sings

29 I suggest that she ...................... to the hospital tomorrow.
a) is going b) will go c) go d) going

30 My brother decided not to eat a lot again to lose weight. This means he .......... a lot.
a) stopped eating b) enjoyed eating c) regretted to eat d) forgot eating

31 I have a memory that I have met Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria before. This means that ...................... .
a) I went on to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
b) I regret meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
c) I forgot to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria

32 I remembered to do my homework before going to bed. This means that ............... .
a) I remembered doing my homework
b) I remember that I do my homework
c) first I remembered, then I did my homework
d) first I did my homework, then I remembered

33 I forgot to bring my mobile. This means that ...................... .
a) my mobile is with me now b) my mobile isn't with me now
c) my mobile will be with me d) I didn't buy a mobile

# Test yourself




Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## Vocabulary

1 I like to read French .................... to know how they have preserved their culture.
a) literate b) adventure c) literature d) furniture

2 Our teacher always .................... it very easy for us to understand our lessons.
a) takes b) makes c) helps d) does

3 I couldn't measure the .................... of the street where I live. It is very long.
a) width b) long c) length d) depth

4 My dad is an old man; he needs to live in a .................... place.
a) quiet b) quit c) quietly d) quite

5 Take care of that box. What inside it is .................... .
a) breakable b) dressing c) broken d) repeated

6 During summer, I like to stay with my family .................... Alexandria.
a) at b) on c) in d) for

7 The footballer had to .................... after he was injured.
a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

8 I like outdoor .................... such as hiking or climbing.
a) activities b) subjects c) toys d) briefs

9 At the party, her jewels sparkled in the .................... .
a) situation b) description c) candlelight d) toy

10 Menna was playing happily with her new .................... when her father came.
a) toy b) subject c) activity d) joy

11 Mr Rady .................... the money on the table to persuade the man to sell his car.
a) lay b) laid c) lied d) led

12 Her mother told her to .................... herself in her nicest clothes.
a) dress b) clear c) describe d) narrate

13 Families, .................... those with young children, benefit from the health programme.
a) nearly b) especially c) excitingly d) fairly

14 It was impossible to see everything during our .................... visit to Paris.
a) bare b) pure c) brave d) brief

15 Go along this road, then go .................... the supermarket there and you will find the station.
a) by b) past c) for d) straight

16 I love .................... during summer. I swim nearly every day.
a) to swimming b) swimming c) swim d) swam

17 I'd like .................... out with my family. This makes me happy.
a) go b) going c) to going d) to go

18 I hate .................... everything to the last time.
a) to leave b) leave c) to leaving d) leaves

19 Could you explain how .................... this maths problem?
a) answering b) to answer c) to answering d) answer

20 I always have fun .................... comic films.
a) watch b) watching c) to watch d) to watching

21 Nader suggested that his sister .................... with him.
a) going b) go c) has been d) is going

22 I don't always recommend .................... on your own.
a) study b) studying c) to study d) to studying

23 I really try to forget .................... this very bad man who made me annoyed.
a) meeting b) to meeting c) to meet d) meet

24 I regret .................... to the cinema. It was not a very good film.
a) go b) to go c) going d) to going

25 I still remember .................... to Alexandria as a reward for my success.
a) take b) taking c) to be taken d) being taken

26 My sister hates .................... by air. She gets nervous every time she does.
a) to flying b) to fly c) flies d) flew

27 My favourite player intends .................... this year. He can't play for more seasons.
a) retire b) to retire c) not to retire d) retiring

28 I don't .................... meeting you here. What a lovely surprise!
a) expect b) fancy c) predict d) stand

29 The accused boy denied .................... the ruler from his classmate's bag.
a) stealing b) to steal c) stolen d) steal

30 He was made .................... a fine for driving his car fast.
a) to pay b) pay c) paying d) paid

Study | Watch a video | Part (3) Lessons 5 & 6

# Chapter 6

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| advantage | ميزة | move | يتحرك |
| alive | على قيد الحياة | prevent | يحول دون/يمنع |
| cannon | مدفع | reach | يصل إلى |
| careful | حذر/حريص | sinking | غارقًا |
| contact | يتصل بـ | slowly | ببطء |
| cry | يبكى | supplies | إمدادات |
| enter | يدخل | weapons | أسلحة |
| fort | حصن | well defended | محصن |
| including | بما فيها/متضمنًا | wind | رياح |
| medicines | أدوية | | |

## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a good servant to him | خادم جيد له | made us all move | جعلنا جميعًا نتحرك |
| at all | على الإطلاق | move towards | يتحرك نحو |
| at the other side | فى الجانب الآخر | on the island | على الجزيرة |
| at the same time | فى الوقت نفسه | one side of the boat | جانب واحد من القارب |
| big enough for | كبيرة بما يكفى لـ | prevent the boat from | يمنع القارب من |
| easy for them to | سهل بالنسبة لهم أن | stay on | يبقى على |
| far from | بعيد عن | take it down | ينزل شيئًا للأسفل |
| fell down | سقط | to get there first | للوصول إلى هناك أولًا |
| fire his gun | يطلق النار من سلاحه | to put food and more weapons into | لوضع الطعام والمزيد من الأسلحة فى |
| from a different direction | من اتجاه مختلف | walk a little way | يمشى قليلًا |
| impossible for them | مستحيل بالنسبة لهم | we're finished | انتهينا |





## Novel Exercises Chapter (6)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Stories about .................. often include a search for buried treasure.
a) applies b) supplies c) pirates d) flags

2 Our brave soldiers .................. our country against any attacks.
a) define b) reflect c) surround d) defend

3 I sometimes .................. my friends by phone and email. *(Longman)*
a) commute b) connect c) communicate d) contact

4 He was arrested as he had .................. his gun at some people in the street.
a) fired b) fined c) framed d) found

5 The enemies couldn't get into the town as it was well .................. .
a) organised b) arranged c) defended d) dressed

6 There were 30 students in the class, .................. only ten girls.
a) containing b) including c) enclosing d) consisting

7 They had a/an .......... over their enemies as they had guns but their enemies didn't.
a) disadvantage b) demerit c) con d) advantage

8 The clever pilot could .................. the plane from damaging.
a) predict b) move c) prevent d) remove

9 The pirates loaded the .................. and fired towards the ship.
a) canoe b) cannon c) fort d) raft

10 The thief .................. the woman and tried to rob her.
a) attacked b) attached c) attracted d) attended

11 When we .................. the station, the train was about to leave.
a) got b) arrived c) went d) reached

12 All world countries should stand against the spread of mass destructive .............. .
a) supplies b) forts c) weapons d) medicines

13 The ........... was hard to get through as there were hundreds of soldiers around it.
a) fort b) forth c) entrance d) beach

14 They decided to .................. this old fence and put up a strong wall.
a) take in b) take down c) take up d) take to

15 Before we start the journey, we will take a lot of food .................. just in case there aren't any markets there. *(Longman)*
a) supplies b) makers c) receipts d) chefs




للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Writing tips

**When you write a review of anything, especially a poem, you should follow the following steps:**

1. What is the poem you are going to write about?
2. Who is the author of the poem?
3. Do you think the rhyming is good or not?
4. What is the main idea of the poem and why the author wrote this?

## Model Essay

### A review of a poem

**Introduction**

*"Bed in Summer"* is a delightful poem written by Robert Louis Stevenson. It describes the innocence and joy of childhood. The poem describes the speaker's reluctance to get out of bed in the morning during the summer season. The speaker wants to stay in bed and enjoy the coolness and comfort that it offers.

**Main body**

The writer's use of vivid imagery and personification creates a visual image of the summer morning. The imagery of the garden full of butterflies and birds that sing on every tree helps to convey the speaker's sense of excitement. It's a good length for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme as I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

**Conclusion**

In conclusion, "Bed in Summer" is a beautiful poem that captures the essence of childhood and the joys of summer.

# Practice



Practise more

## Skills Exercises

**1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The World Cup is one of the biggest sporting events in the world. This great football championship features(1) players from thirty-two nations. The World Cup was created in 1928, and the first World Cup games were held(2) in Uruguay in 1930. It was an all-male contest at that time. The first women's World Cup was held in China in 1991. Surprisingly, football is not quite as popular in the United States as basketball, or baseball, but it is still popular around the world.

People all over the continents often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. People in the winning nations celebrate their teams' victories. When Pelé played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. This team is considered one of the greatest. Pelé is regarded as the best football player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless(3) player was Maradona who was regarded as one of the greatest footballers who played the game, and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century, but he was not a good idol like Pelé. He was known for drug addiction and he was arrested in Argentina for cocaine possession.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 From the context of the passage, which is the best antonym for "victories"?
a) Wins. b) Happiness. c) Results. d) Defeats.

2 Who is Pelé?
a) A cocaine addict. b) A Brazilian team.
c) An average football player. d) One of the greatest football players.

3 In America, basketball and baseball are ................ football.
a) more popular than b) less popular than
c) as popular as d) more dangerous than

4 People all over the world admired Maradona despite ................ .
a) his bad behaviour b) leading his team to the World Cup
c) his matchless talent d) scoring so many goals

(1) يضم
(2) أقيم
(3) لا يقارن

5 The FIFA Best Player award goes to players who .................. .

a) addict drugs
b) have achievements in the game
c) take part in the World Cup
d) deal in drugs

6 People leaving work to watch their nation's team matches are .................. the game.

a) crazy about
b) hardly interested in
c) have no affection for
d) might be arrested

7 The first women's World Cup was held in .................. .

a) Africa
b) Uruguay
c) Asia
d) South America

## 2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, hope and despair, happiness and sadness, but in all cases, it should be filled with achievements.

a) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والانتصار، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

b) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

c) يعرف الإنســان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشــل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والفرح، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

d) يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يمكن أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.

2 Increasing production and improving its quality is the only way to increase our national income which helps to raise the standard of living.

a) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى معيشتنا.

b) إن تقليل الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.

c) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الأخيرة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.

d) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومى مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.

3 Every child has the right to lead a happy life and the government must do everything possible to make sure that children survive and develop.

a) لكل طفل الحق فى أن يعيش حياة كريمة ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما فى وسعها للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة ونموهم.

b) لكل طفل الحق فى أن يعيش حياة عادية ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما فى وسعها للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة ونموهم.

c) لكل طفل الحق فى أن يعيش حياة سعيدة ولا يجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما فى وسعها للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة ونموهم.

d) لكل طفل الحق فى أن يعيش حياة سعيدة ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما فى وسعها للتأكد أن الأطفال يحيون وينمون.

4 The Suez Canal is the greatest waterway between the east and the west. It has become an important source of national income.

a) قناة السويس هى أكبر مانع مائى بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامًا للدخل القومى.
b) قناة السويس هى أضيق ممر مائى بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامًا للدخل القومى.
c) قناة السويس هى أكبر ممر مائى بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامًا للدخل القومى.
d) قناة السويس هى أكبر ممر رملى بين المشرق والمغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامًا للدخل القومى.

5 Reading literature introduces us to other people's experiences and cultures which are very different from our own.

a) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على خبرات وثقافات الآخرين التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.
b) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على الخبرات والثقافات الأخرى التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.
c) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التى تتشابه معنا تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.
d) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

6 تلعب النوادى الرياضية دورًا هامًـا فى المجتمع، كما تقدم خدمات عظيمة للشـباب، وتسـاعدهم على قضاء أوقات الفراغ بشكل مفيد.

a) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.
b) Sports clubs play an important rule in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.
c) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their empty time in a beneficial way.
d) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also include great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a benefit way.

7 تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لحل معظم مشاكل المجتمع ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل المواطنين.

a) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and rise the standard of living for all citizens.
b) The government is doing every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
c) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
d) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the level of living for some people.

8 من الضرورى أن تجيد تحدث وكتابة اللغة الإنجليزية لكى تحصل على فرصة عمل جيدة فهى اللغة الأكثر تحدثًا فى العالم الآن.

a) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and talking English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
b) It is necessary to be good in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
c) It is necessity to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
d) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

9 للصحافة دور كبير فى تنمية الوعى العام تجاه القضايا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية. فهى تعرض المشاكل وتقدم لها الحلول.

a) The press has a minor role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
b) The press has a major role in developing public awareness towards economical and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
c) The newspaper has a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
d) The press has a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.

10 تتمتـع مصر بالكثير من المواقع الأثرية القديمة والمنتجعات السـياحية الحديثـة، وكل هذا يجعلها من أعظم الدول الجاذبة للسياح.

a) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that pull tourists.
b) Egypt has many modern archaeological sites and ancient tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.
c) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist beaches, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.
d) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.

## 3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The importance of teaching literature in schools."

.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................................................

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ............ | I used the right structure. ............ | I used a topic sentence. ............ | I wrote the conclusion. ............ | I used the right punctuation. ............




## Al-Adwaa Test 40

**Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 I wanted to improve my French to travel to Paris. The synonyms of the word "improve" are .................. and .................. .
a) decline b) describe c) enhance d) dig e) develop

2 Young people's style of life is very different .................. ours.
a) with b) for c) about d) to e) from

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3 I tried to .................. on my good foot while holding onto my friend Ramy.
a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

4 We call a book about the life of someone a/an .................. .
a) research b) biography c) novel d) biology

5 The cause of the accident is a big Mercedes that was coming the .................. way.
a) another b) other c) others d) another's

6 The driver of the car was lucky to stay .................. after the terrible accident.
a) alive b) a life c) survive d) dead

7 Every parent .................. to see their children succeed in their lives.
a) locks b) wishes c) becomes d) supposes

8 I found these CDs very .................. when I was learning English.
a) helpful b) cooperative c) particular d) hopeful

9 Hesham likes .................. a rest in the afternoon as he feels tired.
a) to take b) take c) took d) taken

10 Hany and his sister enjoy .................. tennis after school every day.
a) playing b) to play c) to playing d) play

11 Amina admitted not .................. how to answer the test.
a) to be known b) known c) to know d) knowing

12 I saw them .................. angrily, so I left the room to let them complete their argument.
a) talking b) talk c) to talk d) to talking

13 It is very nice here, but I really miss .................. my friends.
a) saw b) to see c) seeing d) seen

14 I regret .......... you that Nabil will not join the team. I know you want him with us.
a) telling b) to tell c) for telling d) to be told

15 They expect thousands of people .................. Sapporo for the Snow Festival.

a) to visit b) to visiting c) visiting d) visit

16 He encourages his students .................. regularly for the exams.

a) revise b) to revise c) revising d) to revising

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure .................. Sally.

a) screamed b) scared
c) cared d) entertained

18 Sally .................. reading ghost stories.

a) enjoyed b) did not enjoy
c) feared d) avoided

19 Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?

a) The strange noise. b) Sally.
c) Sally's brother. d) The ghost.

20 Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother .................. .

a) stretched his hand b) turned on the lights
c) walked down the steps d) laughed

21 Ken ................. when Sally started reading the story.

a) had been outside
b) had been on the roof
c) hadn't entered the house
d) had hidden under the bed

22 Sally thought it was a ghost because all of her family ................. .

a) were asleep
b) got out
c) went shopping
d) didn't like tricks

23 The best title to this passage is "................."

a) Reading is Important
b) Scary Tales Effects
c) Ken is Coward
d) Sally's Brother's Trick

**24 Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التى نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئى.

a) The future of life on Earth depends on the successful of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

b) The future of life at Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environment pollution.

c) The future of life on Earth independent on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

d) The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

**25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

a) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

b) أثبت الباحثون المتخصصون أن الخبرات المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

c) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

**26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The importance of learning a foreign language".

..........................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 286

Assess your progress ★★★★★

| < 50% | 50 : 64% | 65 : 84% | 85 : 100% |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Study again | Practise more | Take more exams | Well done! |

# Treasure Island

Story

امسح الكود



لقراءة نص القصة
من كتاب الطالب

## Chapter (1) Summary

- The narrator of the story is called Jim Hawkins. His father owned an inn called the Admiral Benbow many years ago. A man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with a scar on his face.
- The man decided to stay in the inn. He had a large wooden box. He asked us to call him Captain. In the evenings, he told stories about his time at sea.
- The Captain stayed at the inn for months. One morning, he went for a walk along the beach. Another man walked into the inn and asked about him. He was thin and pale, with three fingers on his left hand.
- When the Captain returned and saw the man. He called the man Black Dog. Jim left them talking. Suddenly, there were loud voices and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm.
- The Captain fell over. At that moment, a doctor arrived to see Jim's father who was sick. The doctor looked at the Captain and gave him some medicine.
- The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted and Black Dog was not as bad as some of the other men.
- That evening, Jim's father died. Then, a week later, Jim saw a blind man coming towards the inn. He stopped outside the door and asked Jim to take him to the Captain who looked very surprised to see him. He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around and left.
- The Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. Jim and his mother knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this.
- Jim thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but he knew they were in danger, so they asked their neighbours for help, but they refused. Only one of them went to tell Dr Livesy.
- They found the box key and the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."
- Jim's mother opened the box and found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. They also found a bag with some coins inside.
- Jim asked to leave before the blind man and Black Dog return at ten o'clock. They took the money and the papers and walked as quickly as they could back towards the village, but as they walked, they heard the sound of people on the road behind them.
- His mother asked him to take the money and run as she was too weak to continue. Jim did not want to leave her, so they stopped under a bridge, where they could hide in the dark.

# Practice

## Chapter (1) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 In the past, soldiers used .................. to fight others during wars.
a) swords b) knives c) tanks d) submarines

2 I didn't .................. to tell my father about my bad exam result.
a) guard b) attack c) owe d) dare

3 The thief .................. the woman's bag and ran away quickly.
a) borrowed b) grabbed c) guarded d) brought

4 The police should .................. these important places for fear of being robbed.
a) steal b) frighten c) guard d) owe

5 The wound after the accident might leave a .................. on her cheek.
a) scar b) scare c) scarce d) scaring

6 My friend .................. me a lot of money and I need it urgently.
a) owns b) owes c) has d) possesses

7 I want to find a small .................. to have a meal and spend the night at it.
a) pool b) inn c) beach d) prison

8 My brother is very ill, so he looks so .................. .
a) healthy b) powerful c) strong d) pale

9 If you want to visit a remote .................., you need to have a ship.
a) sword b) inn c) island d) scar

10 Sorry, I can't climb this high rocky .................. with climbing equipment.
a) island b) cliff c) pool d) beach

11 My friend needs someone to help him cross the road as he is .................. .
a) strong b) powerful c) wealthy d) blind

12 A wife that cooks well, cleans and monitors her children carefully is a real .............. .
a) treasure b) guard c) adventure d) scar

13 No one dared .................. into the old house at night alone as it is frightening.
a) with going b) for going c) to go d) by going

14 The teacher pointed .................. me and said that I was a loser.
a) in b) with c) for d) towards

15 Mom! There's someone at the door asking .................. Dad.
a) at b) for c) with d) by

## Chapter (2) Summary

- Jim could see eight men. One of them was the blind man. They ran inside the Admiral Benbow Inn. They found Bill dead. The blind man asked them to find his box.
- They found out that someone opened the box. The blind man knew that it was Jim and his mother who did that. The men started to look around the house. At this time, they heard horses coming down the road and they started to run in all directions.
- Jim ran out to see who was riding the horses. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took his mother to the village, and the others tried to catch the men who escaped on a boat.
- Jim returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police who asked him about what they wanted. He showed them the papers that he still had in his jacket. Jim wanted to take them to Dr Livesy and the head of the police, Mr Dance, agreed as Dr Livesy was a magistrate as well as a doctor. And he'd know what to do.
- They found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked them into his house. Jim showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.
- The doctor thought this might be a clue to the place where Flint buried his treasure. Mr Trelawney agreed with him and suggested that they should take the next boat from Bristol and find the treasure themselves.
- The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed. Then they looked at the other papers and saw a map of an island, with a big cross on it next to the words, "most of the treasure here."
- Mr Trelawney asked Dr Livesy to go to Bristol the next day as in a few days. He wanted Jim Hawkins to come as their ship's boy and Dr Livesy as the ship's doctor. The doctor agreed, but he was worried that those men who tried to find the map would look for them.
- It took them longer than they thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, Jim stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that they might find.
- One day, a letter was sent to Jim from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the *Hispaniola* for them. Trelawney said that he had found a crew ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook. Silver also knew other men who would join them.
- Jim was surprised by this, as he thought they had to keep the news of the treasure a secret. He was very excited by the thought of the journey and he went to say goodbye to his mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. He was very sad to leave her the next day when he travelled to Bristol with Redruth. They had just one night in the city before they were going to sail.

## Practice

## Chapter (2) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The .................. of the plane were very cheerful and treated us kindly.
a) engine b) sailors c) crew d) staff

2 To solve this crime, the police should find a clear .................. .
a) clue b) secret c) head d) map

3 The .................. decided that she wasn't the killer, so she was set free.
a) crew b) magistrate c) pilot d) pirate

4 We need to hire a .................. to clean the house and take care of our food.
a) landlady b) magistrate c) servant d) captain

5 Along the new road, there are signs which give us .................. easily.
a) treasures b) secrets c) drawings d) directions

6 The .................. of the company should take important decisions from time to time.
a) captain b) head c) crew d) magistrate

7 Yesterday, some thieves tried to .................. the bank, but they were arrested.
a) deceive b) hide c) steal d) rob

8 He tried to .................. from prison, but he was arrested last week.
a) hide b) catch c) escape d) cross

9 During the storm, the ship's .................. tried to control it, but they failed.
a) cookers b) sailors c) magistrates d) drivers

10 In new towns, electric cables are .................. beneath streets.
a) buried b) caught c) escaped d) included

11 Please, there's no need to ..................! I can hear you!
a) cross b) escape c) agree d) shout

12 He was hit by a car when he tried to .................. over the road near Euston station.
a) shout b) catch c) cross d) escape

13 I've got the money you can borrow if you run .................. .
a) over b) out c) at d) away

14 The players of the team are busy preparing themselves .................. the final.
a) for b) at c) with d) to

15 The police are still looking .................. the escaped prisoner.
a) at b) after c) after d) for

## Chapter (3) Summary

- The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked Jim to take a note to Long John Silver. Jim went to the inn which Silver owned and gave him the note.
- Silver was surprised when he saw it was from Mr Trelawney. While they were going to him, Silver talked about boats and Jim knew that he was a great sailor.
- Mr Trelawney told them that they had to leave at four o'clock that afternoon. And asked Jim to get his hat to go on the ship. When they walked onto the *Hispaniola*, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see them. He didn't like the men on this ship and he was not happy about where they were going. The crew told him they were looking for treasure which always meant danger. He didn't want to show anyone the map for fear of a *mutiny*.
- Dr Livesy thought that they had two good men on the ship: Silver and Captain Smollett. Mr Trelawney knew that Silver is a good man, but he didn't think Captain Smollett was and Jim agreed with him.
- Silver was able to walk around the ship using only a *crutch*. All the men liked him and he was a good cook. He looked after his parrot, Captain Flint, which was 200 years old.
- One night, Jim climbed inside the apple *barrel* to eat an apple. He heard a man talking nearby.
- Silver was saying that Flint was the captain. It was then that he lost his leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, he put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew were on the ship that day.
- Another sailor called Dick told him that he wouldn't be able to return to Bristol after the journey. They would have lots of money. Another man said that he was tired of waiting and asked when they could attack Captain Smollett.
- Silver asked him to be patient as Mr. Trelawney had the map. They might also want Smollett to take them home. Silver threatened that they wanted to do things quickly and that's what Pew and Flint wanted to do, so Pew was blind and Flint was dead. Silver asked them to wait for the right time to kill them all.
- Jim realised that Silver was a pirate, and the other crew were part of his gang. Before Dick came to the barrel, and he heard another sailor call out: "I can see land!" It was this news that saved Jim.

Practice

## Chapter (3) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My friend told me a/an .................. and asked me not to tell anyone about it.
a) public b) tip c) advice d) secret

2 Why are you ..................? The lion is in its cage.
a) tired b) frightening c) pleased d) frightened

3 This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the .................. .
a) patriots b) pilots c) pirates d) parrots

4 They led a .................. against the captain, but they failed to take the ship over.
a) crew b) note c) barrel d) mutiny

5 My son wants to buy a .................. that can sing and repeat what we say.
a) monkey b) kitten c) parrot d) puppy

6 The coach should depend on his .................. to study the other teams.
a) helpers b) servants c) pirates d) parrots

7 The police .................. and arrested seven of the terrorists last week.
a) saved b) attacked c) paid d) lost

8 The price of oil .................. is increasing daily and this will lead to a disaster.
a) parrots b) spades c) barrels d) bags

9 A .................. of thieves were arrested while robbing the bank.
a) barrel b) staff c) school d) gang

10 My next .................. is Paris. I'm going there next week.
a) destination b) mutiny c) crutch d) situation

11 I was on .................. for three months after the operation.
a) pirates b) crutches c) pipes d) barrels

12 If you want to .................. your goals, you should work hard.
a) lose b) arrive c) reach d) do

13 My father paid .................. my driving lessons because I wanted to buy a car.
a) with b) by c) at d) for

14 Susan looked .................. us very well. She's an excellent cook.
a) after b) for c) up d) at

15 The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes and saved him from becoming .................. .
a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) smart

## Chapter (4) Summary

- People ran to look at the island, and Jim climbed out of the barrel. They could see two low hills and a big one. Captain Smollett asked Silver to take them to the place on the map and he agreed excitedly.
- Jim told Dr Livesy, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney everything he had heard in the barrel, but they couldn't do anything as they didn't think they would attack them until they found the treasure. Dr Livesy suggested that Jim could listen and find out the sailors they could trust.
- The next morning, the *Hispaniola* stopped close to the island. The crew worked hard on the journey to the island, but when they reached it, they didn't seem to want to work. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.
- Later, Captain Smollett had a plan to take the ship. They decided to tell all the men they could trust about the plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax if they wanted to. All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go, they thought that they could find the treasure.
- Silver organised the men. Six men would stay on the *Hispaniola* and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. Jim decided to go with Silver onto the island, but Silver saw him.
- When Jim reached, he began to run as fast as he could. Then, he heard people. One of them was Silver, but he could not hear what he was saying. Then, the men had gone.
- Jim decided to follow them. After a few minutes, he saw Silver and another sailor talking. Silver asked the man who was called Tom to join him as he was a good sailor. But the man refused to work with the pirates.
- Jim suddenly heard a terrible shout, it was Alan. Tom threatened Silver that if his men hurt Alan, he wouldn't help him. Silver threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.
- Silver blew a whistle and more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. Jim was very frightened and ran away.

# Practice

## Chapter (4) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The referee blew his .................. to start the final match.
a) sword b) whistle c) flute d) branch

2 I .................. my friend Ahmed because he is honest and I'm sure he won't do anything bad or wrong.
a) doubt b) lie c) trust d) blow

3 Vodafone opened a new .................. in our street. This will be very helpful to me.
a) coast b) shore c) hill d) branch

4 My father needed to .................. as he was very busy doing important tasks.
a) relax b) shout c) trust d) doubt

5 Cancer is a very dangerous .................. which needs a lot of money to be treated.
a) fight b) branch c) whistle d) disease

6 The place of our street is .................. on Google Maps.
a) relaxed b) marked c) held d) trusted

7 I noticed the .................. on our teacher's face, so I knew that he is angry.
a) expression b) thought c) idea d) disease

8 Alexandria is on the north .................. of the Mediterranean.
a) shore b) coast c) island d) sea

9 Birds lay their eggs on the .................. of the sea.
a) sure b) barrel c) shore d) wave

10 My daughter came first .................. usual in the final exam.
a) like b) if c) so d) as

11 I had to apologise to my teacher as I made a/an .................. in the class.
a) cake b) achievement c) wrong d) mistake

12 They walked .................. the beach during the sunrise time.
a) along b) a long c) long d) longing

13 When the teacher entered the room of the headmaster, I walked .................. to let them speak freely.
a) of b) at c) off d) in

14 My father was very excited .............. see me win the gold medal in the competition.
a) about b) for c) to d) by

15 The young boy held .................. the branch of the tree not to fall down.
a) into b) to c) at d) onto

## Chapter (5) Summary

- Jim stopped running and then saw a man who was running very fast from tree to tree. Jim had a gun and decided to walk towards the man. When the man saw him, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of Jim.
- The man was called Ben Gun who lived alone on the island for three years. Ben Gun had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails.
- Gun was left by a ship and lived on fish and fruit ever since. He told Jim that he was very rich. Jim thought he was crazy. But he told him that he could be rich too.
- Gun asked about Flint and his ship and Jim told him that he died, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. The man asked about Silver. Jim decided to tell him the story from the start, and he looked very interested.
- Gun asked Jim if Trelawney would give him money and allow him to go home on the ship if he helped him and Jim assured him as they would need his help on the ship home. He told Jim that he was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure.
- He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. They waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. They didn't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Silver were with him on the ship.
- When they asked Flint where the treasure was, he wanted them to go to the island and look for it, but he was taking this ship home.
- Three years ago, Gun was on a different ship. When they saw the island, he told the crew that Flint's treasure was on it. They spent twelve days looking for it, but they found nothing.
- One day, they went back to the ship and told Ben Gun to stay and gave him a gun and a spade to look for the treasure on his own.
- Jim asked his help to return to the ship. Gun had a boat which he made himself.
- Suddenly, they heard the sound of a gun. Jim began to run back with Gun. He gave Jim directions. They heard more guns, then Jim saw a flag flying above some trees.

## Practice

## Chapter (5) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The .................. of my team can control all the players.
a) servant b) leader c) sailor d) group

2 All ships have .................. to control wind power during their voyages.
a) sails b) engines c) swords d) spades

3 When we were camping, we used .................. to dig searching for water.
a) sails b) spades c) swords d) sailors

4 We enjoy the .................. air of the sea when we go to Marina.
a) dry b) dark c) dead d) fresh

5 After years, they managed to find the sunken ship at the .................. of the sea.
a) direction b) expression c) sails d) bottom

6 The teacher asked me to raise my .................. so that he could hear me.
a) sound b) voice c) noise d) head

7 The robber .................. down to his knees and gave up when the officer fired his gun.
a) led b) believed c) knelt d) replied

8 We are going on a voyage tomorrow. Are you .................. to come?
a) interesting b) interested c) interests d) interest

9 The headmaster .................. me to leave school early as I was tired.
a) let b) denied c) made d) allowed

10 The police are trying to contact the family of the .................. man.
a) dead b) different c) bottom d) sail

11 You shouldn't .................. everything you read. A lot of news is not true.
a) kneel b) allow c) believe d) lead

12 Her face and neck were quite badly .................. by the sun.
a) allowed b) burned c) made d) believed

13 .................. my surprise she refused to marry Ali although he is a good young man.
a) At b) For c) By d) To

14 I wouldn't dream .................. letting strangers look after my own grandmother!
a) by b) with c) of d) at

15 We both work .................. the same company. It is a multinational one.
a) for b) with c) on d) over

## Chapter (6) Summary

- As there was no wind, Dr Livesy knew they could not take the ship, even if they wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with them. Then, they heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. They were very worried about him.
- Dr Livesy decided to take a boat to the shore with another man called Hunter. When they reached the island, they found a small fort. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended. Then the doctor heard a shout.
- They ran back to the boat and returned to the *Hispaniola*. They put food, medicines and guns in the boat. And threatened Silver's men that if they tried to contact Silver, they would be dead.
- The doctor took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. They took everything to the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola* where Trelawney helped to put food and more weapons into the boat.
- They called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with them.
- There were more people and supplies, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. Then Dr Livesy looked round and realised that the men on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon.
- It would be easy for them to hit the ship. Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell. The other pirates were getting into their boats.
- Trelawney fired his gun again and the ship started to sink, but they were near the beach and it was not difficult to walk to, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.
- The pirates were near. They had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. At last, they saw the fort in front of them. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it.
- Before we could enter the fort, they heard another gunfire, and Redruth was dead. Trelawney was very sad.
- Captain Smollett put up a flag. He knew that they needed the supplies that were lost in the sea. At that moment, they heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.
- The pirates could see the flag, so Mr Trelawney thought that they should take it down, but Captain Smollett refused. They heard someone shouting. It was Jim Hawkins who was still alive and safe.

## Practice — Chapter (6) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 We need to take some .................. with us during our camping.
a) communications b) entries c) diaries d) supplies

2 The policeman .................. his gun and shoot the terrorist before bombing himself.
a) shouted b) defended c) fired d) cried

3 A .................. is a large gun with wheels. It was used during the wars in the past.
a) gun b) rifle c) sword d) cannon

4 Our armed forces do their best to .................. our country from enemies.
a) shoot b) fire c) sink d) defend

5 A .................. is a strong building used by soldiers to defend an important place.
a) fort b) cannon c) well d) port

6 I have a complaint. I need to .................. the manager, please.
a) communicate b) contact c) fire d) defend

7 It is known that .................. should be kept out of the reach of children.
a) cannons b) supplies c) medicines d) contacts

8 They stole everything in my purse, .................. my credit cards.
a) enclosing b) consisting c) supplying d) including

9 One of the many .................. of living in a village is that you can feel relaxed.
a) advantages b) contacts c) supplies d) disadvantages

10 The kids watched as the coin .................. to the bottom of the pool.
a) drowned b) sank c) moved d) made

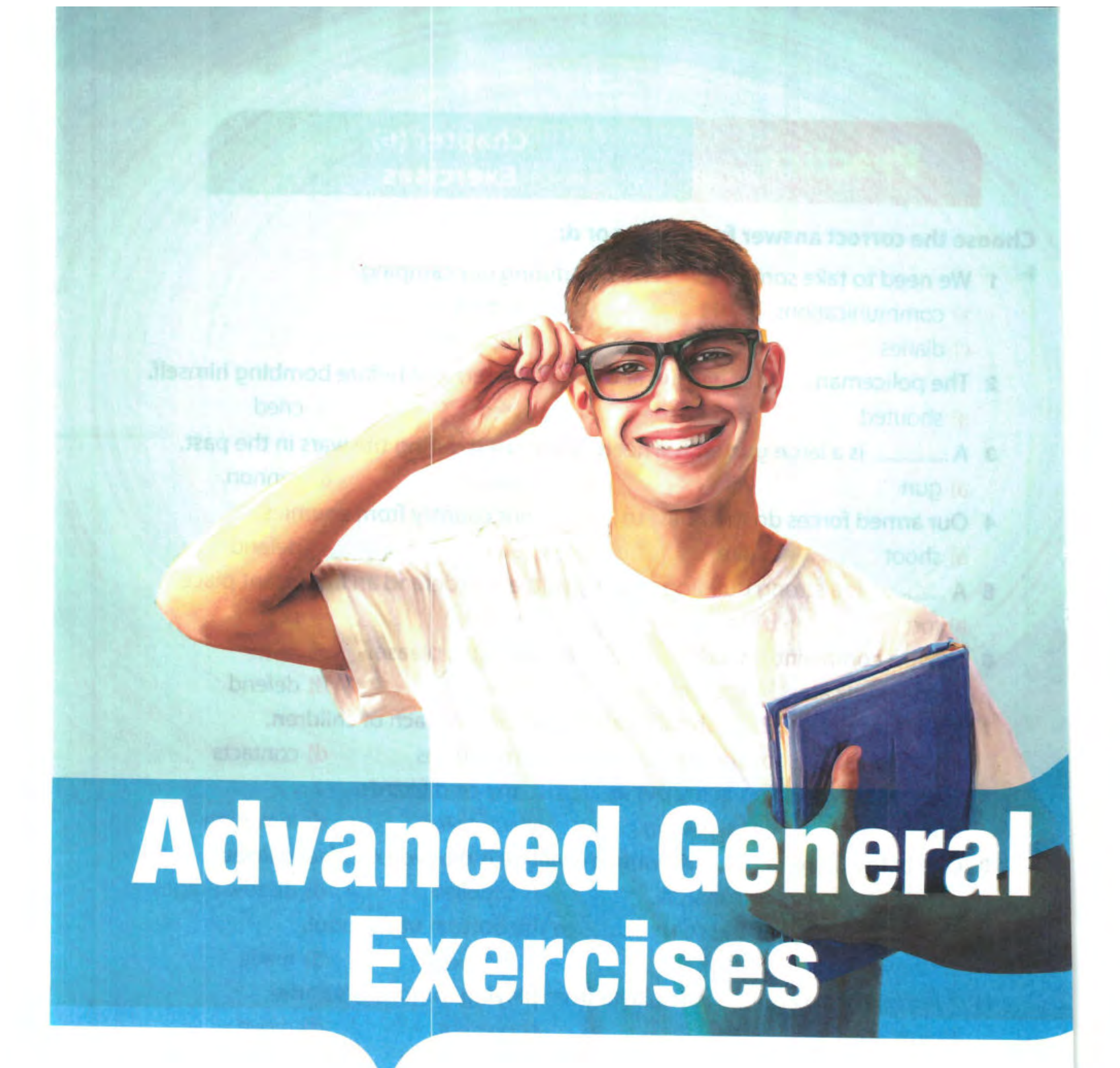
11 A leg injury may .................. the player from playing tomorrow's game.
a) contact b) fire c) prevent d) move

12 It was an awful accident. They're lucky to be .................. .
a) dead b) cried c) moved d) alive

13 The others went back to the hotel, but I stayed .................. the ship to have fun.
a) on b) with c) for d) at

14 The bridge is falling .................. and will need a million pounds to repair it.
a) to b) down c) up d) at

15 I don't like living far .................. downtown areas. I like living in crowded ones.
a) with b) to c) from d) for



# Advanced General Exercises

- **Advanced General Exercises**
- **Advanced General Exercises Answers**

# Advanced General Exercises




**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Waleed has given up smoking, but he still has an occasional cigarette on the .................. .
a) distance b) quiet
c) quietly d) distant

2 I tried to .................. my students out about the results of the exams.
a) seem b) vote
c) tell d) sound

3 .................. each problem does not seem bad, but together they are quite serious.
a) Isolated b) In isolated
c) In isolation d) Insulated

4 Nabila is .................. but I think she is in good health.
a) lean b) active
c) sound d) leak

5 I was my teacher's .................. when I was at school. I was his favourite.
a) fussy b) better
c) bite d) pet

6 My father .................. with anger when he knew that I failed the exam.
a) swelled b) spiced
c) sustained d) leaned

7 A lot of people hate this actress as she is very .................. .
a) swell-legged b) swell-necked
c) swell-handed d) swell-headed

8 People who owe huge amounts of money sometimes .................. to selling their houses or cars.
a) restore b) lend
c) look forward d) resort

9 My wife has got a bad cold, so I must .................. until she gets better.
a) keep ahead b) keep my distance
c) keep my close d) keep alive

10 Khaled was a/an ................., quiet man. He is unfriendly, and not interested in people.

a) safe
b) limited
c) isolated
d) remote

11 While I ................. in Alexandria, I met my friends in the street.

a) were
b) was being
c) was
d) had been

12 While ................. the lessons, Ali was cooking the food.

a) studying
b) was studying
c) I was studying
d) studied

13 ................. Hurghada, I went to the beach every day.

a) While
b) When
c) On
d) While in

14 My brother ................. the extreme cold of Russia.

a) used to
b) didn't use to
c) was using
d) got used to

15 I wish I were good at maths. This means that the speaker ................. good at it.

a) is
b) isn't
c) was
d) wasn't

16 Mona has lived in England for 5 years, so she ........... the different cultures there.

a) is used to
b) didn't use to
c) be used to
d) used to

17 The meal ................. bad, that's why I wanted to vomit.

a) taste
b) tasted
c) was tasting
d) was tasted

18 While ................., I was crying out of pain at hospital.

a) examining
b) was examining
c) I was examining
d) being examined

19 Youssef ................. watching the Turkish Series last night.

a) used to enjoy
b) would enjoy
c) was enjoying
d) enjoyed

20 While she ................. the driving lesson, her father called her.

a) had
b) was having
c) has had
d) had had

## Unit (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Reham .................. with laughter at the joke that I told her.
a) sneezed  b) roared
c) frowned  d) pleased

2 I didn't know you have bought a new car. I .................. to see it in front of your house.
a) chanced  b) speeded
c) found  d) shrugged

3 I'm happy that there is a strong sense of .................. in our neighourhood.
a) society  b) smell
c) communication  d) community

4 Your son will be looked after here. Don't worry on that .................. .
a) goal  b) score
c) sense  d) wall

5 I've .................. everywhere for my gloves, but I can't find them.
a) hunted  b) found
c) caught  d) fished

6 At the airport, you need to .................. in two hours before the flight.
a) check  b) support
c) desire  d) admire

7 The newspaper reports about Moamen Zakaria showed him little .................. .
a) aim  b) charity
c) hunting  d) organisation

8 The United Nations decided that there should be .................. on the borders between the two countries.
a) monitors  b) killings
c) villagers  d) founders

9 Mr Hassan refused to join any political .................. after losing the last election.
a) society  b) charity
c) party  d) compassion

10 The little chairs are not made to .................. the weight of an adult.
a) suggest  b) support
c) restore  d) regard

**11** Look! This boy .................. 100 kilograms now.

a) weighing
b) is weighing
c) weighs
d) weigh

**12** .................. to you now?

a) Is this car belong
b) Is this car belonging
c) Do this car belong
d) Does this car belong

**13** I can't talk right now as I .................. really busy. I will call you later.

a) being
b) am
c) will be
d) was

**14** In Chapter One, Huda .................. Ali, and agrees to take part in the competition.

a) meet
b) met
c) meets
d) is meeting

**15** Mohamed Elneny .................. the ball to Salah who scores a goal.

a) is passing
b) passed
c) pass
d) passes

**16** Look! Here .................. your father at last!

a) come
b) comes
c) was coming
d) came

**17** Hard work .................. to success.

a) lead
b) is leading
c) is led
d) leads

**18** Never .................. his lessons hard.

a) he studies
b) he does study
c) does he study
d) he studied

**19** He .................. her way of talking to her children.

a) always criticise
b) criticises always
c) is always criticising
d) always is criticising

**20** Which sentence is in the Present Simple Tense?

a) We can fish in the new factory.
b) My mother will attend the party.
c) He read a new short story every day.
d) You are wasting your time.

## Unit (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I think I will .................. for the fried fish, after all.

a) choose
b) pump
c) plump
d) suggest

2 Hams was .................. in getting her brother a job.

a) instrumental
b) tool
c) instrument
d) devicable

3 It is hard to understand the workings of the party .................. .

a) instrument
b) tool
c) device
d) machine

4 The manager said that he needed the report on his desk on Monday at the .................. .

a) least
b) latest
c) last
d) late

5 It is hoped that the government will increase .................. on health care and education.

a) wasting
b) pumping
c) spending
d) forcing

6 Too much dust during the storm .................. my clothes and they needed cleaning.

a) stopped
b) dirtied
c) frowned
d) blew

7 We must .................. all our experience in solving this problem.

a) employ
b) imply
c) supply
d) reply

8 The team's victory today has .................. them a place in the finals.

a) gained
b) wanted
c) beat
d) earned

9 We didn't have any .................. when we sold our house. How miserable!

a) gain
b) win
c) losses
d) action

10 Hospitals today are far .................. from what they were 50 years ago.

a) similar
b) benefited
c) removed
d) employed

**11** I didn't notice the thief .................. I was watching the match.

a) during
b) since
c) for
d) just

**12** The couple .................. for 7 years when I met them. It was in 2015.

a) have married
b) married
c) have been married
d) had been married

**13** My father has worked in this company .................. 5 years ago.

a) during
b) since
c) for
d) just

**14** I haven't met my colleagues .................. the last conference.

a) during
b) since
c) for
d) just

**15** Was it the first time that you .................. been to London?

a) have ever
b) had ever
c) have never
d) are never

**16** I .................. a cake. Would you like some?

a) 've been to make
b) 've made
c) 'd been made
d) 'd been making

**17** I enjoyed the film as I saw many places I've never .................. .

a) gone
b) been to
c) been
d) arrived at

**18** I .................. football this afternoon and we lost 3-2.

a) played
b) had played
c) have played
d) was playing

**19** They have lived in Europe .................. fall.

a) during
b) since
c) for
d) just

**20** Samira is my best friend, I .................. her for 5 years now.

a) know
b) have known
c) have been knowing
d) am knowing

# Unit (4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I have got a whole .................. of things that I want to discuss with my boss.
a) behave b) host
c) guest d) debate

2 Our bus was late and so we missed our .................. .
a) communication b) contact
c) connection d) link

3 .................. of clothing were lying all over my daughter's room.
a) Articles b) Slices
c) Lists d) Grades

4 My offer was received rather .................. which made me angry.
a) cold b) eagerly
c) coldly d) eager

5 There should be more .................. on learning foreign languages in schools.
a) pressure b) press
c) stress d) practice

6 The female parrot sits on the eggs while her .................. hunts for food.
a) colleague b) matt
c) gate d) mate

7 The old woman was .................. an expression of delight on her face.
a) wearing b) dressing
c) putting on d) acting

8 There are two .................. in our local health centre and they are open 24 hours a day.
a) plays b) practices
c) locations d) positions

9 I feel very relaxed when I .................. my babies in my arms.
a) dress b) press
c) pinch d) nurse

10 The report about the starving children .................. many people to tears.
a) removed b) moved
c) made d) nursed

11 The police found the dead man's .................. including his will.

a) paper
b) a paper
c) papers
d) newspaper

12 Our teacher told us that during the exam, there is no .................. for mistakes.

a) a room
b) rooms
c) room
d) many rooms

13 My father once saved .................. one-year-old boy from a fire.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

14 My friend's father was .................. FBI agent when he was living in the U.S.A.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

15 By .................. day, I work as an office clerk, but at night, I work as a waiter.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

16 My brother lives next door to .................. Jacksons.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

17 I took last Friday off to go to the doctor. I spent .................. whole day sitting in his office.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

18 I'm staying at .................. Hilton Hotel near Tahrir Square.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

19 There were only .................. people in the meeting, so the manager cancelled it.

a) little
b) many
c) a few
d) few

20 We have hardly heard .................. news of her since she travelled abroad.

a) some
b) any
c) much
d) many

## Unit (5)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 He was exhausted as he had a lot of .................. .

a) application
b) communication
c) job
d) position

2 The explorers .................. their way through the jungle.

a) packed
b) broke
c) hacked
d) spaded

3 Everyone should .................. their children up when they go to school.

a) smarten
b) lighten
c) frighten
d) shorten

4 A bandage is necessary to .................. the flow of blood from the wound.

a) check
b) chalk
c) treat
d) cure

5 Once I'd found the missing letter, everything .................. into place.

a) checked
b) licked
c) clapped
d) clicked

6 This winter, the weather has been really .................. .

a) frightful
b) frightened
c) fright
d) frighten

7 My son likes healthy food and so he always .................. the cream of the milk before drinking it.

a) scans
b) skims
c) scams
d) unloads

8 Critics dismissed the speech as a political .................. for winning support.

a) gadget
b) machine
c) advice
d) device

9 The player said that he was not a football .................. as he made mistakes just like anyone else.

a) application
b) technology
c) machine
d) business

10 It's important for the intelligence to build up a .................. of professional spies abroad.

a) connection
b) business
c) device
d) network

**11** Look out! The girl is going to fall from the balcony. This means that the girl .................. from the balcony.

a) falls
b) has fallen
c) fell
d) is about to fall

**12** This museum will be 100 years old next month. This is a/an .................. .

a) intention
b) future fact
c) arrangement
d) future plan

**13** It was predicted that he .................. his neighbours with their problems.

a) will help
b) was helping
c) was going to help
d) would help

**14** Lots of lightning and thunder doesn't necessarily mean it .................. .

a) is going to rain
b) will rain
c) rains
d) is raining

**15** Being clever, she .................. high marks in the exams.

a) will get
b) is going to get
c) is getting
d) gets

**16** The company is making losses. It .................. soon.

a) will close
b) closes
c) is closing
d) is going to close

**17** We think that in the future all shopping .................. on the internet.

a) will be doing
b) will be done
c) will have done
d) will do

**18** A: .................. to the zoo this week? B: OK, it is a good idea.

a) Might we go
b) Are we going
c) Are we going to go
d) Shall we go

**19** We must hurry. The train .................. and we will miss it.

a) is leaves
b) leaves
c) is about to leave
d) going to leave

**20** At 10 o'clock tomorrow, my brother .................. the match on TV.

a) will be watching
b) watches
c) going to watch
d) would watch



# Unit (6)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1** Newspapers have .................. up some facts about the famous actor's private life.

a) plug b) dug
c) drill d) done

**2** Have you got any .................. on opening a new school in Cairo?

a) literature b) culture
c) tradition d) chaos

**3** He was arrested for .................. against the government.

a) protecting b) making
c) stealing d) plotting

**4** ..................! I will give you a lift to your workplace.

a) Get off b) Take in
c) Run into d) Hop in

**5** Please, .................. me off for a while. I want to finish my work.

a) lie b) lay
c) drop d) take

**6** I am really .................. with the idea of moving to Cairo for a year.

a) toying b) playing
c) making d) doing

**7** He .................. his entire savings on the project, but he thinks it is hard to make a profit.

a) adventured b) earned
c) gained d) owed

**8** Please, be .................. and get to the point. We do not have much time for further details.

a) shorten up b) brief
c) shut up d) abbreviate

**9** People with .................. skin are more likely to get a sunburn.

a) dark b) black
c) fine d) fair

**10** They came to .................. the driveway today to make it available for walking.

a) discover b) gravel
c) ease d) prove

**11** **Which sentence of the following is CORRECT?**

a) I prefer eating fish than meat.

b) I'd rather to study in the early morning.

c) I regret not to visit my uncle yesterday.

d) I remember friends criticising my style of clothes.

**12** **A: Why .................. to Alexandria together? B: It's a good idea.**

a) go
b) to go
c) not go
d) going

**13** **My mobile needn't .................. . It works well.**

a) repair
b) repairing
c) be repaired
d) repaired

**14** **Let's .................. noise because the baby is asleep.**

a) make
b) making
c) not to make
d) not make

**15** **He was made .................. to the police.**

a) lie
b) lying
c) to lie
d) to lying

**16** **I heard Dr Magdy Yacoub talking on the radio. This means that .................. .**

a) I heard nothing he said
b) I heard everything he didn't say
c) I heard everything he said
d) I heard part of what he said

**17** **Try using this medicine. This means that .................. .**

a) I know this medicine must work

b) I know this medicine won't work

c) I hope this medicine won't work

d) I want you to use it and see what will happen

**18** **Why do you go on .................. us the same stories again and again?**

a) to tell
b) telling
c) to telling
d) tell

**19** **I .................. sleep late to keep fit.**

a) would rather to not
b) wouldn't rather
c) would rather don't
d) would rather not

**20** **The little boy was clinging to his mother's leg .................. that he wanted a candy bar.**

a) screams
b) screaming
c) to scream
d) to screaming

# Answers — Advanced General Exercises

## Unit 1

1. b) on the quiet — بمعنى (سرًا).
2. d) sound — تعبير بمعنى يستطلع رأيًا sound (sb) out.
3. c) In isolation — بمعنى (بمعزل عن – بشكل منفصل).
4. a) lean — بمعنى نحيف – قليل اللحم.
5. d) pet — بمعنى شخص مدلل.
6. a) swelled — بمعنى استشاط غضبًا.
7. d) swell-headed — بمعنى مغرور.
8. d) resort — تعبير بمعنى يلجأ إلى resort to.
9. b) keep my distance — تعبير بمعنى ينأى بنفسه.
10. d) remote — بمعنى انطوائى.
11. c) was — لأن v. to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار b.
12. c) I was studying — لأن الفاعلين فى الجملتين مختلفان فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار a.
13. d) While in — أصل الجملة While I was in Hurghada.
- وتم حذف while I was لوجود حرف جر وفقًا للملحوظة التى تم شرحها فى الوحدة بالتفصيل.
14. d) got used to — لأنه جاء بعدها noun phrase.
15. b) isn't — الأمنية هنا فى المضارع لذلك استخدم زمن الماضى البسيط بعد wish والأمنية فى المضارع تعبر عن عكس الواقع.
16. a) is used to — لأنه جاء بعدها noun phrase.
17. b) tasted — الفعل taste هنا جاء بمعنى ذى مذاق ولا يستخدم مع المستمر.
18. d) being examined — الفاعل محذوف والفعل مبنى للمجهول لذلك يتبع بـ being + P.P.
19. d) enjoyed — لأنه لا يمكن استخدام used to مع last night.
20. b) was having — تم استخدام الفعل have فى المستمر لأنه هنا بمعنى يتلقى دروسًا فى القيادة.

## Unit 2

1. b) roared — بمعنى يقهقه (يضحك بصوت عالٍ).
2. a) chanced — يصادف أن chance to + inf.
3. d) community — تعبير بمعنى روح الجماعة sense of community.
4. b) score — تعبير بمعنى من هذه الناحية on that score.
5. a) hunted — بمعنى يبحث عن أو يفتش.

**6. a)** check

- تعبير يفيد تأكيد الوصول فى مطار أو فندق check in.

**7. b)** charity

- بمعنى تعاطف.

**8. a)** monitors

- بمعنى مراقبين.

**9. c)** party

- بمعنى حزب سياسى.

**10. b)** support

- بمعنى يتحمل وزنًا.

**11. c)** weighs

- الفعل weigh لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة هنا لأنه جاء بمعنى (ذى وزن).

**12. d)** Does this car belong

- الفعل belong لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

**13. b)** am

- v. to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

**14. c)** meets

- عند سرد الأحداث فى قصة أو رواية أو فيلم (أى عمل أدبى أو فنى) نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

**15. d)** passes

- فى التعليقات الرياضية نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

**16. b)** comes

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات مثل here.

**17. d)** leads

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع المقولات المنطقية والحكم والأمثال.

**18. c)** does he study

- عند بداية الجملة بـ Never تتبع بـ + فعل مساعد + فاعل ...

**19. c)** is always criticising

- هنا تم استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الضيق أو الشكوى.

**20. a)** We can fish in the new factory.

- الفعل can هنا بمعنى (يُعلِّب) وليس بمعنى يستطيع.

## Unit 3

**1. c)** plump for

- بمعنى يختار أو يقرر أن يتناول.

**2. a)** instrumental

- بمعنى لها دور فعال.

**3. d)** machine

- بمعنى (تنظيم – هيئة).

**4. b)** latest

- بمعنى فى أبعد حد at the latest.

**5. c)** spending

- بمعنى الإنفاق.

**6. b)** dirtied

- بمعنى جعلها متسخة.

**7. a)** employ

- بمعنى يوظف.

**8. d)** earned

- بمعنى (يستحق – يحقق له).

**9. a)** gain

- بمعنى مكسب.

**10. c)** removed

- بمعنى مختلف عن.

11. b) since

- استخدمت كلمة since هنا بمعنى (بسبب) since = because

12. d) had been married

- فى حالة وجود كلمة دالة على المضارع التام وإشارة للماضى نستخدم الماضى التام بدلًا من المضارع التام.

13. b) since

- ago + مدة زمنية + since

14. b) since

- since هنا جاءت مع the last لوجود اسم بعدها وليس مدة زمنية.

15. b) had ever

- It was the first time تستخدم مع الماضى التام على عكس It is the first time تستخدم مع المضارع التام.

16. b) 've made

- معنى الجملة يعنى أنه تم الانتهاء من عمل الحلوى.

17. b) been to

18. a) played

- هناك دليل على أن وقت اللعب كان فى الماضى بدليل انتهاء المباراة بخسارتنا لها.

19. b) since

- كلمة fall هنا تعنى (فصل الخريف)

20. b) have known

- الفعل know لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.



## Unit 4

1. b) host — بمعنى عدد هائل.
2. c) connection — بمعنى تواصل.
3. a) Articles — بمعنى قطع.
4. c) coldly — بمعنى (بفتور).
5. c) stress — بمعنى (تأكيد).
6. d) mate — بمعنى (قرين – شريك).
7. a) wearing

- يبدو عليه wear an expression

8. b) practices — بمعنى (عيادة – مكتب محاماة).
9. d) nurse — بمعنى (يحتضن شخصًا).
10. b) moved — بمعنى (يحرك المشاعر).
11. c) papers — يقصد بها هنا وثائق أو مستندات.
12. c) room

- كلمة room هنا ليست بمعنى حجرة there is no room for mistakes معناها لا مجال للأخطاء.

13. a) a

- كلمة one بادئة بصوت ساكن وليس متحركا واستخدام أداة النكرة هنا لأن one-year-old صفة وجاء بعدها اسم موصوف مفرد.

14. b) an

- مع الاختصارات البادئة بصوت متحرك.

15. c) the

16. c) the

- إذا جاءت the قبل اسم شخص جمع فيعنى هنا اسم العائلة.

17. c) the

- كلمة the whole day تعنى اليوم بأكمله.

18. c) the

19. c) a few

- التعبير only a دائمًا ما يتبع بـ

a few - مع الأسماء المعدودة.

a little -مع الأسماء غير المعدودة.

20. b) any

لوجود كلمة hardly بمعنى تقريبًا لا hardly any = almost no

## Unit 5

1. a) application - بمعنى مثابرة أو جهد.
2. c) hacked - بمعنى يشق طريقه.
3. a) smarten

- بمعنى يهندم smarten (sb) up.

4. a) check - بمعنى يبطئ – يوقف.
5. d) clicked - بمعنى يتضح الأمر فجأة.
6. a) frightful - بمعنى سيئ جدًا – فظيع.
7. b) skims - بمعنى يقشد – ينزع «الوش».
8. d) device - بمعنى حيلة – وسيلة.
9. c) machine - بمعنى ماكينة أهداف.
10. d) network

- هنا بمعنى شبكة من الجواسيس المحترفين.

11. d) is about to fall

- الجملة تعنى أن البنت على وشك السقوط.

12. b) future fact

- الحقيقة فى المستقبل تستخدم أحيانًا للتعبير عن العمر أو السن.

13. d) would help

- لوجود was predicted وهى فى زمن الماضى فيستخدم معها would.

14. a) is going to rain
15. a) will get

- being clever هنا لا تعتبر دليلًا لأنها قائمة على الرأى الشخصى وليس على شىء مرئى ملموس.

16. d) is going to close

- الشركة تحقق خسائر تعتبر دليلًا على قرب إغلاق الشركة مستقبلًا.

17. b) will be done - الجملة مبنية للمجهول.
18. d) Shall we go

**19. c)** is about to leave

- القطار هنا على وشك المغادرة.

**20. a)** will be watching

- تم تحديد وقت مع كلمة دالة على المستقبل فهنا نستخدم زمن المستقبل المستمر.



## Unit 6

**1. b)** dug

- dig up بمعنى ينبش عن معلومات.

**2. a)** literature

- بمعنى منشورات – مطبوعات.

**3. d)** plotting

- plot against بمعنى يتآمر على.

**4. d)** Hop in

- بمعنى يركب السيارة بسرعة.

**5. b)** lay

- lay ... off يـدَع شخصًا – وشأنه.

**6. a)** toying

- toy with تداعبه فكرة.

**7. a)** adventured

- غامر بـ.

**8. b)** brief

- بمعنى مختصر.

**9. d)** fair

- بمعنى بشرة فاتحة اللون.

**10. b)** gravel

- بمعنى يضع التربة الزلطية لطريق.

**11. d)** I remember friends criticising my style of clothes.

**12. c)** not go

- يستخدم why not + inf للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

**13. c)** be repaired

- الجملة هنا مبنية للمجهول لذلك جاء بعدها .be + P.P

**14. d)** not make

- تتبع let's بالمصدر وعند النفى .not + inf

**15. c)** to lie

- كلمة make عند استخدامها فى المبنى للمجهول تتبع بـ .to + inf

**16. d)** I heard part of what he said.

- كلمة hear عندما تتبع بـ v-ing تعنى أن الحدث لا يتم بأكمله بل تم جزء منه فقط.

**17. d)** I want you to use it and see what will happen

**18. b)** telling

- go on إذا جاء بعدها v-ing تعنى الاستمرار فى عمل نفس الفعل دون تغيير.

**19. d)** would rather not

- would rather تتبع بالمصدر وعند النفى .not + inf

**20. b)** screaming

- الفعل screaming هنا بمعنى صارخًا.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٣/١٠٨٣٧

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٤٣/٢/١٢/١٠٤




AL ADWAA
Gem
1st SEC
FIRST TERM
READING & LISTENING
NEW HELLO!
2024

## Reading Text

### Ecotourism[1] – is this the future?

**What is ecotourism?**



Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered[2] and isolated[3]. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact[4] on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.

Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem[5] (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist[6] anywhere else in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.


(1) السياحة البيئية


(2) مهدد بالخطر


(3) معزول


(4) تأثير محدود


(5) النظام البيئى


(6) تتواجد

(7) فريد

(8) مستدام

(9) المكان المقصود/مقصد

(10) الحياة البرية



The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique[7] animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable[8]. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination[9]. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife[10], including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.





# Listening Text

**Luca** : Last summer, I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends, but to do something different.

**Klara** : So, where did you go?

**Luca** : Well, as I am studying biology[1], I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans[2] there. So, I booked a holiday with an eco-tourism company and went to Borneo.

**Klara** : What was it like?

**Luca** : A bit of disaster although I did love the rainforests[3]. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight to Borneo. But my luggage[4] never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre. And while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera!

**Klara** : Oh, no! Did you manage to get it back?

**Luca** : No way! The river is really deep, so I just had to leave it. But I was very annoyed[5]. But at least, I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre, so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced[6] us to the people working there. And then, we had dinner.

**Klara** : What was the food like?

**Luca** : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish, though. As I was so hungry.

**Klara** : Well, I am glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater anymore. What did you do every day?

**Luca** : We got up at about six every morning as that is when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked[7] into the forest to learn about orangutans from the people who were looking after them.

**Klara**: Did you feed them?

**Luca** : No, they're wild animals not pets. We just observe them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.

**Klara**: So, what happened?

**Luca** : I had to go to a hospital, but as the nearest hospital was 200 kilometres away, I had to go by a helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre. But as soon as I got back, I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook, he didn't clean the fish properly[8] and everybody was sick. I am staying at home this summer.

(1) علم الأحياء
(2) إنسان الغاب
(3) الغابات المطيرة
(4) أمتعة
(5) منزعج
(6) قدَّم
(7) ترجّل
(8) بشكل مناسب

# Workbook Text

## A popular problem!

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals[1], colourful carnivals[2], amazing plazas[3] and historic buildings. However, the city is a victim of its own beauty. Venice has a population of only 55,000 but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism creates[4] a lot of jobs for the local population, but also causes[5] many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships[6] can damage the historic buildings. The narrow[7] streets can be very crowded[8] and it is difficult for local people to move around the city.

The local council are trying to find a solution which keeps both the tourists and local residents[9] happy. They are also trying to encourage tourists to visit other beautiful sites around Venice.

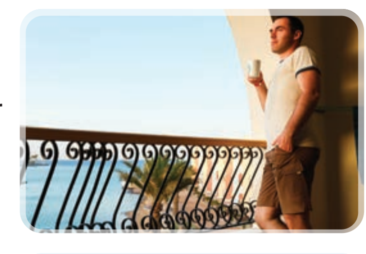
(1) قنوات مائية
(2) كرنفالات
(3) ساحات عامة
(4) يخلق
(5) يسبب
(6) سفن سياحية
(7) ضيق
(8) مزدحم
(9) سكان

# Unit 1

# Lessons 3 & 4

## Reading Text (1)

This is me on our hotel balcony[1] in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant[2] here and there are loads[3] of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.





My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers[4] at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing[5] and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples[6] there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating[7] and am really glad we went there.

(1) بلكونة
(2) رائع
(3) كميات
(4) مراهقون
(5) مريح
(6) معابد
(7) ساحر/خلاب

## Reading Text (2)

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored[1] – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck[2] here at home. The weather's awful[3] and there's nothing to do.



Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce[4] in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening[5] – maybe I'll have a new hobby!

(1) شاعر بالملل
(2) عالق
(3) فظيع
(4) نبات الخس
(5) أعمال الحديقة

# Reading Text (3)

**a)** As I was photographing[1] the castle, my little brother started crying.
**b)** We walked around Lisbon and I took lots of photos.
**c)** We went to the shops, they are a bit[2] expensive but my mum was happy.
**d)** My uncle met us at the airport and drove us to the old part of town. It's very quiet and peaceful.
**e)** We sailed[3] along the river to see the sun going down[4]. It was beautiful and very relaxing!
**f)** We went to Europe to visit my cousins in Portugal.
**g)** My uncle decided to take us to a restaurant for lunch.
**h)** He was eating an ice cream and a bird stole it! He was very upset[5].

(1) يصور
(2) قليل
(3) أبحر
(4) تغرب
(5) منزعج

# Workbook Text

## Holidays Adverts

**A beach break**

Do you want to relax in a quiet and peaceful[1] place? Escape from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind[2]. Visit this amazing paradise[3]. Enjoy the sunshine[4] on isolated beaches and swim in clean, clear water.

**Adventure time**

Are you tired of the same old, boring places? Are you looking for an active holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving[5], then day two takes you climbing[6] in the beautiful Alpine mountains[7].

**Eco-trip**

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller[8]. You can go trekking through the Andes[9] and explore[10] ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide[11]. You can enjoy peace and quiet or you can meet the local people, all without damaging the environment.

**A cruise to remember**

Why not take a calm cruise around the Caribbean? On board our modern cruise ship, you can enjoy great food and forget your worries[12] in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets and see many unusual sights[13].

(1) آمن/مسالم
(2) خلف
(3) جنة
(4) إشراق (نور) الشمس
(5) غوص
(6) تسلق
(7) جبال الألب
(8) مسافر
(9) جبال الأنديز
(10) يكتشف
(11) مرشد
(12) مخاوف
(13) مشاهد

## Video Script (Unit 1)

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact[1] they have on the place they're visiting?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with[2] tourists think about how tourism affects[3] their cities. They consider the advantages and disadvantages. They try to help local people cope with[4] lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising[5] the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community[6] of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport[7] if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate[8] of each other!

(1) تأثير
(2) معروف بـ
(3) يؤثر
(4) يتعامل مع
(5) يعلن
(6) مجتمع
(7) المواصلات العامة
(8) محترم لرغبات الآخرين



# Unit 2

# Lessons 1 & 2

## Reading Text (1)

### People who help

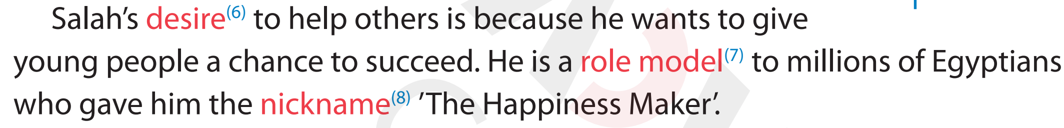
#### Mohamed Salah



Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired[1] for his speed and ability[2] to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

Salah has been praised[3] for his kind and generous[4] donations to charity in Egypt. He donated[5] money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire[6] to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model[7] to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname[8] 'The Happiness Maker'.



(1) يُحترم
(2) القدرة
(3) امتُدح
(4) كريم/سخى
(5) تبرع
(6) رغبة
(7) مثل أعلى/قدوة
(8) لقب/كنية

## Reading Text (2)

### Blood donors



Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day[1] to share information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured[2] or need regular blood transplants[3] because they have a long-term[4] illness.

Giving blood can also have health benefits[5]. All donors have their blood pressure[6] and iron levels[7] checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can save[8] lives and it is easy to do!

(1) اليوم العالمى للتبرع بالدم
(2) مصاب
(3) زراعة خلايا الدم (النخاع)
(4) طويل الأمد
(5) فوائد
(6) ضغط الدم
(7) مستويات الحديد
(8) ينقذ



# Listening Text

***Interviewer:*** In today's programme we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation[1] biologist and founder[2] of Lion Guardians, a conservation project[3] in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?

***Martin*** **:** Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring[4] at night when he was sleeping on the roof of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up[5], she would find out how to save them in other countries.

***Interviewer:*** What happened next?

***Martin*** **:** She went to America to study conservation biology[6] and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing[7]. Did you know that sixty or fifty years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

***Interviewer:*** So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

***Martin*** **:** There are several reasons. People have built houses in the areas that lions traditionally[8] hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack[9] the villagers' livestock[10], you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is prestige[11] – in Maasai culture, young men get a lot of respect[12] from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

***Interviewer*** **:** What did Leelah do?

***Martin*** **:** She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views[13] about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions; they admire their beauty but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer[14] and realised that she needed to persuade[15] the young men that

(1) محافظة على البيئة
(2) مؤسس
(3) مشروع
(4) يزأر (صوت الأسد)
(5) يكبر
(6) علم حماية الأحياء
(7) يختفي
(8) تقليديًا
(9) يهجم
(10) ماشية
(11) هيبة
(12) احترام
(13) الآراء
(14) قاتل
(15) يقنع

keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages[16] of protecting lions instead.

***Interviewer*** **:** Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

***Martin*** **:** Yes. Lion Guardians is an organisation that employs local people[17] to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track[18] lions in the wild, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

***Interviewer*** **:** How successful is the programme?

***Martin*** **:** Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income[19] and a sense of purpose[20]. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness[21].

***Interviewer*** **:** And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians?

***Martin*** **:** The importance of listening to people in the community[22] and to recognise how much knowledge[23] local people have. By working together both the locals and conservations can benefit.

***Interviewer*** **:** Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ...

(16) مزايا

(17) السكان المحليين

(18) يتتبع

(19) دخل منتظم

(20) الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية

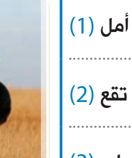
(21) شغف/حب

(22) مجتمع

(23) معرفة

## Reading Text

### Working together

Lions are disappearing all over Africa but there is some hope[(1)] now after the amazing work of an organisation called Lion Guardians, which is based[(2)] in Kenya, but Guardians help in nearby[(3)] Tanzania. The aim of Lion Guardians is to help local people to protect their own livestock[(4)] and reduce the number of lion killings in the area.

Cattle[(5)] are important to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions. Then the lions are killed as villagers worry about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing local people. Maasai men are chosen to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills needed to monitor[(6)] their movements, find missing livestock and stop hunting parties[(7)] who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field biologists[(8)] and are given a sense of responsibility.

Lions are monitored every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure their cows are safe.

Lion Guardians are very successful. They help the future of lions as well as the local communities.

(1) أمل

(2) تقع

(3) مجاور

(4) ماشية

(5) ماشية

(6) يراقب

(7) حفلات الصيد

(8) علماء الأحياء

# Workbook Text

## Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts at tracking[1] animals and lions are the most well-known animals that they follow. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their senses[2] to follow them.

When a paw print[3] is discovered, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent[4] one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs[5] to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties[6] and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

(1) تتبع
(2) حواس
(3) اثر (بصمة) مخلب
(4) حديث
(5) إشارات
(6) جماعات الصيد

## Video Script (Unit 2)

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities[1], children and teenagers[2] volunteer[3] to support older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other tasks[4] around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation[5].

But what about the young people? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

(1) مجتمعات
(2) مراهقون
(3) يتطوع
(4) مهام
(5) جيل


0:00



Unit 3

# Lessons 1 & 2

## Reading Text

### David Copperfield

'This is Mr Quinion, David,' Mr Murdstone said. 'You're going to work for him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants[1], in London. You'll earn[2] enough money to pay for your food, and I've arranged[3] a place for you to live.'




I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work. I went to a dirty old house near the river where rats[4] lived under the floors. There my job was to wash empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated[5] it.

One morning, a plump man[6] came to see me with Mr Quinion.

'Ah, Master Copperfield!' the man said 'This is Mr Micawber,' Mr Quinion told me. 'You will be living at his house.'

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin, tired-looking lady – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins[7], and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor and that Mr Micawber owed[8] money to several[9] people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison because of his debts[10]. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends[11] nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be miserable[12].'

(1) تجار

(2) يكسب

(3) رتب

(4) فئران

(5) كرهت

(6) رجل ممتلئ الجسم

(7) توءمان

(8) مدين

(9) كثير من

(10) ديون

(11) ينفق

(12) تعيس



# Listening Text



Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant[1] books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller[2]. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain[3] people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions[4] about the world they lived in. He hoped[5] his readers would then do something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood[6]. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison[7]. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed[8] support for most poor people so their lives were hard. When he wrote *David Copperfield* between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded[9]. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In *David Copperfield*, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest[10] and good and deserved[11] to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had an unhappy end.

(1) رائع
(2) روائي
(3) يسلي
(4) آراء
(5) تمنى
(6) مرحلة الطفولة
(7) سجن
(8) أزال
(9) كُوفئوا
(10) صادق
(11) استحق

# Workbook Text

The book character[1] David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual[2] for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay[3] their debts[4]. Factories liked to have children working for[5] them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults[6]. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were small so they could go under machines when they broke. The children were often miserable[7]. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity[8] to improve their lives. However, some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky[9] ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

(1) شخصية

(2) غير مألوف

(3) يدفع

(4) ديون

(5) يعمل لدى

(6) البالغون

(7) تعساء

(8) فرصة

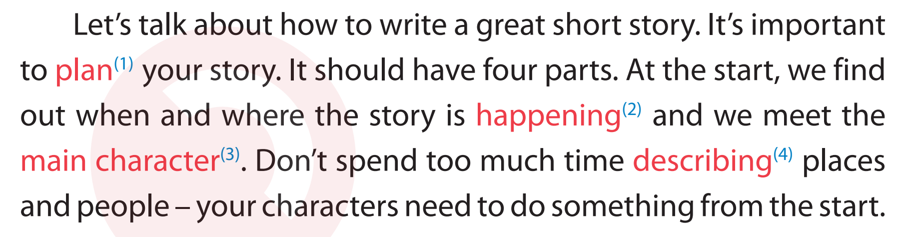
(9) سعداء الحظ




# Lessons 3 & 4



## Listening Text



Let's talk about how to write a great short story. It's important to plan[1] your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening[2] and we meet the main character[3]. Don't spend too much time describing[4] places and people – your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise[5] for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

(1) يخطط
(2) يحدث
(3) الشخصية الرئيسة
(4) يصف
(5) مفاجأة

## Workbook Text (1)

David Copperfield grew up with his mother and his stepfather[1], Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave[2] school and work in a factory[3]. Then Mr Micawber went to prison[4] and David had nowhere to live. Without a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter, Agnes, but David didn't trust[5] him. Some time later, Uriah Heep played a trick[6] on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her. When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted[7] that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made[8] him give it back to her. Then David went travelling around Europe.

When David returned to England, he married Agnes and he became a successful writer.

(1) زوج الأم
(2) يترك
(3) مصنع
(4) سجن
(5) يثق
(6) خدع
(7) اعترف
(8) أجبر

# Workbook Text (2)

***Tarek*** **:** In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank[1] (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough money for food, and it teaches[2] all of us to think more.

***Samira:*** I have experienced[3] the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer Youth Association[4]. In my opinion, it shows young people that they can make a difference[5], and it teaches them about other cultures[6] and communities. They are doing a great job by helping to educate[7] a lot of young people.

***Maher*** **:** The Egyptian Red Crescent[8] helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work[9] for them.






## Video Script (Unit 3)

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt[1] so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them. They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose[2] them, so, they painted[3] pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember[4] it because they'll feel an emotional connection[5] to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch[6] a thousand lives.

| |
|---|
| (1) يصطاد |
| (2) يفقد/يخسر |
| (3) رسم |
| (4) يتذكر |
| (5) رابط عاطفى |
| (6) تؤثر على |

0:00

# Revision (1)

## Reading Text (1)

### Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces. She was world champion of the squash World Open in 2017, when she beat another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice reached the final in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition as an adult in 2009. She is now married to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles, but it is her success at squash that has inspired many young Egyptians to play the game.

## Reading Text (2)

### Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer. He is a strong player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team more than 60 times. He has scored more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved from his boyhood club Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland and joined Basel, one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.

He is still good friends with Salah. 'I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning and he has not changed,' he says.

## Reading Text (3)

Why write a long book when you can write a short story? A short story can have 200 words or less. The writer can't describe many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle and an end to the story. And the story needs to be interesting, so we include important information and an interesting main character, but perhaps only one. In fact, it can be interesting to write in the first person (I did this …) and then the person telling the story is the main character.

Readers can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise, a problem or something that goes wrong. Readers don't always find out what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine the end of the story.

## Listening Text



**Presenter :** Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

***Adam*** **:** Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday.

Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists know that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are having. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them.

Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

***Lara*** **:** My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea.

These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs!

The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned
a lot more about conservation, too.

***Munir*** **:** I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!

# Reading Text (1)

## New in town

It's day one at a new school in a new town[1]. You've got all the paper and pens you need. You're wearing cool new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels so hard[2] because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed[3], but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Don't take it for granted[4] that other students will start a conversation[5].

Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try asking them about their favourite subjects or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal[6] questions.

You can only make friends if you spend[7] time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports[8] you like. Go online or look at the noticeboard at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates[9] will feel connected to you and that connection could become a friendship.

(1) مدينة

(2) صعب

(3) مضغوط

(4) يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه

(5) محادثة

(6) شخصي

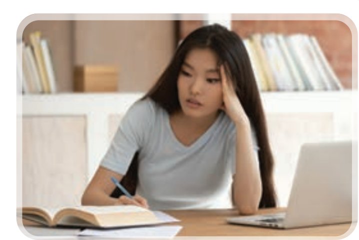
(7) يقضي

(8) يمارس رياضة جماعية

(9) أعضاء الفريق

While you're busy talking to other students, don't forget to study. Remember to do your homework so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

# Reading Text (2)



**To** : problems@teen-magazine.com

**Subject:** Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!

**Dear Aunt Carol,**

I think it is difficult[1] to make friends.

I don't have any friends at my new school. I am always on my own[2] at break-time[3]. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

(1) صعب

(2) وحدى/بمفردى

(3) فترة استراحة






**To** : problems@teen-magazine.com

**Subject:** Help! I'm really stressed!

**Dear Aunt Carol,**

I always work very hard[1] at school, but I'm really stressed about some exams I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very difficult. The last[2] exam is in a subject I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library[3] this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better[4].

I need some advice about how to relax[5], please.

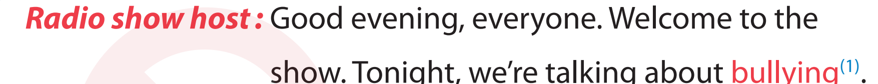
(1) باجتهاد

(2) الأخير

(3) مكتبة

(4) يشعر بتحسن

(5) يسترخي



## Listening Text (1)

**Radio show host :** Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about bullying[1]. Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects[2] on them. We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali ... are you on the line?

**Ali :** Hi, Seleem. How are you?

**Radio show host :** I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

**Ali :** I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid[3] my rucksack[4]. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

**Radio show host:** Oh, no! That's terrible[5]. Did you tell a teacher?

**Ali :** No, I didn't. I was too scared[6]. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

**Radio show host :** Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies[7] and make it clear that they shouldn't behave like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue[8].

**Ali :** Yes … you're right ... There's one teacher that I get along well with[9]. I'll talk to him.

(1) تنمر/بلطجة
(2) أثار سلبية
(3) أخفى
(4) حقيبة ظهر
(5) رهيب
(6) مفزوع
(7) المتنمرون
(8) يستمر
(9) يتناغم بشكل جيد مع



## Listening Text (2)

***Ola*** : So, do you think moving[1] to a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers[2]?

***Lina*** : As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends.

***Ola*** : I'm not so sure about that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations[3] with them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

***Lina*** : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time. You'll be really lonely[4] for the first few months.

***Ola*** : In my opinion, it's a good experience to have because it makes you stronger.

***Lina*** : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer[5] to just stay with the people I know.

(1) الانتقال

(2) مراهقون

(3) محادثات

(4) وحيدًا

(5) يفضل

## Workbook Text

Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however, he borrowed[1] my phone without asking. Then he dropped[2] the phone. Fortunately[3], the phone did not break but I was very angry with him. Now he's not talking to me.

**Maged**

Fawzi always gets good marks at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh[4]. Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more.

**Omar**

There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media. Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today she was pointing[5] at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

**Hoda**

(1) استلف

(2) أوقع

(3) لحسن الحظ

(4) يضحك

(5) تشير إلى

## Workbook Text

### Internet use in Egypt

Every year, more and more people are connected[1] to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey[2] found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication[3] so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films.

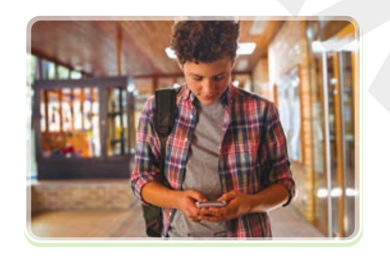
Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand[4] the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried[5] about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked[6].

(1) متصل
(2) دراسة حديثة
(3) تواصل
(4) يفهم
(5) قلق
(6) يتعرض للقرصنة

## Reading Text

### The Internet of Things

#### Linking[1] the world



Communication is no longer[2] about people talking to one another, but about machines talking to machines. This is known as the Internet of Things (IOT). Technology is developing so fast that experts[3] believe everyone will be connected to the IOT in a few years.

(1) ربط/اتصال
(2) لم يعد
(3) خبراء

## Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already, people can control their heating[4] and lighting[5] from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish bins need to be emptied[6] and control how much water we use!

## No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones, but imagine[7] if you can get a driverless[8] car to come and collect you using an app on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric[9] and much cleaner than petrol ones. Experts think our roads will be safer as there will be fewer accidents using driverless cars.

## Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet. Computers collect information about people and businesses which criminals[10] can steal. They use this information to hack into[11] organisations like hospitals, power stations and airports, and cause[12] major security problems.

(4) تدفئة/تسخين

(5) إضاءة

(6) تفرغ

(7) تخيل

(8) بلا سائق

(9) كهربى

(10) مجرمون

(11) يخترق/يقرصن

(12) يسبب

# Unit 5

# Lessons 3 & 4

## Reading Text

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert[1] for a free game. I clicked[2] on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details[3]. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam[4]!

My dad was furious[5] because they stole money from his bank account[6] and my computer stopped working properly[7]! Don't click on links you don't recognise[8] and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use antivirus software to stop thieves!

(1) إعلان
(2) ينقر
(3) تفاصيل
(4) احتيال
(5) غاضب
(6) حساب بنكى
(7) بشكل مناسب
(8) يتعرف على



## Listening Text



**Hassan :** Last week, I was reading about a new online game and saw an advert[1] that said I could get this game for free[2]. All I had to do was complete a form[3] with my name, email address and credit card[4] details. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course it was a scam[5].They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

(1) إعلان
(2) مجانًا
(3) استمارة
(4) كارت ائتمان
(5) حيلة/خدعة

**2**

***Laila*** : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers(6) often look online to see what we've posted(7), so I decided to google(8) my name to see what they might find. It was scary(9). All the photos and the 'funny' comments I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete them. I didn't realise it's almost impossible to remove(10) personal data from the internet.

**3**

***Saeed*** : I love reading my friend's social media posts, but some people write really horrible(11) things about other teenagers(12). One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments(13) about how he looked and how ugly his bike is. I couldn't believe it! These kids would never, never bully my friend at school, so why do it online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!

(6) أرباب العمل
(7) نشر
(8) يبحث في جوجل
(9) مخيف
(10) يزيل
(11) فظيع
(12) مراهقون
(13) تعليقات وقحة

## Video Script (Unit 5)

Sometimes teenagers experience(1) bullying because they look different, have different abilities(2) or different opinions and experiences. If you think someone is being bullied, what should you do? Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer(3) to help the person tell their parents. You can keep a note(4) of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully about everything they have done. Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour(5). Spend time talking and socialising(6) with them to help them build new friendships. Invite them to join your friends. Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

(1) يتعرض لـ
(2) قدرات
(3) يعرض
(4) يدون ملاحظات
(5) سلوك/تصرف
(6) يختلط اجتماعيًا

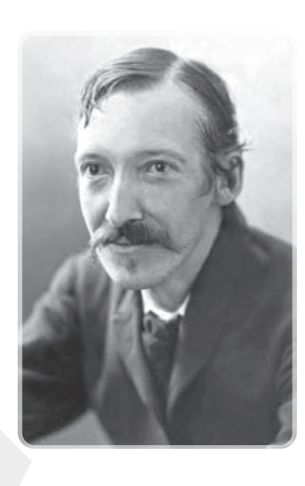




0:00




## Reading Text



Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died[1] 44 years later in Samoa, a small island[2] in the South Pacific. He was not always well[3] because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer[4] at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time[5] writer.

(1) مات
(2) جزيرة
(3) بصحة جيدة
(4) محامٍ
(5) دوام كامل
(6) أدفأ
(7) فترة من الوقت
(8) قراصنة

He often travelled to warmer[6] places to try to improve his health. For a while[7] he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels, like *Kidnapped* and *Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books. His first successful novel was *Treasure Island* – an adventure story about pirates[8]. His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films.

# Reading Text

## The Gardener



The gardener[1] does not love to talk,
He makes me keep the gravel[2] walk;
And when he puts his tools[3] away,
He locks[4] the door and takes the key.

Away behind the currant row[5],
Where no one else but cook may go,
Far in the plots[6], I see him dig[7],
Old and serious[8], brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor wishes to be spoken to.
He digs the flowers and cuts the hay[9],
And never seems to want to play.

(1) الجناينى/البستانى
(2) الحصى
(3) أدوات
(4) يغلق
(5) صف من العنب (الزبيب)
(6) قطع أرض زراعية
(7) يحفر
(8) جاد
(9) القش



# Listening Text



***Teacher*** : This week we're studying the Scottish writer[1], Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular[2] his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard[3] about him or read any of his works?

***Nesma*** : Didn't he write *Treasure Island*? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring[4], so I decided to watch the film instead.

***Teacher*** : Did you like it?

***Nesma*** : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure[5] films and I enjoy reading adventure stories too. I just found *Treasure Island* a bit difficult.

***Teacher*** : Well it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and *Treasure Island* was published[6] in 1881. And Waafa, have you read any of his books?

***Wafaa*** : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic[7] stories and poems.

***Teacher*** : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell[8]. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing *Treasure Island* while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection[9] of poems called *A Child's Garden of Verses* and he also travelled a lot to get away[10] from the cold Scottish weather.

(1) كاتب

(2) بشكل خاص

(3) سمع

(4) ممل

(5) مغامرة

(6) نشر

(7) رومانسى

(8) مريض

(9) مجموعة

(10) يبتعد

**Nesma** : Where did he go?

**Teacher** : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland mainly. In fact, his first book was about his travels[11] in France. He and his family loved sailing[12] and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

Now for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or poem by Stevenson and bring[13] it to class to discuss[14]. Then...

(11) رحلات

(12) إبحار

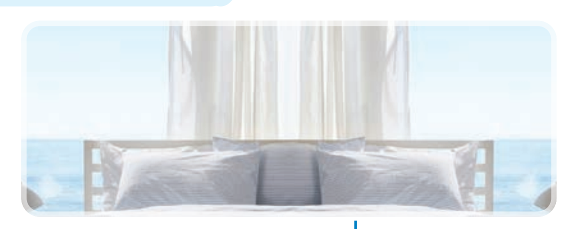
(13) يُحضر

(14) يناقش

# Reading Text (1)

## Bed in Summer

In winter I get up at night
And dress[1] by yellow candlelight[2].
In summer quite the other way,
I have to go to bed by day[3].
I have to go to bed and see
The birds still hopping[4] on the tree,
Or hear the grown-up[5] people's feet
Still going past me in the street.
And does it not seem hard to you,
When all the sky is clear[6] and blue,
And I should like so much to play,
To have to go to bed by day?



(1) يلبس
(2) على ضوء الشموع
(3) نهارًا
(4) يقفز على قدم واحدة
(5) بالغ
(6) صافٍ

# Reading Text (2)

**Khaled, 4:04 PM**

The words Stevenson has used very clearly describe[1] the situations[2] he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject[3] is very interesting because everyone feels differently in different seasons[4]. In my opinion, poets should write about everyday life. However, I think the second verse[5] is too long and its rhythm[6] is too slow.

**Hamid, 5:36 PM**

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day. I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes[7] in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite[8] boring because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities[9]. I think poets should write about more exciting things.

(1) يصف
(2) مواقف
(3) موضوع
(4) فصول السنة
(5) بيت شعر
(6) الوزن الشعرى
(7) القوافى
(8) إلى حد ما
(9) أنشطة

# Reading Text (3)

My favourite poem is *Bed in Summer* because it describes how I felt[1] when I was young. In summer I had to go to bed when it was light[2] and I hated[3] it. Like the author[4] I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair[5] that everyone else was outside having fun.

It's a good length[6] for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme[7]. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember[8]! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.



(1) شعرت

(2) مُضىء

(3) كَرِهت

(4) مؤلف

(5) عادل

(6) طول

(7) يتطابق فى القافية

(8) يتذكر

## Reading Text (1)

Communication is easy today. Many people use apps on their smartphones to talk to their friends. When we send a message to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular.

An example is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided to write to each other in the 1930s, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be penfriends. Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphe lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

Nellie still prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology to communicate.

Surprisingly, there are now many online clubs for penfriends. They encourage people to write letters to penfriends around the world, and they are very successful. Many say that writing letters is relaxing and a warmer way to communicate than with an email or text. You do not need apps, passwords or antivirus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do'.

# Reading Text (2)

## Most Helpful Customer Reviews

A fantastic adventure story!

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's *Kidnapped* is not as great as *Treasure Island* or as exciting as *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, but it is full of action and really fun. I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel man and he tricks David. He arranges for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to escape with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures. I recommend this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Not the best book for me

As far as I'm concerned, this book is too old-fashioned. The story is interesting and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters are very real. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer to read more modern books. *Kidnapped* is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

My favourite book!

*Kidnapped* has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with a man called Alan Breck. Together they travel through Scotland and face many dangerous and exciting situations. I love all the details about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)



# Listening Text

***Interviewer :*** Hello, today I'm talking to Professor Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

***Professor :*** That's true, although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

***Interviewer :*** What are you worried about?

***Professor :*** Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages, because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

***Interviewer :*** Why is that?

***Professor :*** Today we use computer technology for almost all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic, of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose a lot of material because new technology won't be able to read it.

***Interviewer :*** But we'll copy all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

***Professor :*** I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save, or we will forget the passwords to give us this information.

***Interviewer :*** What can we do about this?

***Professor :*** In my opinion, we need to print more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum and you will see wonderful old paintings, photographs, maps and so on. With care, these will be with us for a long, long time.

***Interviewer :*** So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

***Professor :*** I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow? We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

***Interviewer :*** It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.



Story

# Treasure Island

# Chapter 1

## Chapter Text



**Jim Hawkins:**

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned an inn called the Admiral[1] Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn[2]. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar on his face. He looked around him.

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs[3]. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain' stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare[4] to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale[5], with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar[6] on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"



(1) رتبة فى البحرية
(2) حانة
(3) منحدرات
(4) يجرؤ
(5) شاحب الوجه
(6) علامة /ندبة

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk."

"Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill.

"Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," **he replied.** "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures(1) since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts(2) and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick.

"Help us, Dr Livesy! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

**The doctor looked at him and said,** "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted.

"Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible and forgot all about the strange things that the Captain told me.

**Then, a week later, I saw a blind(3) man coming down the road towards the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked,** "Where am I? Will a kind person help me?"

"You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed(4) my hand.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"



(1) مغامرات (2) صياح/أصوات عالية (3) كفيف (4) جذبَ

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned round and left.

The Captain looked at what the man gave him.

"Ten o'clock!" **he said.** "I have time!"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead.



I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in a danger[1]. We decided to go to the nearest village and ask our neighbours for help guarding the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesy. Another man said that we could have his gun.

**It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the captain's jacket. I also saw the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said,** "You have until ten o'clock tonight."

We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins[2] inside.

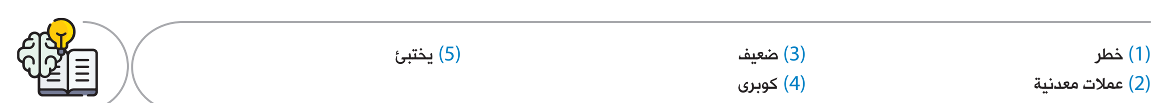
"We only have time until ten o'clock," **I said.** "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," **said my mother.** "I'm too weak[3] to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge[4], where we could hide[5] in the dark.



(1) خطر
(2) عملات معدنية
(3) ضعيف
(4) كوبري
(5) يختبئ

# Chapter 2

## Chapter Text



I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it **there**?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!"

The men started to look around the house.

"If you find **it** you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesey, and the rest were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better, and the others tried to catch[6] the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped[7] on a boat.



I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head[8] of the police.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesey."



(1) يمسك/يلحق (2) هرب (3) رئيس/قائد

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate[1] as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue as to where Flint buried his treasure!" said Dr Livesy.

"That is why those men were not interested[2] in money," agreed Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure[3] ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."

The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed[4] of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map[5] of an island, with a big cross[6] on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.



One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the ***Hispaniola*** for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew[7] ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook[8]. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by the thought of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail[9].



(1) قاض
(2) مهتم
(3) كنز
(4) سرق
(5) خريطة
(6) علامة
(7) طاقم
(8) طباخ
(9) يبحر

# Chapter 3

## Chapter Text



The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers[1]. The helper ran after the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied.

"Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour[2] past boats of different sizes, all preparing to go to sea.

Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.



(1) مساعدين

(2) مرسى/ميناء

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the *Hispaniola*. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I was told that the destination[(1)] of the journey was a secret[(2)]," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns[(3)] with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny[(4)]?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to keep you safe, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is."

I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The *Hispaniola* finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch[(5)]. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot[(6)]. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh.

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.



"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said. "It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

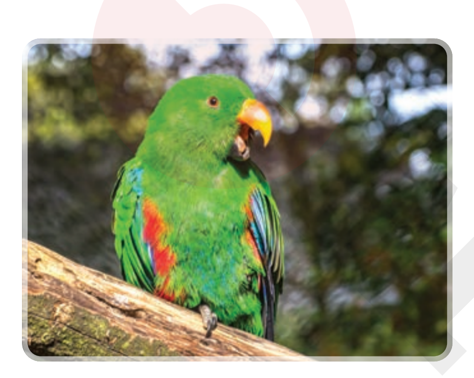


(1) جهة الوصول
(2) سر
(3) أسلحة
(4) تمرد
(5) عكاز
(6) ببغاء



"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."



Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate[1], and the other crew were part of his gang[2].

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened[3]. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out:

"I can see land!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(1) قرصان (2) عصابة (3) خائف

# Chapter 4

## Chapter Text



I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of the ship. We could see two low hills[1] and one big one. The island was now very close.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked on it.

"Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust anything that he said.

I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."

Dr Livesy's expression did not change. He asked me to find his glasses[2] downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me.

"What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



(1) تلال (2) نظارة



I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me.

"Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected[1]. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted[2] the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the ***Hispaniola*** stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore[3]. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan[4].

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust[5] about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax, if they wanted to.

(1) توقعت
(2) عددت
(3) ساحل
(4) خطة
(5) يثق





"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake[1]?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto[2] the branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

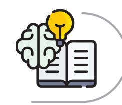
Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.



(1) خطأ (2) تمسكت

Silver smiled and said, "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit[1] him hard on the back. He fell[2] to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

Silver now blew a whistle[3] and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.



(1) ضرب (2) سقط (3) صفارة

# Chapter 5

## Chapter Text



I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer. I decided to walk towards the man.

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and **knelt down** in front of me.

"Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned[4] by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails[5].

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said.

"It isn't a problem with you," I replied.



"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"



(1) محترق (2) أشرعة



I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him.

"Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade[1]. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."



"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.

"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"

Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions[2], and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



(1) جاروف (2) اتجاهات

# Chapter 6

## Chapter Text



**Dr Livesy:**

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind[3] at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried[4] about him.

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort[5]. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended[6]. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the *Hispaniola*. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola*.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage[7]. On the *Hispaniola*, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies[8] now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent[9] the boat from sinking. The wind blew from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.



(1) رياح
(2) قلق
(3) حصن
(4) محصن جيدًا
(5) أفضلية/ميزة
(6) موارد/مؤن
(7) يمنع



"We must keep in this direction," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient[1], and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon![2]" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us."

"It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race[3] to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire, and poor[4] Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"



(1) صبور
(2) مدفع
(3) سباق
(4) مسكين

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.

"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!



# Follow-up Exercises

## Part 1



# Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| مستدام | .................... | يميل | .................... |
| مشتملا على | .................... | متطوع | .................... |
| السياحة البيئية | .................... | علم الأحياء | .................... |
| نظام بيئى | .................... | مهدد بالانقراض | .................... |
| محدد – مقيد | .................... | كارثة | .................... |
| لحسن الحظ | .................... | جهة الوصول | .................... |
| يترجل | .................... | الحياة البرية | .................... |
| يبقى آمنًا | .................... | تأثير على | .................... |
| يغطس | .................... | يختفى من | .................... |
| يجهز العشاء | .................... | مشهور بـ | .................... |
| conservationist | .................... | dragon | .................... |
| tourist attractions | .................... | unique | .................... |
| spicy | .................... | swell up | .................... |
| route | .................... | orangutan | .................... |
| materials | .................... | remote | .................... |
| coral reefs | .................... | fussy eater | .................... |
| rain forests | .................... | trek | .................... |
| isolated | .................... | insects | .................... |
| find out about | .................... | make notes | .................... |
| make sure | .................... | at least | .................... |

# Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As he has an infection, he is .................... in a special department in hospital.
   a) isolated b) limited c) existed d) damaged
2. Luxor is considered a main .................... for most tourists.
   a) location b) destination c) cooperation d) foundation
3. Some rare animals are .................... nowadays and we should ban hunting them.
   a) in dangerous b) dangerous c) traditional d) endangered
4. How do you like your chicken, cool or ....................?
   a) cold b) spicy c) healthy d) delicious
5. The ancient Egyptians .................... the Pyramids and many other great buildings.
   a) were built b) built c) has built d) were building
6. Two weeks ago, our school .................... the beginning of the new year.
   a) celebrated b) celebrates c) has celebrated d) was celebrated
7. Mai usually .................... TV a lot when she was on holiday.
   a) watches b) is watching c) has watched d) watched
8. .................... they were travelling to Alex, they faced many problems on the way.
   a) After b) Before c) As soon as d) While

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- عندما ينقطع التيار الكهربى، تتوقف حركة مرور مترو الأنفاق وتزدحم المحطات بالركاب.

a) When the power goes out, the underground stops and stations are crowded with passengers.
b) When the power goes out, the underground stands and stations are crowded with passengers.
c) When the power goes out, the underground stops and stations are crowded with passersby.
d) When the power breaks out, the underground stops and stations are empty with passengers.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Many countries are building dams to store much water especially in the rain season to make use of it in the drought season and also to generate electricity.

a) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها فى فصل الشتاء وأيضاً لتوليد الكهرباء.
b) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها فى موسم الجفاف وأيضاً لتوليد الكهرباء.
c) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين القليل من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها فى فصل الجفاف وأيضاً لجعل الكهرباء.
d) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها فى فصل الجفاف وأيضاً لاستهلاك الكهرباء.



# Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| هادئ | ........................ | يزرع – ينمو | ........................ |
| قلعة | ........................ | مزدحم | ........................ |
| أعمال الحديقة | ........................ | قديم – أثرى | ........................ |
| رائع | ........................ | جنة | ........................ |
| يستكشف | ........................ | مزعج | ........................ |
| مدهش | ........................ | تحت الماء | ........................ |
| مراهق | ........................ | مضغوط | ........................ |
| يستغل | ........................ | يتنزه | ........................ |
| معظم الوقت | ........................ | مهتم بـ | ........................ |
| يأخذ إجازة | ........................ | مشغول بـ | ........................ |
| boring | ........................ | adventure | ........................ |
| resort | ........................ | support | ........................ |
| temple | ........................ | attractive | ........................ |
| distance | ........................ | in fact | ........................ |
| tiny | ........................ | unusual | ........................ |
| strange | ........................ | cry | ........................ |
| stuck | ........................ | amount | ........................ |
| take photos | ........................ | dive | ........................ |
| quantity | ........................ | discover | ........................ |
| terrible | ........................ | terrific | ........................ |



# Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Too much stress isn't good for you. You should have time to ...................... .
   a) press  b) relax  c) depress  d) confess
2. Hurghada is considered one of the most fascinating ...................... in the world.
   a) resorts  b) stores  c) reports  d) regards
3. The beach was really ......................, so we couldn't find a place to sit.
   a) beautiful  b) exotic  c) crowded  d) isolated
4. It's disturbing to have ...................... neighbours with loud voices all the time.
   a) kind  b) tame  c) peaceful  d) noisy
5. All day yesterday, my mother ...................... the flat and so she was so tired.
   a) had cleaned  b) was cleaning  c) is cleaning  d) has cleaned
6. While I ...................... my favourite film, there was a power cut.
   a) watched  b) was watching  c) being watched  d) watching
7. ...................... hearing the explosion, I immediately phoned the police.
   a) Before  b) While  c) On  d) As soon as
8. I couldn't answer the phone because I ...................... a shower.
   a) was taking  b) took  c) have taken  d) take

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- العمل الجماعى هو وسيلة لتحقيق الأهداف وإنجاز الأعمال، كما أنه طريقة لتبادل الخبرات.

a) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to exchange experience.

b) Individual work is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to exchange experience.

c) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to change experience.

d) Collection work is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to exchange experiences.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

It's necessary to give interest to scientific research and space exploration as two means to cope with the progress that is happening in the world.

a) ينبغى الاهتمام بالبحث العلمى واستكشاف الفضاء كسبيلين للحاق بركب التقدم الحاصل فى العالم.

b) ينبغى الاهتمام بالبحث العلمى واستكشاف الفضاء كسبيل للحاق بالتقدم الحاصل فى العالم.

c) ينبغى الاهتمام بالبحث العلمى واستكشاف الفضاء كمعنى للحاق بعملية التقدم الحادث فى العالم.

d) ينبغى الاهتمام بالبحث العلمى وكشف الفضاء كمعنى للحاق بركب التقدم الحاصل فى العالم.



# Advanced Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. It is known that the ...................... of the country usually lies in the hands of the people.
   a) destination b) location c) destitute d) destiny
2. If you want to finish your work on time, you have to ...................... now.
   a) busy yourself b) get busybody c) make busy d) feel busy
3. Medhat is a fashion ...................... . He always wears the most fashionable clothes even if he does not look good in them.
   a) victim b) conservationist c) lemur d) giant
4. At the accident, the force of the ...................... made my car turn over three times.
   a) isolation b) danger c) impact d) conservation
5. Heba thinks she's over the ...................... but she's only 40. She says she is no longer young, or good at doing things.
   a) moon b) hill c) environment d) island
6. ......................, each problem does not seem bad, but together they are the opposite.
   a) In isolated b) For isolation c) In insulation d) For isolated
7. This kind of food is ...................... to this area of the world only.
   a) volunteer b) unique c) private d) unite
8. It is ...................... to me to go to the meetings on time to get promoted.
   a) material b) immature c) immaterial d) exotic
9. ...................... seeing the snake, she screamed and ran away.
   a) During b) While c) On d) Before
10. They were going onto the highway ...................... a flat tire.
    a) while on getting b) just as getting c) when they got d) because they got
11. It takes drivers a long time to ...................... on the left side of the road when they visit England.
    a) use to drive b) get used to driving c) be used to drive d) get used to drive
12. She was studying her lessons at 10 o'clock yesterday. This means that ...................... .
    a) she started studying at 10 o'clock b) she finished studying at 10 o'clock
    c) she was busy with her lessons at 10 o'clock d) she used to take her lessons at 10 o'clock
13. I wish ...................... my lessons hard next year.
    a) studied b) to study c) would study d) had studied
14. I'd rather my wife ...................... meat and rice.
    a) cook b) cooks c) cooking d) cooked
15. She ...................... late for meetings. No wonder she has never been promoted.
    a) came always b) was always coming c) always comes d) never came
16. When you called me, I ...................... in a meeting, so I couldn't answer your call.
    a) was b) was being c) have been d) had bee



# Al Adwaa Unit Test

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. "This bird is exotic. It is unusual and rarely seen here." The antonyms of the word "exotic" are ................... and ................... .
   a) familiar b) strange c) rare d) foreign e) conventional
2. I always ............... my yearly holiday in August.
   a) have b) make c) do d) take e) play

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. Everyone should know that cutting down trees ................... the environment.
   a) causes damage b) does damaging to c) makes damages d) damages
4. When my brother got promoted as a sales manager, he was over the ................... .
   a) sun b) moon c) earth d) planet
5. My father is a ................... eater. He dislikes many types of food.
   a) hungry b) fussy c) spicy d) fizzy
6. The thief stole everything in my house ................... mobiles and laptops.
   a) including b) concluding c) containing d) consisting
7. I don't think that slavery العبودية ................... in many countries of the world.
   a) designs b) coasts c) exists d) sticks
8. Please Ali, would you close the window? The wind is blowing the sheets of paper ............... the table.
   a) of b) off c) from d) about
9. I never ................... in the sea when I was a child, but now I am a good swimmer.
   a) swim b) have swum
   c) used to swim d) was swimming
10. I ................... up late as my work demands it.
    a) used to stay b) stayed
    c) am used to staying d) was staying
11. While I was writing a letter, my father ................... me to have dinner.
    a) was calling b) has called c) called d) calls
12. When I met Maha, I ................... her to my birthday party.
    a) inviting b) have invited c) was inviting d) invited
13. ................... hearing his father's voice, he turned off his computer.
    a) While b) On c) Before d) As soon as
14. Yesterday evening, my family ................... a very wonderful film together.
    a) were watching b) watch c) has watched d) are watching
15. The criminal was arrested while ................... the scene of the crime.
    a) was leaving b) left c) leaving d) is leaving
16. Although we were in the company at 10 o'clock, the meeting ................... at 11 o'clock.
    a) starts b) had stated c) was starting d) started

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

People find it challenging to solve problems quickly. They want to get fast results, or make money, or make life easier. Often, they don't look into the future. They don't think about the long-term consequences of their actions. The story of DDT is a good example. It is a chemical which was developed to kill insects. It was invented in 1940, and very soon it was being used effectively by farmers all over the world.

The results, at first, were successful. The chemical killed the harmful insects which ate the food plants. More crops were produced, and both farmers and industry made a lot of money, however, the chemical had effects which scientists hadn't predicted. DDT not only killed the harmful insects but it also killed useful insects. A few insects were strong. They survived and multiplied. In a few years, there were large numbers of these super insects which DDT couldn't kill. Clearly, DDT was making the problem worse. It was worthless to be used anymore.

Another problem was that the chemical did not disappear. It stayed in the ground and found its way into rivers, lakes and oceans. So, animals began to suffer from different new diseases. Humans also began to have problems, especially, in areas where DDT was widely used. Many governments stopped the use of DDT twenty years ago, but its effects are still with them.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 Which of the following is probably true about DDT?
- a) It kills only harmful insects.
- b) It kills only useful insects.
- c) It kills both harmful insects and super insects.
- d) It kills both harmful insects and useful insects.

18 What does the word "consequences" refer to, according to the passage?
- a) Exciting things that could happen.
- b) Boring things that could happen.
- c) Useful things that could happen.
- d) Bad things that could happen.

19 Where does DDT end up eventually?
- a) In the ground.
- b) In humans and animals.
- c) Into rivers, lakes and oceans.
- d) Into the crops that farmers grow.

20 Much damage to the environment happens as people .................... .
- a) want to get fast results
- b) don't think about the future
- c) want to make life easier
- d) want to make money

21 DDT was very .................... at first and more crops were produced.
- a) useful
- b) harmful
- c) hateful
- d) poisonous

22 The insects that survived and multiplied were called .................... .
- a) harmful insects
- b) useful insects
- c) renewable insects
- d) super insects

23 Using DDT was very .................... at first as it killed the harmful insects that ate food plants.
- a) positive
- b) negative
- c) useless
- d) weak

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- ينبغى على كل مواطن صالح أن يؤدى دوره باتقان حتى يتحقق التقدم والاستقرار.

a) Every good citizen should perform his role perfectly to achieve progress and instability.

b) Every good member should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.

c) Every good citizen should perform his rule perfectly to achieve progress and stability.

d) Every good citizen should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Setting up productive projects helps to provide job opportunities for unemployed youth who are looking for jobs, so they help them to start a good life.

a) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

b) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العامل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

c) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جديدة.

d) تساعد إقامة المشروعات المستهلكة على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"Environmental problems"

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

....................................................................................................

# Unit 2  Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ........................ | الكرم | ........................ | مجتمع |
| ........................ | يقنع | ........................ | يزأر |
| ........................ | جمعية خيرية | ........................ | بدلا من ذلك |
| ........................ | مثل أعلى | ........................ | ذكاء |
| ........................ | مهمة | ........................ | يحترم – احترام |
| ........................ | فوائد | ........................ | يتعرف |
| ........................ | موطن | ........................ | جيل |
| ........................ | يتتبع | ........................ | يتعلم من |
| ........................ | ضغط الدم | ........................ | يكتشف |
| ........................ | طويل المدى | ........................ | مؤسس |
| iron levels | ........................ | transplant | ........................ |
| health | ........................ | around | ........................ |
| injured | ........................ | score | ........................ |
| admire | ........................ | cancer | ........................ |
| income | ........................ | compassion | ........................ |
| movements | ........................ | traditionally | ........................ |
| views | ........................ | move to | ........................ |
| documentary | ........................ | angry with | ........................ |
| amongst | ........................ | conservation | ........................ |

# Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My wife was ill and the iron ..................... were so low.
   a) standards  b) tests  c) levels  d) stairs
2. The synonym of the word "decrease" is "....................".
   a) increase  b) deduce  c) introduce  d) reduce
3. My father was a very ..................... man. He was ready to give money to anyone in need.
   a) generous  b) greedy  c) traditional  d) careless
4. Every one of us should have a ..................... model to imitate.
   a) roll  b) role  c) rule  d) ruler
5. Noha no longer goes out a lot as she ..................... in the past.
   a) is used to doing  b) was using to do  c) uses to do  d) used to do
6. People ..................... from their work when they are 60.
   a) are retiring  b) retired  c) retire  d) have retired
7. Ali used to play in the street, but now he ..................... in the club.
   a) played  b) was playing  c) has played  d) plays
8. I lived in Tanta for a short time. Now, my wife and I ..................... in Cairo.
   a) live  b) lives  c) are live  d) have lived

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- تهتم الدولة بالشباب لذا تحرص على تأهيلهم بشكل مناسب، فشباب اليوم هم قادة الغد.

a) The country cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them suitably. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

b) The state cares for young children, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are today's leaders.

c) The government cares about children, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's ladders.

d) The state cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Terroristic attacks are always headlines because they attract people's attention and affect their lives badly.

a) الهجمات الإرهابية دائمـًا ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية؛ لأنها تجذب انتباه الناس وتؤثر فى حياتهم بشكل سيئ.

b) الهجمات الإرهابية دائمـًا ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم لا يجذبوا انتباه الناس ويؤثروا فى حياة الناس بشدة.

c) الهجمات الإرهابية دائمـًا لا تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يجذبوا انتباه الناس ويؤثروا فى حياة الناس بشدة.

d) الهجمات الإرهابية دائمـًا ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يجذبوا انتباه الناس ولا يؤثروا فى حياة الناس بشدة.



# Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ............................ | سكان القرى | ............................ | حديث |
| ............................ | المركز الرئيسي | ............................ | وصي – حام |
| ............................ | ماشية | ............................ | خبراء |
| ............................ | شخصية | ............................ | يراقب |
| ............................ | مهارات | ............................ | ممر – طريق |
| ............................ | قريب | ............................ | منظمة |
| ............................ | قبيلة | ............................ | يقدر |
| ............................ | يتأكد | ............................ | يقلق على |
| ............................ | يقوم ببحث | ............................ | بفضل |
| ............................ | مشاركة وجدانية | ............................ | حاسة |
| aim | ............................ | missing | ............................ |
| local | ............................ | paw print | ............................ |
| responsibility | ............................ | employ | ............................ |
| locate | ............................ | ecosystem | ............................ |
| appearance | ............................ | track | ............................ |
| hunting | ............................ | together | ............................ |
| safe | ............................ | biologist | ............................ |
| killings | ............................ | expert | ............................ |
| worry about | ............................ | thanks to | ............................ |
| signs | ............................ | amazed | ............................ |
| attack | ............................ | misunderstand | ............................ |

# Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police use security cameras to .................... public areas such as airports.
   a) look b) glance c) organise d) monitor
2. Yesterday, we called the police as my brother went .................... .
   a) lost b) missing c) losing d) missed
3. The farmer keeps his .................... on the farm.
   a) cattle b) killings c) kettle d) stock
4. Some factories break the rules and .................... children as young as seven.
   a) donate b) employ c) pretend d) hunt
5. As soon as she .................... home, she will clean up.
   a) comes b) came c) had come d) is coming
6. This shop sells good clothes, they .................... of high-quality wool.
   a) make b) made c) are made d) are making
7. My bus to Cairo .................... at 6 tomorrow morning.
   a) is left b) is leaving c) has left d) leaves
8. A lot of our problems .................... with the help of our parents and teachers.
   a) solve b) are solved c) have solved d) were solving

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغى على كل فرد فى المجتمع أن يؤدى دوره بإتقان حتى تتحقق الرفاهية والازدهار.

a) Every one in society should perform his role perfectly to achieve progress and instability.
b) Every member in the community should perform her role perfectly to achieve welfare and stability.
c) Every good citizen should perform their rule perfectly to achieve progress and flowering.
d) Every one in society should perform their role perfectly to achieve welfare and flourishing.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

When you make friends, you must be aware that many friends are only for fun, but when you need some advice, you should only ask wise people.

a) عندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى الفرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الخبراء.
b) عندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن القليل من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الحكماء.
c) عندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الكبار.
d) عندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الحكماء.




**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The younger generation only ..................... to be interested in money.
   a) seem b) seems c) seeming d) both a & b
2. When I knew that my friend Ali died, I went to pay my last ..................... to him.
   a) respects b) supports c) benefits d) desires
3. Huda bought a very expensive ..................... blouse last week.
   a) called b) admired c) supported d) checked
4. For few seconds when they are taking ....................., the soldiers are exposed to enemy fire.
   a) respect b) income c) aim d) knowledge
5. The Egyptian runner won the gold medal when he reached the end of the ..................... first.
   a) track b) desire c) speed d) prestige
6. I am very annoyed as the holiday seemed to ..................... by.
   a) disappear b) hunt c) speed d) fasten
7. I ..................... to see the thief stealing the money from a young child.
   a) checked b) reduced c) succeeded d) chanced
8. The prisoner tried to escape over the prison wall in full ..................... of the guards.
   a) sight b) view c) task d) reason
9. This painting is original. It ..................... anywhere else.
   a) was existed b) isn't existed c) don't exist d) doesn't exist
10. I'd hate to live in London because it ..................... all the time.
    a) rains b) is raining c) raining d) rain
11. People ..................... say "thank you" anymore.
    a) isn't b) doesn't c) don't d) aren't
12. These trees ..................... their leaves in the autumn as they are evergreen.
    a) don't lose b) doesn't lose c) isn't lost d) aren't lost
13. These glasses are a bit heavy; I will take time to ..................... them.
    a) become used to wear b) be used to wear
    c) get use to wear d) get used to wearing
14. It is a fact that water ..................... when we heat it.
    a) will boil b) boiled c) boils d) is boiling
15. Some men ..................... cooking and others know nothing about the kitchen.
    a) are loving b) have loved c) had loved d) love
16. ..................... as an accountant in the same company?
    a) Are you still work b) Do you still work
    c) Have you still worked d) Did you still work

## Unit 2 Al Adwaa Unit Test

### Choose Two of the Five options:

1. "She looked miserable." The antonyms of the word miserable are ............... and ............... .
   a) depressed b) happy c) contented d) poor e) helpless
2. All of us should ............... the responsibility of developing Egypt.
   a) keep b) have c) make d) do e) bear

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. As a striker, Mostafa Mohammad is supposed to ............... goals, not to lose the ball.
   a) reach b) score c) realise d) miss
4. At hospitals, blood pressure is ............... regularly for patients before surgical operations.
   a) received b) measured c) done d) made
5. After the terrible fire, a lot of volunteers wanted to give ............... of blood and money to the victims.
   a) iron-levels b) donations c) transplants d) prestige
6. Children need to be ............... well by their parents at home in order not to hurt themselves.
   a) monitored b) praised c) benefited d) neglected
7. My neighbour is famous ............... his patience and good manners.
   a) for b) as c) among d) with
8. A ............... means a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice.
   a) sound b) roar c) whispering d) clank
9. Did you go out last night or ............... you busy?
   a) did b) were c) are d) have
10. My son ............... ambitious and he wants to study medicine.
    a) is always b) always is c) doesn't always d) isn't always
11. Ahmed ............... tea in the evening every day.
    a) has usually b) usually has c) usually have d) does usually
12. Ten years ago, we ............... in a house by the river.
    a) lived b) will live c) live d) living
13. That car over there ............... used, I have just received it, and I'm happy to have a brand-new one.
    a) doesn't b) didn't c) is d) isn't
14. What time ............... it when your father arrived?
    a) did b) is c) was d) has
15. Teachers ............... lessons for their students. It's their job.
    a) are teaching b) taught c) teach d) teaches
16. Don't leave the place till your father ............... to take you.
    a) come b) is coming c) came d) comes

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

In Britain, most schools are financed by the state. Children attend those schools for free. There are many local variations in the details of the school system. The general pattern of schooling in Britain is well-organised. All children must start school at the age of five. Many have previously attended playschools or nursery schools, but these are not compulsory.

Primary education, whether state or private, seeks to develop all aspects of the child: physical and emotional, as well as intellectual and cultural aspects. Most schools concentrate on the child's development of his or her potential, rather than on training for a particular exam.

At the age of 11, children move to different schools. These are called secondary schools, and children of all abilities go to the same school, the pupils have a set timetable of subjects, including arts subjects, such as history, English and a foreign language, as well as science subjects and sports. At the end of this period, most pupils take one of two public examinations.

After these exams, i.e. at the age of 16 or so, most pupils leave. Pupils usually take a public school-leaving examination. Their results in these exams will largely determine whether they now start to work or they can continue with higher education at a university or college.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 In Britain most students .................... .

a) don't pay money
b) must donate for education
c) finance their school
d) are prevented from learning

18 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .................... .

a) schools
b) exams
c) results
d) pupils

19 .................... children must start school when they are five.

a) Most
b) Not all
c) All
d) Many

20 Children move to secondary school when they are .................... .

a) twelve
b) thirteen
c) eleven
d) ten

21 It is .................... for many children to attend nursery schools before the age of five.

a) necessary
b) obligatory
c) optional
d) forbidden.

22 In Britain, most schools are free as the .................... pay(s) for them.

a) students
b) government
c) parents
d) charities

23 .................... education in Britain concentrates on the child's development not on particular exams.

a) Primary
b) Nursery
c) Secondary
d) University

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- أصبح تلوث البيئة من القضايا الأساسية التى جذبت انتباه العالم أجمع للوصول إلى حل عالمى.

a) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a national solution.

b) The environment pollution has become one of the minor issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solution.

c) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solve.

d) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solution.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Science fiction is one of the best ways to express the future and the style of life in it. It is thought that science fiction works predicted a lot of inventions many years before their real existence.

a) قصص الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق لسرعة المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الدعوات قبل وجودها بشكل حقيقى.

b) الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الاختراعات قبل وجودها بشكل حقيقى.

c) الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به أنها تعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الاختراعات قبل وجودها بشكل حقيقى.

d) الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الدعوات قبل وجودها بشكل رسمى.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"What you can do to make your city a better place to live in".

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................................................................

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ........................ | بائس | ........................ | سجن |
| ........................ | تذكرة | ........................ | فرصة |
| ........................ | ممتلئ الجسم | ........................ | تاجر |
| ........................ | فارغ | ........................ | يستحق |
| ........................ | يكافئ | ........................ | مرحلة الطفولة |
| ........................ | معبد | ........................ | ديون |
| ........................ | مجرم | ........................ | مشابه |
| ........................ | سيدة تبدو متعبة | ........................ | يجلس مع |
| ........................ | يصنع ملابس | ........................ | مشكلة مع |
| ........................ | يأخذ ... بعيدا | ........................ | يعتنى بـ |
| earn money | ........................ | owe | ........................ |
| twins | ........................ | amuse | ........................ |
| floors | ........................ | remove | ........................ |
| hide | ........................ | injure | ........................ |
| revise | ........................ | arrange | ........................ |
| healthy | ........................ | twins | ........................ |
| lucky | ........................ | storyteller | ........................ |
| rats | ........................ | exactly | ........................ |
| law | ........................ | repay | ........................ |
| dirty | ........................ | miser | ........................ |

# Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All those who travel abroad to study and work ..................... much useful experience.
   a) earn  b) gain  c) win  d) succeed
2. I really feel tired. Too much work makes me look ..................... .
   a) deadly  b) empty  c) happy  d) miserable
3. The school should be a place for education and also for ..................... to be attractive.
   a) performance  b) explanation  c) entertainment  d) payment
4. I think I ..................... a holiday because I've worked hard all year.
   a) earn  b) deserve  c) observe  d) owe
5. I ..................... my homework and I can watch the match now.
   a) do  b) am doing  c) have done  d) had done
6. Merna has ..................... seen a lion before.
   a) ever  b) never  c) just  d) yet
7. You needn't wash the car, dad. I ..................... it.
   a) already washed  b) had already washed
   c) already will wash  d) have already washed
8. Adel ..................... in this flat since 2015 and he has no intention to leave it.
   a) lives  b) lived  c) is going to live  d) has lived

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- تمتلك مصر تاريخا ثقافيا وحضاريا غنيا يجعلها دولة رائدة فى العالم بأسره فى كافة المجالات.

a) Egypt has a rich cultural and civilised history that makes it a leading country in the whole world in all fields.
b) Egypt has a rich culture and civilised history that makes it a leading country in the whole world in all magazines.
c) Egypt has a rich cultural and civilised history that makes it a leader country in the hole world in all fields.
d) Egypt has a rich cultural and civilised history that makes it a leading country in the whole world in all parts.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Wasting water is a big problem that has appeared recently. Some careless people use it foolishly without any sense of duty or responsibility.

a) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس المهملين لا يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.
b) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.
c) إن ضياع الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس الحريصين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.
d) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.

# Unit 3  Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ........................ | التخطيط | ........................ | خبرة |
| ........................ | عمل تطوعي | ........................ | معاق |
| ........................ | ماكينات | ........................ | مجتمع |
| ........................ | زوج الأم | ........................ | خدعة |
| ........................ | حل | ........................ | جمعية شباب |
| ........................ | بالغ | ........................ | حالم |
| ........................ | ينضج | ........................ | ثقافة |
| ........................ | يخدع | ........................ | يدون |
| ........................ | يقوم بعمل من أجل | ........................ | يعود إلى |
| ........................ | يصنع اختلافًا | ........................ | غير معتاد لـ |
| food bank | ........................ | main | ........................ |
| touch | ........................ | later | ........................ |
| trust | ........................ | voluntary | ........................ |
| break | ........................ | paint | ........................ |
| go wrong | ........................ | stop ... from | ........................ |
| disability | ........................ | admit | ........................ |
| major | ........................ | nowhere | ........................ |
| surprise | ........................ | pay | ........................ |
| character | ........................ | describe | ........................ |
| most of | ........................ | step mother | ........................ |

# Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should all try to keep our ..................... heritage safe.
   a) cultural b) cultured c) culture d) cultures
2. This organisation depends on ..................... donations.
   a) vertically b) volume c) valve d) voluntary
3. I don't trust you anymore because you always ..................... me.
   a) game b) show c) match d) trick
4. Since the youth ..................... was formed in our city, there have been a lot of useful activities for them.
   a) charity b) prison c) association d) society
5. Sara is at home now. She ..................... to Mansoura to apply to university.
   a) has gone b) visited c) has been d) had been
6. The last time he played football with us ..................... we were in Aswan.
   a) when b) since c) while d) during
7. They ..................... for this company for 20 years before starting their own business.
   a) work b) have worked c) are working d) worked
8. Has he really completed all his work .....................? I can't believe it.
   a) yet b) just c) already d) ever

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغي أن نشجع الشباب على ممارسة الرياضة لمساعدتهم على قضاء وقت فراغهم بشكل مفيد.

a) We should encourage the young people to make sports to help them to spend their free time in a useful way.

b) We should discourage the young to practise sports to help them to spend their spare time in a useful way.

c) We should encourage the young to practise sports to help them to spend their empty time in a useful way.

d) We should encourage the young to practise sports to help them to spend their free time in a useful way.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

It is necessary to be positive, and never defend a point of view unless you are sure it will make a difference.

a) من الضرورى أن تكون إيجابيا، وألا تدافع عن وجهة نظر لو لم تكن متيقنا أنه سيحدث فرق.

b) إنه من الضرورى أن تكون إيجابيا، وألا تدافع عن وجهة نظر لو لم تكن متيقنا أنه لن يحدث فرق.

c) من الضرورى أن تكون سلبيا، وألا تدافع عن وجهة نظر لم تكن متيقنا أنه سيحدث فرق.

d) من غير الضرورى أن تكون إيجابيا، وألا تدافع عن نقطة منظر لم تكن متيقنا أنه سيحدث فرق.

# Unit 3 Advanced Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The factory closed down because the owners couldn't make it ..................... .
   a) lay  b) pay  c) stay  d) beat
2. The weather in Egypt, for the most ....................., is mild and sunny.
   a) place  b) position  c) site  d) part
3. The water ..................... has burst and we have to get a plumber.
   a) main  b) major  c) minor  d) mean
4. Only members will be ..................... to the club for tonight's performance.
   a) arranged  b) borrowed  c) admitted  d) owed
5. Your password must contain at least nine ..................... either numbers or letters.
   a) personalities  b) identities  c) activities  d) characters
6. You should wait for a ..................... in the traffic before you cross the road. It is much safer.
   a) plump  b) break  c) flood  d) remove
7. The company for which I am going to work offers to pay all our ..................... expenses.
   a) removal  b) remove  c) misery  d) review
8. I think my son is not very ill, it is just a ..................... of flu.
   a) plan  b) disaster  c) touching  d) touch
9. We have played tennis ..................... two years ago.
   a) for  b) since  c) when  d) before
10. I think it is a long time ..................... I had such a wonderful time.
    a) for  b) since  c) when  d) as
11. When ..................... your dinner?
    a) did you eat  b) have you eaten
    c) will you be eaten  d) you have eaten
12. Science ..................... the medical field a lot.
    a) advance  b) has been advancing
    c) has advanced  d) has been advanced
13. I ..................... a cold for two weeks.
    a) have  b) have being had  c) have been having  d) have had
14. Do you know what time Sarah ..................... the office?
    a) had left  b) has left  c) has been leaving  d) leave
15. Since I started working here, I ..................... more experienced at dealing with people.
    a) became  b) have become
    c) have been becoming  d) have been become
16. I can't remember the last time I ..................... to the theatre.
    a) went  b) have been  c) have been being  d) have had

## Unit 3 Al Adwaa Unit Test

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. The lawyer was an honest man, so we felt safe. The antonyms of the word "honest" are ............... and ............... .
   a) trustful b) deceitful c) miserable d) insincere e) sincere
2. I felt very happy ............... my daughter's results in the final exam.
   a) with b) to c) about d) against e) for

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. He was one of the gang who escaped from ............... and the police arrested him.
   a) entertainment b) factory c) floor d) prison
4. My neighbour was sent to prison because he was heavily in ............... .
   a) debited b) debt c) indebted d) debate
5. The thief ............... stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
   a) admitted b) said c) told d) included
6. Criminals should be punished for ............... the law.
   a) following b) breaking c) obeying d) giving
7. I asked you to do this difficult job because I ............... you.
   a) trust b) suspect c) hurt d) think
8. The police are looking for the criminal who ............... customers into buying fake products.
   a) scammed b) trusted c) escaped d) broke
9. He has gone to London. This means that he ............... there.
   a) is still b) won't be c) is no longer d) was
10. When he was in Cairo, he always ............... along the Nile.
    a) walked b) was walking c) walks d) 'll walk
11. They never ............... used to eating in the office.
    a) do b) was c) got d) have
12. I was made ............... my room before I went out.
    a) to tidy b) tidying c) tidy d) not tidy
13. Yasmeen is in Cairo now. She ............... to Luxor.
    a) has gone b) go c) has been d) goes
14. I ............... this car for more than three years now.
    a) has had b) have had c) have been d) am having
15. It is the first time for Mona ............... abroad alone.
    a) travel b) to travel c) has travelled d) has ever travelled
16. **A:** Why are you late, Ali?
    **B:** Because I ............... the bus.
    a) have missed b) has missed c) had missed d) was missing

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Always choose your neighbour. I have some ideal neighbours. One of my favourites is a man and his wife. The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university. They are very hospitable. It is particularly enjoyable to wake up on a Friday morning to the sounds of their music playing which are really quite artistic. However, I also love to hear them laughing when they make a mistake in their music playing. Besides music, carpentry is still the man's main interest, and most days he is outside in his workspace in the garden, making an artistic piece of furniture. My neighbours are ideal to live next door, too, because they can be very helpful if I need them. I respect them as they never interfere in my private life and I behave with them in the same way. We have helped each other with numerous emergencies such as fires and car accidents. We also co-operate with each other in little ways such as bringing the mail, when one of us is away. We sometimes meet when they invite me over for coffee, with some of their friends who are usually very interesting people: poets, painters, professors and other lively persons whom I enjoy meeting. Sometimes we go to the fireworks display. Apart from this, we simply live next door to each other peacefully, side by side.

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The underlined word "them" refers to .................... .
    - a) writers
    - b) neighbours
    - c) painters
    - d) poets
18. At the neighbours' house, the writer meets .................... .
    - a) poets and painters
    - b) lively persons
    - c) professors
    - d) all of these
19. The army officer has some .................... skills.
    - a) manual
    - b) digital
    - c) oral
    - d) lingual
20. The officer's wife is working for a/an .................... .
    - a) school
    - b) army
    - c) professor
    - d) university
21. The army officer's main hobby is .................... .
    - a) music
    - b) carpentry
    - c) fireworks
    - d) poetry
22. What shows that the writer and his neighbours help each other?
    - a) They never interfere in his private life.
    - b) They go to the fireworks display with each other.
    - c) They invite him over for coffee.
    - d) They bring the mail when one of them is away.
23. Inviting the writer over for coffee with some of their friends. This shows that their neighbours are .................... .
    - a) sociable
    - b) anxious
    - c) artistic
    - d) interesting

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- لقد شيدت مصر شبكة طرق حديثة لتحقيق انسياب المرور والحد من حوادث السيارات.

a) Egypt has constructed a new modern road network to achieve traffic flow and limit car accidents.
b) Egypt has constructed a new modern road web to achieve traffic flooding and limit car accidents.
c) Egypt has constructed a new modern road network to achieve easy traffic and prevent car accidents.
d) Egypt has constructed a new modern road railways to achieve traffic flow and limit car accidents.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

The new traffic law is extremely strict. It aims at protecting the lives of innocent citizens from the recklessness of some drivers.

a) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية ممتلكات المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.
b) إن الطريق الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين المجرمين من تهور بعض السائقين.
c) إن طريق المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من هدوء بعض السائقين.
d) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"Water is life."

..................................................................................................................................

# Unit 4  Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| مفضل | ........................ | يسترخى | ........................ |
| صلة | ........................ | أعضاء الفريق | ........................ |
| صداقة | ........................ | إضافى | ........................ |
| مسموح له | ........................ | محادثة | ........................ |
| مراهق | ........................ | لوحة إعلانات | ........................ |
| يدخل على الإنترنت | ........................ | يتحدث إلى | ........................ |
| يشعر وكأنه | ........................ | يراجع من أجل | ........................ |
| يتدرب | ........................ | يطلب | ........................ |
| يكون صداقات | ........................ | مرتبط بـ | ........................ |
| عضو فى الفريق | ........................ | بدلا من | ........................ |
| take it for granted | ........................ | stressed | ........................ |
| stressful | ........................ | information | ........................ |
| enjoy | ........................ | magazine | ........................ |
| personal | ........................ | training | ........................ |
| follow | ........................ | useful | ........................ |
| article | ........................ | wear | ........................ |
| advice | ........................ | tip | ........................ |
| grade | ........................ | face | ........................ |
| cool | ........................ | feel | ........................ |
| teenager | ........................ | individual sport | ........................ |

# Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I feel ………………, I usually go out in the open air to relax.
   a) happy b) stressed c) pleased d) delighted
2. As he is sociable, he prefers doing ……………… sports.
   a) team b) individual c) solo d) lonely
3. My son is still a/an ……………… . He is only 13 years old.
   a) adult b) grown up c) teenager d) youth
4. Good relations are based on ……………… and trust.
   a) hatred b) jealousy c) friendship d) tricks
5. I hope I will have ……………… computer with 128 GB RAM.
   a) the b) a c) an d) no article
6. ……………… success that I have made is very important for me and my family.
   a) A b) An c) The d) No article
7. It is true that English is ……………… most important language.
   a) an b) the c) a d) no article
8. We usually go to ……………… cinema every Friday to watch new films.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب الاهتمام بتربية أطفالنا وتنشئتهم اجتماعيا لكى يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين فى المستقبل.

a) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good citizens in the future.

b) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good students in the near future.

c) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become bad citizens in the future.

d) We should care about bringing about our children and their socialisation to become famous citizens in the future.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Global trade leads to a big economic growth in different regions all over the world. So, all the world countries aim to develop it greatly.

a) التجارة المحلية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

b) التجارة العالمية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى قليل فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

c) التجارة العالمية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء البلد. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

d) التجارة العالمية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

# Unit 4  Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| وحيدا | ........................ | يتشاجر | ........................ |
| ضابط شرطة | ........................ | تأثير | ........................ |
| غشاش | ........................ | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | ........................ |
| تنمر | ........................ | مذعور | ........................ |
| حقيبة ظهر | ........................ | التمريض | ........................ |
| مضيف | ........................ | يتصرف | ........................ |
| يستغرق وقت لكى | ........................ | يشير إلى | ........................ |
| مؤذ – ردىء الطبع | ........................ | غاضب من شخص | ........................ |
| يلتقط صورة لـ | ........................ | متأكد من | ........................ |
| ينسجم مع | ........................ | يدرج فى قائمة | ........................ |
| debate | ........................ | scared | ........................ |
| lonely | ........................ | fight | ........................ |
| continue | ........................ | copying | ........................ |
| hate | ........................ | laugh | ........................ |
| immediately | ........................ | guest | ........................ |
| negative | ........................ | phone in | ........................ |
| hard | ........................ | illustrate | ........................ |
| as far as I am concerned | ........................ | add | ........................ |
| radio show | ........................ | terrible | ........................ |
| soon | ........................ | get along with | ........................ |

# Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .................... isn't allowed and it is considered a crime.
   a) Polling b) Bullying c) Pulling d) Bull
2. A/An .................... is something that brings people together.
   a) cheating b) phone-in c) address d) connection
3. Although .................... is forbidden, some students still try to invent new ways of it.
   a) connection b) policing c) phishing d) cheating
4. A/An .................... is a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.
   a) noun b) adverb c) suffix d) prefix
5. My father's glasses .................... in the house garden two days ago.
   **a)** was lost **b)** is lost **c)** were lost **d)** have lost
6. Would you please give me .................... water?
   **a)** a bit **b)** many **c)** any **d)** some
7. Ten thousand pounds .................... enough for this trip.
   **a)** are **b)** were **c)** is **d)** have
8. I don't have .................... money, so I want to borrow some.
   **a)** any **b)** many **c)** some **d)** a lot of

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد تغلبت المرأة المصرية على قيود المجتمع التقليدية وبدأت تشارك الرجل فى كافة الميادين.

a) The Egyptian woman has overcome all the society traditional restrictions and begun to share man in all fields.

b) The Egyptian women have overcome all the society traditional restrictions and begun to share man in all fields.

c) The Egyptian woman has overtaken all the society traditional restrictions and has begun to share man in all fields.

d) The Egyptian woman has overcome all the society traditional limits and has begun to share man in all parts.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Depression can happen to any of us as we age and it usually impacts your energy, appetite, sleep, and interest in work, hobbies, and relationships.

a) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع صغرنا فى العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.

b) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع تقدمنا فى العصر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص رائحته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.

c) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع تقدمنا فى العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.

d) لا يمكــن أن يحــدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع تقدمنا فى العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشــخص وشــهيته ونومــه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.

# Unit 4 Advanced Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. They invited me to their wedding party and I .................... for long whether to go or not. Finally, I decided not to go.
   a) discussed b) agreed c) debated d) frowned
2. The store sells only the highest .................... of clothes, so they are very expensive.
   a) grade b) degree c) greed d) regard
3. It is clear that the sheets are starting to .................... out a little. We need to buy new ones.
   a) put on b) dress c) wear d) weep
4. I'm sorry, I can't buy a modern car for you. It isn't .................... .
   a) bear b) dear c) fear d) ear
5. During the last holiday, I spent nearly five .................... pounds.
   a) thousands b) thousand's c) thousand d) thousands'
6. When my daughter saw what was for dinner, she .................... . She was angry.
   a) lost a face b) saved face c) was faceless d) pulled a face
7. This old suitcase looks now a bit the worse for .................... .
   a) dress b) put on c) wear d) cloth
8. Students have to take three .................... in English tomorrow.
   a) paper b) papers c) a paper d) paperbacks
9. France is part of .................... European Union.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
10. My uncle is a sailor who spends most of his time at .................... .
    a) the sea b) a sea c) an sea d) sea
11. We have hardly heard .................... news of her since she travelled abroad.
    a) some b) any c) much d) many
12. Make .................... and cook the food, Mona.
    a) a bed b) bed c) the bed d) any bed
13. I like watching .................... road running during the Olympics.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
14. My father booked .................... seat No. 20 in .................... carriage 2.
    a) no article/no article b) no article/the
    c) the/the d) the/no article
15. Hala travelled to Cairo by .................... bus.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article
16. When I went to school, there were only .................... students in the class.
    a) a few b) a little c) much d) many

# Al Adwaa Unit Test

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. It's a cool sofa; we'll buy it. The antonyms of the word "cool" are ............... and ............... .
   a) neat  b) fashionable  c) bad  d) uncool  e) old
2. Don't ............... your friends at school. It's considered a sort of bullying.
   a) make laugh  b) smile at  c) laugh at  d) make fun of  e) laugh of

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. My sister is always shy and finds it difficult to ............... friends.
   a) give  b) do  c) make  d) look
4. Because of social media and talk show programmes, many people have lost the art of ............... .
   a) bullying  b) conversation  c) teaching  d) conservation
5. Scientists proved that there is a direct ............... between smoking and cancer.
   a) communication  b) practice  c) conversation  d) connection
6. As far as I'm ..............., doing sport is useful for our health.
   a) interesting  b) enthusiast  c) opinion  d) concerned
7. High prices are a serious ............... the government tries to solve.
   a) crises  b) problem  c) solution  d) advice
8. I asked my mother ............... another piece of cake.
   a) for  b) to  c) in  d) with
9. **A:** How ............... milk do you want?
   **B:** Two bottles, please.
   a) many  b) much  c) a little  d) a few
10. Laila was graduated from ............... University of Mansoura.
    a) an  b) a  c) the  d) no article
11. Secondary school students in some countries don't have to wear ............... uniform.
    a) some  b) one  c) a  d) an
12. My father always tells me ............... valuable advice.
    a) a  b) an  c) the  d) some
13. During science lessons at our school, we learn ............... information.
    a) many  b) much  c) an  d) a
14. There is plenty of meat, but there is not ............... bread.
    a) plenty  b) many  c) any  d) a lot
15. My uncle lives in the countryside where he raises ............... .
    a) chicken  b) chickens  c) some chicken  d) the chicken
16. Ali is in danger because he is ............... AIDS patient.
    a) a  b) an  c) the  d) no article

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

No matter where you look you will see ads or advertisements. They are everywhere, in newspapers, magazines, and on TV. They are a part of your life. To advertise means to call something to the attention of the public. That can be done in different ways. Street vendors advertise by calling out loudly. Others prefer to advertise their products on posters. Others again use television and radio for the purpose. Advertisements have been around for a long time. It is hard to imagine a world without advertisements. Just think of all the programmes on television that are sponsored by a company or magazines that are full of ads. You would have to pay much more if they were not part of the magazine. Ads are not the same in every country. You have to pay attention to traditions, history and culture. What works in one country might not work in another country. An important part of advertising and selling products is the idea of brands. When you buy a brand, you are not just buying a product. You are buying an identity and lifestyle. In the old days, a brand meant something hot or burning. Today, it is an identifying logo, a mark or symbol that distinguishes one company or product from others. A good logo is unique and not easily confused with the logos of other companies. Many logos are famous and have been around for a long time.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 How do advertisements become part of our life?

a) Our life depends on them. b) We can find them everywhere.
c) They solve our problems. d) They cause us many diseases.

18 Why do different people advertise in different ways?

a) To beat each other. b) To enjoy each other.
c) To sell their products. d) To fight with people.

19 What is the most important part of advertising products?

a) The idea of brands. b) The idea of selling.
c) The idea of the country. d) The idea of conscience.

20 What is the use of the mark or logo on the product?

a) It makes the product cheaper.
b) It helps people to save money.
c) It distinguishes one company or products from others.
d) It tells the expiry date.

21 When we advertise something, we mean to .................... .

a) make it difficult to buy it b) pay the attention of people to it
c) trick people to get something bad d) solve our problems

22 The pronoun "They" in the first line refers to .................... .

a) street vendors b) advertisements c) the public d) products

23 When you buy an identity and lifestyle, it means that you buy a .................... .

a) product b) trend c) history d) brand

**24** **Choose the correct English translation:**

- العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتاحة بدون إسراف.

a) Hard work is the only way to rise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.

b) Hard working is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all unavailable economic resources without extravagance.

c) Working hard is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economical resources without expenses.

d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available the economic resources without extravagance.

**25** **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in peace process and combating terrorism.

a) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر محلى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

b) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

c) اضطرت مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ودعم السياحة.

d) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى اجتماع دولى يستهدف عدم استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

**26** **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"How could smartphones affect our life positively and negatively?"

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

# Unit 5  Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| مرن | ........................ | الهاتف الذكى | ........................ |
| جهاز | ........................ | محطات توليد الطاقة | ........................ |
| اختراق | ........................ | عيوب | ........................ |
| دراسة – استطلاع | ........................ | يحمى | ........................ |
| آمن | ........................ | التخييم | ........................ |
| خاص | ........................ | يخلق | ........................ |
| ذاتية القيادة | ........................ | أساسى - رئيسى | ........................ |
| يقدر ما أستطيع | ........................ | يستمع إلى | ........................ |
| العالم الخارجى | ........................ | يتواصل مع | ........................ |
| يتخذ قرارًا | ........................ | يقتحم | ........................ |
| lighting | ........................ | empty | ........................ |
| device | ........................ | heating | ........................ |
| incident | ........................ | network | ........................ |
| steal | ........................ | petrol | ........................ |
| protect | ........................ | task | ........................ |
| cause | ........................ | connected | ........................ |
| develop | ........................ | app | ........................ |
| navigate | ........................ | criminal | ........................ |
| check | ........................ | bin | ........................ |
| illegal | ........................ | camping | ........................ |

# Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The internet is the largest computer ...................... in the world.
   a) framework b) network c) workstation d) teamwork
2. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are ...................... .
   a) created b) developed c) connected d) performed
3. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through ...................... .
   a) fishing b) fisherman c) phishing d) phisher
4. He had given her 1000 pounds before he realised that it was a ...................... .
   a) scam b) scams c) scammed d) scammer
5. They ...................... . They have already decided that.
   a) will leave b) are leaving c) are going to leave d) would leave
6. The sky is very gloomy, I think it ...................... .
   a) will rain b) is raining c) would rain d) is going to rain
7. All students in this class ...................... their exams. That is my expectation.
   a) will pass b) are passing c) are going to pass d) pass
8. The farmer is carrying some grass. He ...................... the sheep.
   a) will feed b) is feeding c) might have fed d) is going to feed

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- سيساعد استصلاح الصحراء فى زيادة الدخل القومى والأراضى الزراعية وتوفير فرص عمل للشباب.

a) The desert reclamation will help to increase the international income and the farming lands, and it will provide job opportunities for the youth.

b) The desert fixing will help to increase the national income and the farming lands and save job opportunities for the youth.

c) The desert reclamation will help to increase the national income and the farming lands, and it will provide job opportunities for the youth.

d) The desert reclamation will help to decrease the national entrance and the farming lands, and it will provide job opportunities for the youth.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Setting up productive projects helps to provide job opportunities for unemployed youth who are looking for jobs, so they help them to start a good life.

a) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

b) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العامل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

c) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جديدة.

d) تساعد إقامة المشروعات المستهلكة على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

# Unit 5  Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

| Model (A) | |
|---|---|
| يتنمر | ........................ |
| التصيد – الاحتيال | ........................ |
| قبيح الشكل | ........................ |
| وقح | ........................ |
| قدرات | ........................ |
| غاضب جدا | ........................ |
| توظيف | ........................ |
| يحصل على شىء مجانى | ........................ |
| يبقى آمنًا | ........................ |
| يملا استمارة | ........................ |
| piracy | ........................ |
| personal details | ........................ |
| malware | ........................ |
| recognise | ........................ |
| website | ........................ |
| impossible | ........................ |
| almost | ........................ |
| look like | ........................ |
| employer | ........................ |
| free | ........................ |

| Model (B) | |
|---|---|
| حساب بنكى | ........................ |
| احتيال | ........................ |
| يخيف | ........................ |
| برنامج ضد الفيروسات | ........................ |
| نشر الصور | ........................ |
| يدعم | ........................ |
| فظيع | ........................ |
| يمسح من | ........................ |
| يكتب عن | ........................ |
| مشغول بـ | ........................ |
| click | ........................ |
| download | ........................ |
| join | ........................ |
| socialise | ........................ |
| embarrassing | ........................ |
| scary | ........................ |
| friendship | ........................ |
| accountant | ........................ |
| public | ........................ |
| separate | ........................ |

# Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always advise my children not to watch ........................ movies as they make them fearful.
   a) comic b) funny c) exciting d) scary
2. My friend's smartphone was lost and he looks ........................ .
   a) pleased b) frightened c) terrific d) furious
3. It was difficult to ........................ my friend after this long period of absence.
   a) recognise b) link c) stress d) hack
4. Don't shout at her. She ........................ nothing wrong.
   a) did b) looked c) went d) stayed
5. The bus which my friend is in ........................ in Cairo at 7 p.m.
   a) arrives b) arriving c) will be arriving d) has arrived
6. Now, we have made all our preparations. We ........................ the weekend in Hurghada.
   a) spend b) will spend c) going to spend d) are spending
7. Ali is so intelligent and clever. I think he ........................ the test easily.
   a) is going to pass b) will pass c) is passing d) will be passing

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- تطوير التعليم والارتقاء بمستوى المعلم والعملية التعليمية من أهم الأهداف التى يجب تحقيقها فى المستقبل.

a) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.

b) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the received.

c) Developing education and promoting the level of the teacher and educational operation are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.

d) Developed education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

The storms, the hurricanes and the earthquakes are natural disasters that happen suddenly without any arrangements.

a) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث طبيعية تحدث فجأة دون ترتيبات.

b) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث صناعية تحدث فجأة دون ترتيبات.

c) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث طبيعية تحدث فجأة بترتيبات.

d) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث طبيعية تحدث سريعًا دون ترتيبات.

# Unit 5 Advanced Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I don't mind giving a lot of money to a good .................... .
   a) reason b) pause c) result d) cause
2. The atmosphere in the room was .................... . There were shouts and arguments.
   a) electricity b) electrical c) electric d) electrician
3. My wife gave the police a full .................... of the robbery and the robbers.
   a) count b) account c) describe d) prescription
4. The atmosphere in our office is very .................... and easy. We are all good friends.
   a) occupied b) electric c) free d) busy
5. The .................... showed that the baby was in the normal position.
   a) scan b) scam c) skim d) download
6. Passengers go through passport .................... and then go onto the plane.
   a) control b) device c) link d) office
7. Some people are extremely .................... about the food they eat.
   a) survey b) illegal c) empty d) particular
8. The engineer .................... all the equipment he needed for the project.
   a) supported b) accounted c) detailed d) detained
9. The weather report says it .................... hot all day.
   a) will be b) is going c) is d) is being
10. The boy is sharpening his pencil, he .................... his homework.
    a) is writing b) will write c) writes d) is going to write
11. I .................... my friends at the club tomorrow. We've made lots of calls.
    a) will see b) am going to see c) am seeing d) see
12. Oh dear, it's already 6 o'clock. We .................... late.
    a) are being b) would be c) are going to be d) must be
13. It's 10 o'clock now and my brother .................... the match on TV.
    a) will be watching b) is watching c) going to watch d) would watch
14. You look tired and so I .................... the bag for you.
    a) going to carry b) am carried c) will be carrying d) will carry
15. By tomorrow morning, I .................... all my jobs.
    a) will be doing b) will have done c) going to do d) do
16. This time next week, we .................... on the beach.
    a) will sit b) will have been sit c) will be sitting d) sit

# Unit 5 Al Adwaa Unit Test

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. I could control the car when I had a flat tire. The synonyms of the word "control" are .............. and .............. .
   a) follow b) surrender c) dominate d) hold e) command
2. Last week, I met some of my old friends ................ and I was so happy.
   a) by accident b) in accident c) by chance d) accident e) in chance

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. The software downloaded from this website is mostly ................ which will damage your computer.
   a) malware b) hardware c) adverts d) apps
4. The officer asked me about the ................ of the accident.
   a) offers b) networks c) organisations d) details
5. It's advisable not to press on a ................ sent from strange emails.
   a) blog b) website c) link d) line
6. The information on the main computer was lost by a professional ................ .
   a) farmer b) gardener c) hacker d) lawyer
7. I can't live here. I feel ................ .
   a) secure b) insecure c) security d) insecurity
8. There are some disadvantages ................ social media.
   a) on b) to c) about d) into
9. We ................ my birthday party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
   a) are having b) will have c) be going to have d) are being had
10. Esraa has just decided to buy this dress. She ................ it now.
    a) is buying b) is going to buy c) won't buy d) buys
11. Everything is arranged now, we ................ for Alexandria tomorrow.
    a) will leave b) are leaving c) leave d) are going to leave
12. I expected that my team ................ the match.
    a) is winning b) will win c) is going to win d) would win
13. Don't worry about your exams, I ................ you.
    a) am helping b) will help c) am going to help d) help
14. Don't pick up the phone. I ................ it.
    a) will answer b) going to answer c) am answering d) answer
15. I think the weather in Russia ................ very cold.
    a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) shall be
16. After she ................ the shopping, she will go home to cook lunch.
    a) is doing b) does c) had done d) will do

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Mourad had got into a million hobbies and activities, but he never stuck with any of them long enough to get any good. He begged his mother for months for a guitar, but strumming the strings hurt his fingers and he didn't like holding the pick, so now the guitar lives under his bed.

After reading an ad, Mourad decided that he wanted a metal detector to find buried pirate treasure. So he didn't spend his money on ice-cream like his younger brother. By the time he had saved $200, he purchased the Wonder-Sweeper metal detector, but he soon found out that no pirates had ever set sail in his neighborhood. Even though he found a key ring, fortyseven cents, and all the bottle caps he could throw.

Given Mourad's history with hobbies, Mourad's father was reluctant to buy him a magician's kit for his birthday. Mourad was insistent. But Mourad's father remembered his own youth long ago when he quit football and started karate practice before hardly getting his equipment dirty. So, Mourad was both surprised and pleased to have the magician's kit.

At this time, a commercial on the TV caught his attention. "Hey, kids! Have you ever wanted to go to space? Mourad walked away from the magic kit and stared at the TV screen. He now knew what his true purpose in life was.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 According to the text, why does Mourad stop playing the guitar?

a) It hurt his fingers. b) He'd rather play drums.

c) It was too easy. d) He failed math.

18 According to the passage, why does Mourad decide that he wants a metal detector?

a) He sees a man at the park with one.

b) His father had one as a child.

c) He saw a TV commercial for one.

d) He read an ad for one in a comic book.

19 How does Mourad get the items that he wants in the story?

a) He asks his mom.

b) He asks his dad.

c) He deprives himself to save money.

d) He does all of these things to get what he wants.

20 Why didn't Mourad's father want to get him the magician's kit for his birthday?

a) Mourad failed math class.

b) Mourad quits too many expensive activities.

c) Mourad has been mean to his younger brother.

d) Mourad went to the park without permission.

21 Why does Mourad's father buy Mourad the magician's kit?

a) Mourad mowed the lawn.

b) He was like Mourad.

c) Mourad bought ice-cream for his brother.

d) Mourad found his father's key ring.

22 Which happened last in the text?

a) Mourad saved up $200.

b) Mourad found forty-seven cents in the park.

c) Mourad took guitar lessons.

d) Mourad was influenced by a comic book.

23 In what genre is this story?

a) Fiction. b) Nonfiction. c) Folklore. d) Poetry.

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- لا يستطيع الإنسان أن يستغنى عن الماء والهواء، ولولاهما لهلكت جميع الكائنات الحية.

a) Man can do without water and air, and without them all living creatures would have perished.

b) Man cannot do with water and air, and without them all living creatures would have perished.

c) Man cannot do without water and air, and without them all living creatures would have perished.

d) Man cannot do without water and air, and without them all living creatures would have lived.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Cooperation among nations of the world will result in spreading peace and security. They should help each other to improve the living conditions of their people.

a) سيؤدى التعاون بين شعوب العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمان. يجب أن يساعدوا بعضهم البعض لتطوير الظروف المعيشية لشعوبهم.

b) سيؤدى التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن. يجب أن يساعدوا بعضهم البعض لتحسين الظروف الوظيفية لشعوبهم.

c) سيؤدى التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن. يجب ألا يساعدوا بعضهم البعض لتحسين الظروف المعيشية لشعوبهم.

d) سيؤدى التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن. يجب أن يساعدوا بعضهم البعض لتحسين الظروف المعيشية لشعوبهم.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"The roles that young people can play to help their country"

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Unit 6  **Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation**

| Model (A) | | Model (B) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| قافية | ........................ | ينشر | ........................ |
| شعر | ........................ | جاد – خطير | ........................ |
| إبحار | ........................ | حصى | ........................ |
| الأدب | ........................ | مناقشة | ........................ |
| مختطف | ........................ | يعتبر/يضع فى الاعتبار | ........................ |
| فرح | ........................ | قش | ........................ |
| قطعة أرض زراعية | ........................ | السيرة الذاتية | ........................ |
| يبتعد عن | ........................ | مختلف عن | ........................ |
| يقوم بمعروف | ........................ | مشابه لـ | ........................ |
| يتبع القواعد | ........................ | يسمع عن | ........................ |
| poem | ........................ | poet | ........................ |
| gardener | ........................ | suppose | ........................ |
| novel | ........................ | romantic | ........................ |
| be called | ........................ | tools | ........................ |
| case | ........................ | kidnapped | ........................ |
| dig | ........................ | treasure | ........................ |
| popular | ........................ | warm | ........................ |
| adventure | ........................ | currant row | ........................ |
| full-time | ........................ | pirate | ........................ |
| sentence | ........................ | be known for | ........................ |

# Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thank you for the great favour that you have ...................... .
   a) made b) played c) had d) done
2. He is fond of the French ...................... and usually buys books about it.
   a) literary b) literature c) literal d) liberal
3. The antonym of the word "improve" is "......................".
   a) enhance b) spend c) desire d) decline
4. We ...................... the front door, so no one enters the house while we are away.
   a) locking b) locked c) locks d) lock
5. The suspect was caught and he couldn't deny ...................... all the money.
   a) to steal b) to stealing c) stole d) stealing
6. He invited me to the party, but I ...................... to go.
   a) agreed b) avoided c) refused d) enjoyed
7. I spoke with him, but I couldn't persuade him ...................... with me.
   a) coming b) to coming c) to come d) come
8. They decided to build a new factory, but we all object ...................... this factory.
   a) building b) to building c) to build d) to have built

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- من الضرورى أن نبنى جيلًا قويًا من الشباب على دراية بمشكلات بلدهم وكيفية حلها.

a) It is unnecessary to build a strong generation of youth aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them.
b) It is necessary to build a strong generation of people aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them.
c) We must build a strong generation of youth awareness of the problems of his country and how to solve them.
d) It is necessary to build a strong generation of youth aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Many kinds of animals and plants are facing extinction because of the man's irresponsible activity. So, man should be careful in his dealing with the environment.

a) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للاضطهاد بسبب نشاط الإنسان المسئول. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان توخى الحذر فى التعامل مع البيئة.
b) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان توخى الحذر فى التعامل مع البيئة.
c) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الكائنات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المنتظم. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان الحرص فى التعامل مع البيئة.
d) الحيوانات والنباتات الطيبة تتعرض للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان توخى الحذر فى معالجة البيئة.



# Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

## Model (A)

| | |
|---|---|
| الوزن الشعرى | ........................ |
| يكرر | ........................ |
| موقف | ........................ |
| موضوع | ........................ |
| عادل | ........................ |
| باختصار | ........................ |
| ليلا | ........................ |
| فى أوقات مختلفة | ........................ |
| keep the gravel walk | ........................ |
| hop | ........................ |
| toy | ........................ |
| exciting | ........................ |
| adult | ........................ |
| hate | ........................ |
| describe | ........................ |
| especially | ........................ |
| season | ........................ |
| remember | ........................ |

## Model (B)

| | |
|---|---|
| يصف | ........................ |
| مكسور | ........................ |
| مختصر | ........................ |
| يروى | ........................ |
| ضوء الشمع | ........................ |
| يبقى فى | ........................ |
| يبحث عن | ........................ |
| يمر أمام | ........................ |
| fair | ........................ |
| differently | ........................ |
| summary | ........................ |
| clear | ........................ |
| verse | ........................ |
| activities | ........................ |
| write about | ........................ |
| dress | ........................ |
| quite | ........................ |
| lie to | ........................ |

# Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My left leg was hurt and I had to .................... to reach home. It was so difficult.
   a) hope b) hop c) hip d) drill
2. You have to .................... on the path in order not to damage the small plants.
   a) do b) stay c) make d) score
3. My father has a .................... way to express his ideas.
   a) clearness b) clarity c) clear d) clearly
4. It is polite to use "please" when you .................... a request.
   a) make b) do c) take d) give
5. I can't remember .................... him the money when we met the other day.
   a) to giving b) give c) giving d) to give
6. Please, stop .................... on the door like that, it is too noisy.
   a) knocking b) to knock c) knock d) to knocking
7. This computer is really bad. I regret .................... it.
   a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) bought
8. I was doing some exercises, but when the phone rang, I stopped .................... it.
   a) answering b) answer c) to answering d) to answer

## 2 A) Choose the correct English translation:

- يمكن أن يكون للبرامج التعليمية والمنصات الالكترونية دور كبير فى النهوض بالعملية التعليمية.

a) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big rule to upgrade the educational process.

b) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big role to upgrade the educational process.

c) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big role to upgrade the educational procession.

d) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big role to uproot the educational process.

### B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Practicing sports is something good for the young and the old alike. It benefits people physically and mentally at the same time.

a) ممارسة الرياضيات شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيا وعقليا فى أوقات مختلفة.

b) ممارسة الرياضة شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص ذهنيًا وعقليا فى نفس الوقت.

c) ممارسة الرياضيات شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيا وعقليا فى نفس الوقت.

d) ممارسة الرياضة شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيا وعقليا فى نفس الوقت.

# Unit 6 Advanced Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Can you think of a ..................... for "peace"?
   a) rhyme b) rhythm c) plot d) verse
2. I think of German as having ..................... hair but a lot of them are dark.
   a) fur b) dark c) fair d) bold
3. The husband wrote his valentine's message to his wife in ..................... .
   a) rhythm b) verse c) cold d) reverse
4. What have you got ..................... up for the weekend?
   a) run b) lined c) plan d) done
5. I don't go to movies or watch much television, so my knowledge of ..................... culture is somewhat limited.
   a) similar b) infamous c) popular d) unknown
6. She said that she worked for the UN organisation, but later we discovered that it was not the ..................... .
   a) form b) case c) plot d) rhyme
7. There is usually a special ..................... of stamps for the memory of October victory 1973.
   a) tissue b) biography c) choice d) issue
8. On a train, a passenger must stand ..................... of the doors for their safety.
   a) fair b) clear c) clearly d) fairly
9. No one can stop her ..................... what she chooses.
   a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying
10. My friend seems ..................... weight.
    a) losing b) to losing c) to be lost d) to have lost
11. You keep ..................... about your ex-fiancée. No wonder she left you.
    a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) to talking
12. I want to work abroad, but not if it means ..................... to live without friends. I don't like that.
    a) having b) to have c) to having d) have
13. Ali was alarmed ..................... the new chairman of the company the following week.
    a) to see b) see c) to seeing d) seeing
14. We don't allow anyone ..................... any noise at night.
    a) to make b) making c) to making d) make
15. My father always encourages ..................... early.
    a) to sleep b) to sleeping c) sleeping d) us to sleeping
16. I regret ..................... my wife that I want no one, but Mona to be my assistant as she thought the other way.
    a) to tell b) telling c) tell d) to telling

# Al Adwaa Unit Test

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. I know you are generous. The antonyms of "generous" are ............... and ............... .
   a) helpful  b) miser  c) mean  d) honor  e) open-handed
2. My phone disappeared and I had to ............... for it everywhere.
   a) research  b) take  c) look  d) lock  e) search

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. My grandfather's garage is full of ............... which he uses to fix cars.
   a) barrows  b) gravels  c) tools  d) mice
4. There was a power failure for an hour last night, so we had to use ............... .
   a) wax  b) sunlight  c) candlelight  d) highlight
5. His ............... mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.
   a) enjoyable  b) popular  c) repeated  d) pleasant
6. Technology has ............... our life easier and more comfortable.
   a) enjoyed  b) made  c) spent  d) done
7. I ............... an hour handling business on his laptop. He is very gentle.
   a) heard  b) took  c) made  d) spent
8. My job is different ............... yours. I'm a surgeon and you are an engineer.
   a) with  b) in  c) at  d) from
9. I regret ............... to help her. She proved to be very greedy.
   a) to promise  b) promising  c) to be promising  d) promise
10. Stop ............... . You are giving me a headache.
    a) to shout  b) shouted  c) shouting  d) to shouting
11. Most parents remember ............... their children to the funfair when they were young.
    a) to take  b) take  c) taking  d) to taking
12. I think it's no good ............... up late as it is harmful to your health.
    a) staying  b) to staying  c) to stay  d) stay
13. We ............... to take a break before finishing our mission.
    a) denied  b) avoided  c) imagined  d) refused
14. My mother has difficulty ............... as she can't breathe well.
    a) sleep  b) in sleep  c) sleeping  d) to sleep
15. It's no use ............... with him. Everything is over.
    a) discuss  b) to discuss  c) discussing  d) discussed
16. Would you mind ............... me to the club?
    a) drive  b) to drive  c) of driving  d) driving

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

"Click!" That's the sound of a seat belt locking in place. Seat belts save lives and that's a fact. When you drive a car and it crashes; what's going to stop your body? Will it be the windshield or your seat belt?

Some people think that seat belts are uncomfortable, but at least it's better than sticking to the windshield. Wearing a seat belt is both cooler and more comfortable than the alternatives. If you are not wearing your seat belt, you can hop around the car and slide in and out of your seat easily. But, you are also more likely to die or suffer serious injuries. You also have to stay in your seat. But, you are much more likely to walk away unharmed from a car accident.

How about giving money away? When you don't wear your seat belt, you are begging to give your money away. That's because if you're riding in a car, and you don't have a seat belt on, the police can fine you.

Wearing a seat belt does not make you invincible. You can still get hurt or killed while wearing your seat belt. But wearing them has proven to be safer than driving without them. You are much less likely to be killed or seriously injured in a car wreck if you are wearing a seat belt. So why not take the safer way?

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. Which title best expresses the main idea of this text? "................".
   a) Car Accidents: Ways That We Can Prevent Them
   b) Slow Down: Save Lives By Driving Slower
   c) Seat Belts: Wear Them to Survive Any Wreck
   d) Why Not? Improve Your Odds with Seat Belts

18. Which best expresses the author's main purpose in writing this text?
   a) To inform readers about seat belt laws.
   b) To persuade readers to wear seat belts.
   c) To entertain readers with stories and jokes about seat belts.
   d) To describe what car accidents are like without seat belts.

19. Which best describes the text structure in the fourth paragraph?
   a) Compare and contrast.
   b) Chronological order.
   c) Sequential order.
   d) Problem and solution.

20. Which best defines the word "alternatives" as it is used in the third paragraph?
   a) Being safe
   b) Being unsafe.
   c) Other choices.
   d) Driving fast.

21. Which best expresses the main idea of the fifth paragraph?
   a) Seat belts are a waste of money.
   b) People don't like to give money away.
   c) Not wearing a seat belt may cost you.
   d) Seat belt laws save lives.

22. Which is not mentioned by the author?
   a) Not wearing a seat belt can be expensive.
   b) Penalties for not wearing a seat belt should increase.
   c) Seat belts keep you from flying through the windshield.
   d) Wearing a seat belt is cooler than suffering an injury.

23 Which best explains why the author starts his essay with the word "click"?

a) He is trying to scare readers.

b) He is trying to get the reader's attention.

c) He is trying to remind readers how seat belts sound when clasped.

d) He is trying to describe what it's like to ride in a car.

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التى نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئى.

a) The future of life on earth depends on the successful of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

b) The future of life on earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environment pollution.

c) The future of life on earth independent on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental population.

d) The future of life on earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

a) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

b) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن الخبرات المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

c) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على سلوك الإنسان.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"Different ways of supporting the community"

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................



AL ADWAA
Gem
Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم اللغة الإنجليزية
نسخة تجريبية للمدرسين
هدية مجانية
1st SEC
FIRST TERM
TREASURE ISLAND
NEW HELLO!
2024



Gem

# New Hello!

الصف الأول الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

**Teacher's Guide دليل المعلم**





## Teacher's Guide

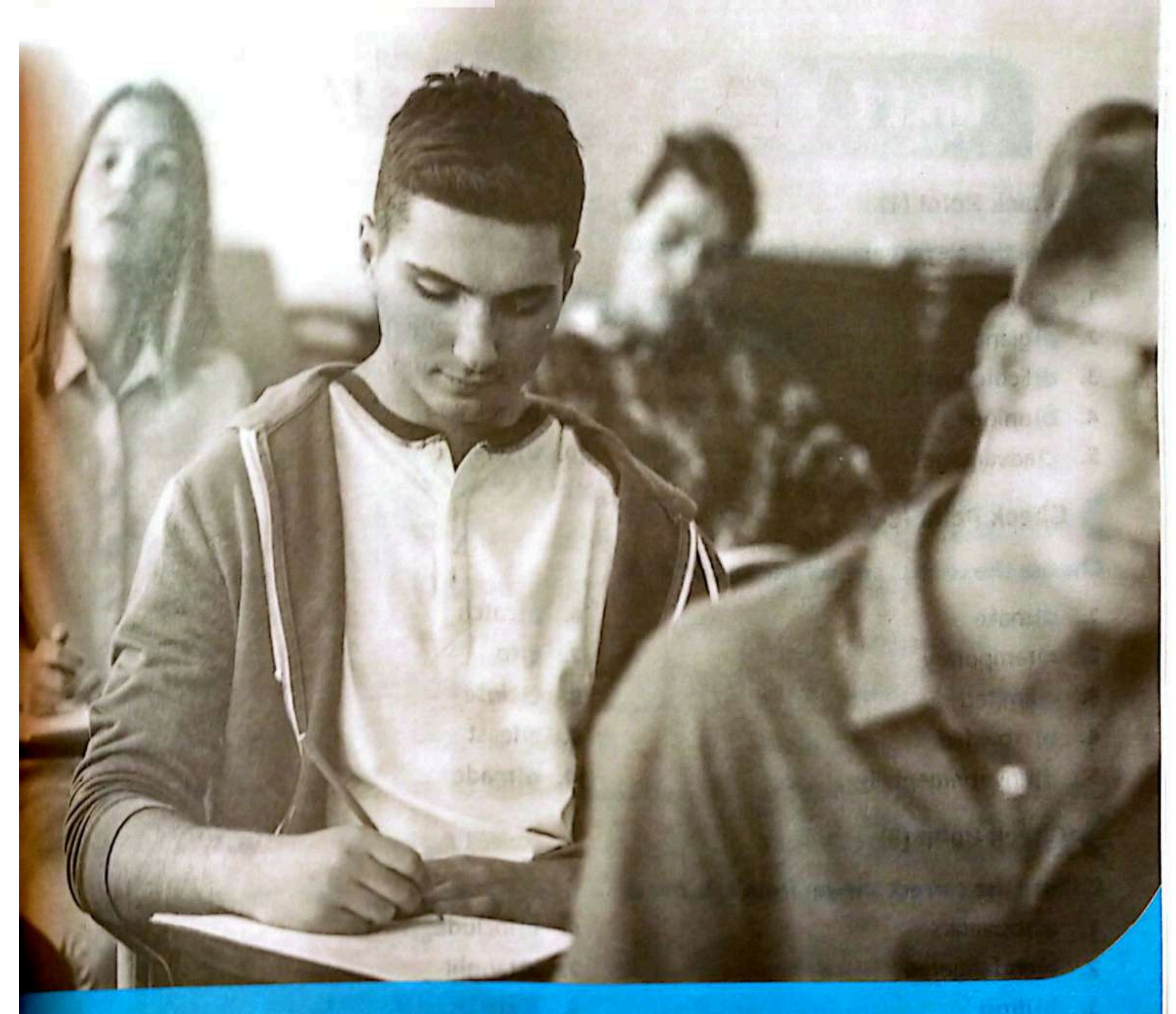
نزل دليل المعلم بصيغة PDF











# Main Book Answers

## Part 2

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) special
2. d) giant
3. d) Ecotourism
4. b) unique
5. c) advantages
6. a) exist
7. a) Environment
8. c) conservationist
9. b) trekking
10. b) swell

## Check Point (2)



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) make
2. c) temporary
3. c) limited
4. b) crowded
5. d) environmentally
6. a) catch
7. c) to
8. c) close
9. c) least
10. d) made

## Check Point (3)

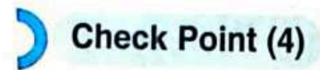
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) souvenirs
2. c) endangered
3. b) drop
4. c) lonely
5. a) isolated
6. b) include
7. a) taught
8. c) got to
9. c) everyday
10. d) including

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) spicy
2. c) go
3. c) normal
4. b) environmentally friendly
5. d) b & c
6. b) unique
7. a) biologist
8. d) introduced
9. b) endanger
10. a) protect
11. a) coral reefs
12. a) impact
13. a) sustainable
14. d) attractions
15. d) destination
16. b) conservationists
17. c) materials
18. b) Ecotourism
19. a) swelled
20. b) trekking
21. d) ecosystem
22. c) off
23. b) do
24. b) sustainable
25. d) bank
26. d) gigantic/ e) colossal
27. a) seek/ c) face
28. c) exceptional/ d) special
29. d) close/ e) near
30. b) Finally/ e) In the end



## Check Point (4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) received
2. c) in
3. d) the other day
4. c) went
5. c) came

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) were having
2. c) in
3. d) rang
4. c) were playing
5. d) lasted
6. c) was studying
7. d) was painting
8. b) were you doing
9. d) was landing
10. d) was being watched
11. a) didn't use
12. c) use
13. c) was driving
14. b) didn't use to
15. d) was cooking
16. b) fell
17. c) was washing
18. c) was sleeping
19. b) was being chased
20. d) While
21. b) Did you have
22. c) worked
23. c) used to sleep
24. c) to getting
25. b) didn't use to
26. a) worked
27. c) no longer/used
28. a) he sleeps early now
29. b) during my lunch
30. d) We didn't go out last night.
31. c) Did you liked my present?

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) population
2. b) victims
3. d) isolated
4. c) fussy
5. c) along
6. c) internal
7. c) catch
8. a) impact
9. d) sustainable
10. a) trekked
11. b) conservationists
12. a) coast
13. b) went
14. a) sound
15. b) takes
16. b) dropped
17. c) was being prepared
18. a) was thinking
19. b) learnt
20. c) I was having
21. a) were you doing
22. c) went
23. d) used to
24. d) worked
25. a) were watching
26. d) usually went
27. c) found
28. a) was taken
29. d) visited
30. b) was stolen

# Unit 1  Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) relaxing
2. c) castle
3. d) noisy
4. b) resorts
5. a) amazing
6. a) brilliant
7. b) active
8. d) actually
9. c) expects
10. c) temples

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) stuck
2. b) of
3. a) peaceful
4. a) peacefully
5. d) taking
6. b) over the moon
7. c) fascinating
8. c) worrying

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) adults
2. b) atmosphere
3. c) robbed
4. d) stole
5. c) explore
6. a) find
7. d) teenager
8. b) discovered

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) relax
2. b) modern
3. b) discovered
4. d) teenagers
5. d) upset
6. d) gardener
7. c) actually
8. a) balcony
9. c) peaceful
10. d) ancient
11. a) robbed
12. b) stole
13. a) transport
14. c) stressed
15. d) boring
16. b) perform
17. b) climate
18. b) stuck
19. d) support
20. b) explored
21. a) discovered
22. c) grow
23. b) tiny
24. d) resorts
25. d) make
26. b) of
27. b) on board/ e) aboard
28. b) ugly/ d) awful
29. c) kids/ d) children
30. b) dull/ d) boring

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) was sleeping
2. c) my stay
3. a) On
4. c) didn't go
5. b) was walking
6. b) during
7. b) was helping
8. a) didn't hear
9. d) was working
10. d) when
11. b) worked
12. b) was watching
13. c) was revising
14. c) didn't break
15. c) during
16. d) stole
17. d) were
18. a) found
19. a) when
20. c) being examined
21. a) sleep
22. b) had studied
23. d) had met
24. d) seemed
25. c) worked
26. b) was a past habit
27. b) The speaker
28. a) I no longer work for it
29. c) Mona and her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
30. b) It was me.
31. c) not fat
32. b) didn't get

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) strange
2. d) in
3. a) tiny
4. b) climate
5. b) crowded
6. c) aboard
7. d) quiet
8. d) make
9. a) stuck
10. c) fascinated
11. b) awful
12. c) teenager
13. d) boring
14. b) ancient
15. c) over
16. c) told
17. d) doesn't
18. c) was taking
19. a) was studying
20. c) didn't belong
21. d) was being fixed
22. b) During
23. c) had
24. d) being bathed
25. b) isn't
26. c) While
27. c) am not used to
28. c) During
29. b) While
30. a) During

## Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) scar
2. c) grabbed
3. a) swords
4. c) inn
5. b) pale
6. b) cliff
7. a) dare
8. a) guard
9. c) blind
10. c) owes
11. b) adventures
12. a) realised
13. d) admiral
14. c) fell over
15. c) gun

## Skills Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

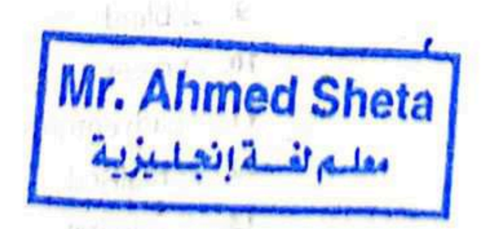
1. **b)** have beneficial effect
2. **b)** brings about primitive and isolated communities
3. **c)** to exceed speed limits
4. **b)** people very much like to have cars
5. **a)** provide job opportunities
6. **d)** a & c
7. **b)** Solving the problems of cars and roads

**2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. c) الشباب هم العمود الفقرى لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
2. a) يعرف الإنسان جيدا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك فى الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
3. d) تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
4. a) ينبغى أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال فى دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة فى تقدم بلدهم.
5. c) مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.

**B) Choose the correct English translation:**

6. **c)** It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.
7. **a)** The housing problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.
8. **b)** The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
9. **a)** All we dream about and hope to get is real opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy life.
10. **c)** We all consider the internet a miracle of this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all fields of life.



## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) believable/ e) ordinary
2. a) endangered/ d) in danger
3. b) unique
4. d) included
5. b) biology
6. a) exotic
7. c) stuck
8. b) climate
9. b) active
10. c) During
11. b) was going
12. a) began
13. d) were you doing
14. b) was coming
15. b) were
16. d) lives in another city now

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. a) he was getting a tattoo
18. d) they think it is fashionable
19. c) brave
20. a) the influence of friends
21. d) Why people get tattoos
22. a) wealth
23. b) Jack

**24. Choose the correct English translation:**

a) The acquisition of the English language can be done through watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.

**25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا إلى المياه فى مصر فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب أن نرشد استخدامنا للمياه؛ وإلا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

**26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

# Unit 2  Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) community
2. a) track
3. c) agreement
4. b) generous
5. d) donates
6. a) knowledge
7. d) roared



## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) injured
2. b) attacked
3. a) get
4. d) of
5. b) founder
6. d) assist
7. c) mean
8. b) desirable
9. d) part
10. d) all mentioned

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) surname
2. d) others
3. a) for
4. d) respectable
5. d) transplant

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) speed
2. b) founder
3. d) recognised
4. d) pressure
5. c) generous
6. c) task
7. a) checked
8. a) health
9. a) intelligence
10. a) admiring
11. a) another
12. d) charities
13. d) transfusion
14. a) desire
15. a) injured
16. c) prestige
17. a) documentary
18. d) foundations
19. c) short-term
20. b) generation
21. c) nickname
22. d) out
23. b) gets
24. c) donors
25. b) persuasion
26. c) beneficial
27. d) part
28. b) generosity
29. a) persuade
30. a) study/ c) to study
31. d) reach/ e) achieve
32. a) esteem/ b) influence
33. a) occurred/ b) took place

## Language Exercises

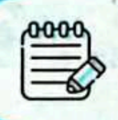
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) give
2. d) opens
3. a) write
4. b) move
5. b) went
6. a) used to
7. c) snows
8. d) spent
9. a) leaves
10. a) don't read
11. d) is used to
12. c) visited
13. a) visited
14. b) is never
15. c) comes
16. a) Do
17. c) went
18. d) saw
19. a) watches
20. c) Is
21. b) go
22. b) is always
23. d) is
24. d) was done
25. d) finish
26. c) never
27. b) am used to walking
28. b) don't open
29. c) timetable
30. d) this is his permanent place of living
31. d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable
32. a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) transplant
2. c) respectable
3. d) research
4. b) view
5. b) founded
6. a) relationship
7. c) benefit
8. b) share
9. c) amongst
10. d) persuasive
11. a) pressure
12. c) generosity
13. b) generous
14. c) pen name
15. d) praise
16. c) runs
17. b) always
18. a) is always
19. a) took
20. c) starts
21. c) isn't used to
22. d) are encouraged
23. a) finish/will go
24. b) turns
25. c) never
26. b) usually goes
27. a) didn't rain
28. c) always
29. c) had
30. b) was punished

# Unit 2  Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) employs
2. d) personality
3. b) signs
4. a) recent
5. c) monitor
6. b) disappeared
7. d) experts
8. a) local
9. d) skill
10. d) aims



## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) in
2. d) gave
3. c) located
4. a) location
5. d) lost
6. a) remote
7. d) to
8. d) doing
9. d) amazement
10. d) on

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) on
2. c) is
3. b) owed
4. c) borrowed
5. b) pharmacist
6. b) recent
7. c) as
8. a) for
9. d) oculist
10. b) own

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) aim
2. c) follow
3. a) nearby
4. d) change
5. a) appearance
6. b) employ
7. b) headquarters
8. d) movement
9. d) protect
10. a) location
11. a) paw prints
12. c) protection
13. b) killings
14. a) monitor
15. a) am
16. d) community
17. b) empathy
18. a) on
19. d) to
20. a) employ
21. b) monitors
22. d) missing
23. d) on
24. a) on
25. c) do
26. d) all mentioned
27. b) amazed
28. b) hire/ e) appoint
29. b) defence/ c) resistance
30. c) from/ e) against
31. b) looking/ d) searching

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) are grown
2. a) is watched
3. d) smokes
4. b) are read
5. b) never
6. a) contain
7. d) were painted
8. d) are taught
9. b) isn't used
10. b) are asked
11. d) give
12. c) was paved
13. c) is prepared
14. b) is affected
15. d) is serviced
16. a) are given
17. b) is included
18. b) are given
19. a) are usually watered
20. d) are made
21. a) are made
22. a) meet
23. a) will take off
24. d) sign
25. a) is always punished
26. d) are born
27. b) is he
28. b) need
29. a) Was
30. a) was hurt
31. c) fact
32. c) all the students were told about the surprise

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) tribe
2. b) empathy
3. c) owed
4. c) print
5. d) as
6. c) Hunting
7. c) skills
8. a) monitor
9. b) desires
10. a) desire
11. d) sense
12. d) employs
13. b) prestige
14. a) guardian
15. b) recent
16. c) grow
17. b) had
18. a) use
19. a) is shown
20. d) are needed
21. b) is cleaned
22. c) was arrested
23. c) are protected
24. d) is known
25. a) are watched
26. b) is brought
27. c) am not allowed
28. b) feel
29. c) aren't discussed
30. d) an oculist examined my eyes

## Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) head
2. b) escape
3. a) clue
4. c) magistrate
5. d) crew
6. d) stolen
7. a) servants
8. b) inside
9. c) prepare
10. d) directions
11. b) includes
12. c) describe
13. a) hidden
14. b) burying
15. b) robbed

## Skills Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) no one can have his own way all the time
2. a) people usually want to have their own way
3. d) right and thoughtful
4. c) behave in a responsible way
5. c) community
6. c) bad behaviours
7. d) all mentioned




**2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. b) يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
2. d) يمكـــن أن يســـاعد التبـــرع بالدم العديد من الأشـــخاص الذين هم في أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعـــد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.
3. a) البشر هم أكبر تهديد لبقاء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض بسبب آثار تغير المناخ.
4. d) يبذل آباؤنا جهودا كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
5. a) على الصعيد الدولي، مثل صلاح مصر في مســابقات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية في بطولة كأس الأمم الإفريقية تحت ٢٠سنة.

**B) Choose the correct English translation:**

6. c) Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, is considered a talented player with good morals.
7. b) Education is the basis for progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.
8. a) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.
9. a) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars and the people of thinking and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
10. a) Despite the great scientific progress, there are still many species of animals at risk of extinction.

## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) continuing/ c) lasting
2. a) in/ c) on
3. a) for
4. b) speed
5. d) monitor
6. d) responsibility
7. b) transfusion
8. b) injured
9. b) travelling
10. a) had
11. a) scored
12. d) visits
13. a) is always
14. c) wasn't allowed
15. a) used to stay up late
16. c) is burnt

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. b) predator
18. b) in danger
19. d) can change their skin colour
20. a) distract the predator
21. b) helps it hide from the attackers
22. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
23. a) The Magician Octopuses

**24. Choose the correct English translation:**

b) All of us dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame comes from hard work, patience, and also suffering.

**25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) فى الوقت الحاضر، تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.

**26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 1, 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) look for/ d) search for
2. c) comfortable/ d) calm
3. d) endanger
4. c) sunbathe
5. d) crowded
6. a) peaceful
7. d) pressure
8. b) sense
9. d) responsibility
10. b) was leaving
11. b) During
12. a) lived
13. b) had had
14. a) is always
15. b) doesn't
16. a) saw

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. c) Ecosystem
18. b) pink sand
19. b) remote
20. b) going diving
21. a) a limited number
22. b) Ecotourism and its importance
23. a) the Red Sea Coast




24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
   b) Every student must work hard and not waste their time sitting for hours in front of the TV in order to achieve everything, they dream of in the future.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
   d) بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
   Left to the student.

# Unit 3  Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) merchant
2. c) empty
3. d) remove
4. a) similar
5. b) miserable
6. c) theatre
7. a) support
8. d) plump
9. c) honest
10. d) lucky

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) after
2. b) owe
3. c) break
4. b) prison
5. d) adore
6. b) exhausted
7. a) twins
8. a) reward
9. a) earner
10. c) of

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) career
2. d) instrument
3. b) salary
4. c) earns
5. d) hardly

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) tired
2. c) record
3. b) spend
4. b) rewards
5. d) characters
6. a) break
7. c) pay
8. d) lucky
9. a) entertains
10. d) debts
11. c) storyteller
12. d) empty
13. b) owe
14. d) criminal
15. d) opportunity
16. b) deserves
17. d) miss
18. c) rewarding
19. c) machines
20. c) fee
21. b) make
22. c) prison
23. c) won
24. c) miser
25. b) misery
26. d) rat race
27. d) removed
28. b) merchandise
29. a) after
30. a) earn/ c) make
31. d) fat/ e) thick
32. a) care for/ c) look after
33. b) lend/ e) return
34. b) The disabled/ c) Disabled people
35. c) weary/ e) exhausted

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) for
2. b) have developed
3. a) retired
4. b) haven't finished
5. c) have been lost
6. d) have won
7. d) ever
8. d) have ever read
9. d) have found
10. c) have just had
11. b) 's lost
12. c) For
13. d) since
14. d) has been
15. a) haven't seen
16. b) Since
17. b) already
18. a) have been to
19. b) has gone
20. c) ever
21. d) saw
22. b) was paved
23. b) for
24. c) three times this week
25. d) has been
26. a) has been said
27. b) Has the report been
28. d) has already been repaired
29. b) haven't eaten
30. c) has painted
31. d) she spent all the summer in Marina
32. b) is back now

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) debt
2. d) theatre
3. b) temples
4. d) room
5. a) support
6. c) career
7. c) miserable
8. d) works
9. b) imprisonment
10. c) plump
11. d) antonyms
12. a) rats
13. a) debts
14. d) merchant
15. a) found
16. a) for
17. a) travelled
18. b) already
19. d) have ever read
20. a) has been
21. d) has been hacked
22. b) was sent
23. d) Has the report already been printed?
24. b) for
25. a) since
26. b) has gained
27. d) started
28. c) went
29. a) has gone
30. d) has washed

# Unit 3  Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) admitted
2. b) voluntary
3. c) experience
4. a) planning
5. c) describe
6. a) trust
7. b) cultures
8. a) painted
9. c) trick
10. d) adults

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) made
2. d) disability
3. b) fortunate
4. c) on
5. a) done
6. b) spend
7. a) deny
8. c) associated
9. b) uncommon
10. c) Telling

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) Later
2. d) take
3. c) watching
4. d) thousands of pounds
5. b) latter

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) telling
2. b) plan
3. b) do
4. b) main
5. c) touch
6. d) break
7. a) latter
8. a) trust
9. d) stepfather
10. d) admitted
11. c) cultures
12. d) association
13. c) paint
14. d) admitted
15. a) dreamer
16. d) tricks
17. b) experience
18. b) voluntary
19. c) make
20. a) stepmother
21. d) down
22. c) disability
23. a) associated
24. d) play/on
25. c) description
26. d) a difference
27. b) cultured
28. b) free/ d) willingly
29. b) major/ e) main
30. c) married/ d) is married to
31. b) doubt/ d) disbelieve
32. d) discovered/ e) found out
33. b) unfamiliar/ e) unusual

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) since
2. b) has worked
3. a) have ever met
4. c) since
5. d) never
6. c) already
7. b) since
8. c) has rained
9. b) never
10. d) has just died
11. c) has been warned
12. d) since
13. a) never
14. b) has been
15. b) has your father been
16. b) cooked
17. a) travelled
18. d) when
19. d) since
20. c) has been playing
21. b) has been
22. c) since
23. c) have ever visited
24. c) did
25. a) has been studying
26. b) has written
27. b) has gone
28. b) Since
29. b) for how long
30. a) have been to
31. c) were
32. b) I haven't played football since Monday
33. d) It is the first time to see a student who is clever like Marwan
34. c) he still works as a waiter

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) experience
2. a) main
3. c) association
4. d) opportunity
5. d) solutions
6. b) surprise
7. d) the disabled
8. b) of
9. b) cultural
10. c) cultured
11. d) banks
12. a) went
13. a) common
14. a) planning
15. b) community
16. b) in
17. a) since
18. c) since
19. a) lived
20. b) just now
21. a) has fallen
22. c) were taken
23. d) has been made
24. b) have arrested
25. d) when
26. a) for
27. a) is still
28. a) has worked
29. c) was given
30. c) Were you

## Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) harbour
2. b) gang
3. d) parrots
4. d) patient
5. b) clues
6. d) destination
7. b) mutiny
8. d) barrel
9. a) crutch
10. c) secret
11. a) pirates
12. b) blind
13. d) bank
14. c) crew
15. d) explain

## Skills Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) can treat a lot of diseases
2. a) natural remedies
3. a) herbalist
4. c) it cures and protects from side effects
5. a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
6. c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
7. d) willow tree

### 2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. b) علينا بذل جهود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل؛ وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد كذلك.
2. d) يعتبر الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
3. c) يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الرئيس للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.
4. c) هنـاك الكثير من الأشـخاص الذيـن يعانون من البؤس؛ لأنهـم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المـال ليحظوا بحياة كريمة أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
5. b) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.

### B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. b) Parents, teachers and the media play an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
7. c) There is no doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything easy to happen.
8. a) It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.
9. c) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.
10. a) The establishment of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.

## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) become/ d) get
2. a) soft/ b) delicate
3. c) emptied
4. b) remove
5. a) discovered
6. a) opportunity
7. d) pay
8. c) gained
9. d) reward
10. c) have learnt
11. b) haven't met
12. c) for
13. c) has cleaned
14. d) saw
15. d) since
16. a) haven't done

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. b) liked his appearance
18. c) modern
19. b) The writer is not going to work.
20. c) careless
21. c) 75 pounds.
22. c) his photos
23. c) His mum paid for him when he reached home.

**24. Choose the correct English translation:**

a) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

**25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمرا مهمًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فى الأنشطة المختلفة.

**26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

# Unit 4  Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) connection
2. d) follow
3. c) article
4. d) magazine
5. a) teammates
6. b) extra
7. c) teenagers
8. a) grade
9. b) face
10. d) cool

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) advice
2. b) relax
3. b) for
4. c) make
5. d) to
6. a) personable
7. b) stress
8. d) avoid
9. a) preferred
10. b) ourselves

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) after
2. a) dress
3. d) Life
4. b) papers
5. d) no word

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) join
2. a) article
3. b) wear
4. c) useful
5. c) noticeboard
6. b) granted
7. c) follow
8. d) stressful
9. b) stressed
10. d) friendship
11. a) contact
12. a) with
13. b) personal
14. a) personnel
15. d) stressful
16. b) magazine
17. c) cool
18. d) conversation
19. a) grade
20. b) put on
21. d) teenagers
22. a) teenage
23. b) about
24. b) Doing
25. d) on their own
26. a) studying
27. d) individual
28. a) busy
29. b) to
30. c) go online
31. d) make
32. a) passed/ d) succeeded in
33. c) on his own/ e) alone
34. a) confront/ b) encounter
35. c) neglected/ e) ignored

## Check Point (4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) the
2. a) a
3. a) a
4. c) the
5. b) an




## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) an
2. c) the
3. c) the
4. a) a
5. d) no article
6. d) no article
7. d) no article
8. c) the
9. c) the
10. a) a
11. b) the
12. a) a/no article
13. c) the
14. d) no article
15. c) the
16. d) no article
17. c) the
18. d) slower/the
19. a) a
20. d) no article
21. b) an
22. b) The plane has
23. a) A
24. c) the
25. d) no article
26. b) an
27. d) -/-
28. d) no article/no article
29. c) an/the
30. c) -/the
31. d) no article/the
32. a) The/no article
33. d) no article/an
34. b) the Italian language
35. c) the giraffe has a long neck

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) join
2. b) favourite
3. a) extra
4. d) practice
5. c) individual
6. b) Life
7. c) Put on
8. d) noticeboard
9. b) faces
10. c) pronounces
11. d) pronunciation
12. d) give
13. c) personal
14. c) advice
15. b) stressed
16. d) no article
17. d) no article
18. c) the
19. d) no article
20. c) no article/no article
21. c) the
22. b) ants
23. c) the
24. a) a
25. d) no article
26. d) no article
27. a) a
28. b) a/no article
29. c) the
30. d) no article

## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) bully
2. d) negative
3. b) host
4. c) laugh
5. a) behaves
6. b) debate
7. c) soon
8. a) laugh
9. b) list

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) took
2. c) turns
3. a) effect
4. c) on
5. d) Policing
6. a) positive
7. b) cover
8. d) hospitable
9. c) far
10. d) with

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) debate
2. d) twelve-year-old
3. c) week's
4. c) either
5. a) off

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) social
2. c) lonely
3. d) hates
4. a) turns
5. c) hostess
6. c) dropped
7. b) bullying
8. c) cheat
9. a) copy
10. b) hostess
11. c) debate
12. d) effect
13. a) affected
14. b) laugh
15. a) phone-in
16. b) too
17. b) lonely
18. a) experiences
19. a) list
20. c) take
21. c) terrible
22. b) nursing
23. a) nurse
24. d) about
25. b) concerned
26. c) different
27. b) on
28. d) along
29. b) at
30. b) moved
31. c) disgusting/ e) offensive
32. a) brave/ c) bold
33. a) resumed/ d) proceeded
34. b) too/ d) as well
35. c) any more/ e) any longer

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) much
2. b) is made
3. a) some
4. a) wasn't
5. c) are
6. a) want
7. b) a
8. c) some
9. a) many
10. d) some
11. b) Much
12. a) was stolen
13. d) isn't
14. d) tube
15. c) much
16. b) few
17. a) much
18. d) some
19. c) any
20. c) quantity
21. a) is
22. a) was
23. c) keeps
24. c) was
25. c) is insufficient
26. d) a lot
27. b) a
28. b) How much
29. a) is
30. c) a hair
31. a) litre/a kilo
32. b) He told me an important information about the crime.
33. a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) officer
2. b) debates
3. a) three-year-business plan
4. d) rucksack
5. c) nasty
6. c) discussion
7. a) scared
8. b) line
9. c) nursing
10. d) nursery
11. c) bullied
12. d) cheating
13. a) cheat
14. d) a list
15. b) hiding
16. a) a
17. b) much
18. b) is
19. c) a little
20. b) Some
21. d) the papers
22. c) a means
23. c) much
24. b) many
25. a) Do
26. a) is
27. d) some bread
28. c) aren't
29. a) The
30. d) jar

## Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) trust
2. a) whistled
3. c) branch
4. a) relax
5. d) shore
6. b) diseases
7. c) surprised
8. a) on
9. d) expression
10. c) along
11. b) pretty
12. a) excited
13. b) hills
14. d) correct
15. a) gun

## Skills Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **b)** people, their community and their society
2. **d)** improve people's income and bring peace
3. **a)** enable their abilities and characters to live properly
4. **d)** strengthen their flexibility in life
5. **a)** get paid competitive salaries
6. **d)** enough classrooms and separate toilets
7. **a)** How Can Education Be Good?

**2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. **d)** يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.
2. **b)** تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرا فى تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
3. **a)** لا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر بغيض.
4. **a)** علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.
5. **c)** تسعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطى وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.

**B) Choose the correct English translation:**

6. **c)** We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.
7. **a)** Electricity has become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot live without it.
8. **d)** It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on television or the Internet.
9. **b)** Parents shape the personalities of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
10. **a)** Globalisation has a serious effect on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously to benefit from the fruits of technology.



## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) dressed in/ d) wearing
2. a) finish/ c) end
3. a) police
4. a) cheating
5. c) instead of
6. b) the life
7. a) favourite
8. d) friendships
9. d) contact
10. c) The
11. a) a
12. c) some
13. d) no article
14. d) a glass
15. c) The more
16. d) a

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. a) clearing
18. b) global warming
19. c) leads to
20. a) environmental
21. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
22. c) are already facing
23. b) Global Disasters
24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
    d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
    Left to the student.



## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 3, 4)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) borrowed money from/e) owe money to
2. b) sad/d) depressed
3. c) voluntary
4. b) make
5. d) experience
6. d) scar
7. b) for granted
8. d) stressful
9. c) uncover
10. a) been to
11. d) has worked
12. c) his marriage
13. b) many
14. c) the
15. a) a
16. c) the

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**




17. b) work values
18. a) meeting a deadline
19. d) sickness
20. c) under pressure
21. d) making mistakes
22. c) calm
23. b) working under pressure

**24. Choose the correct English translation:**

c) Poverty and unemployment are a time bomb, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.

**25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل سويًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

**26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.





## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) hack
2. c) check
3. b) device
4. a) system
5. c) safe
6. a) worldwide
7. c) security
8. d) shopping
9. b) criminal
10. b) apps

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) particular
2. a) communication
3. d) electric
4. c) take
5. b) to
6. a) lawful
7. c) evacuate
8. c) into
9. d) imaginative
10. a) making



## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) task
2. d) experience
3. c) electrician
4. b) enables
5. a) mission

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) check
2. b) Smartphones
3. d) camping
4. a) experience
5. c) recent
6. b) hack
7. b) major
8. d) network
9. c) latest
10. a) power stations
11. d) app
12. c) by
13. c) devices
14. b) survey
15. a) Applications
16. d) communication
17. c) hacked
18. a) smart
19. d) accident
20. c) businesses
21. b) advantages
22. a) on
23. d) development
24. d) were capable of
25. b) imaginative
26. a) danger
27. a) applicable
28. a) to
29. b) contact/ d) communicate with
30. b) cooling/ e) freezing
31. c) evacuate/ d) empty
32. b) are able to exist/ d) are capable of existing

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) will
2. a) will get
3. b) will probably work
4. d) am going to watch
5. d) will turn
6. d) will win
7. b) is going to crash
8. a) am going to
9. b) will rain
10. b) is going to fall
11. b) will be
12. b) will be sent
13. b) is going to fall
14. a) will cut
15. d) will clean
16. c) will be
17. d) is going to buy
18. a) will be
19. a) am going to go
20. a) are going to score
21. b) will pass
22. b) is going to be
23. b) am going to meet
24. d) am going to watch
25. a) would participate
26. c) will
27. c) will get
28. b) request
29. c) Be careful or you are falling.
30. d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) particular
2. b) communications
3. c) flexible
4. d) Lightning
5. d) connected
6. a) Security
7. c) task
8. c) petrol
9. d) apps
10. a) navigation
11. b) create
12. d) technology
13. a) hack
14. b) worldwide
15. a) electric
16. a) will be
17. d) will be
18. a) will probably visit
19. a) would pass
20. b) is going to meet
21. a) would take
22. b) will enjoy
23. d) will be
24. d) will
25. b) is going to fall
26. c) am going to have
27. d) is going to wash
28. b) will get
29. c) does
30. a) am going to live

## Skills Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

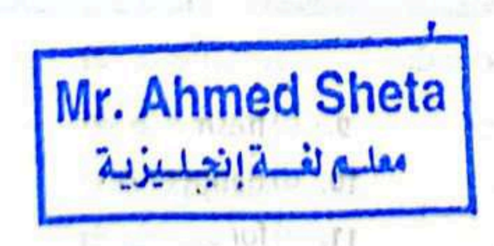
1. b) three
2. d) old people
3. a) desires
4. c) hardworking
5. c) enjoy good and bad things
6. d) not many
7. c) Periods of life

**2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. c) يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات فى عالمنا.
2. a) فى وقت السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.
3. a) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
4. d) أدى التطور الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون؛ مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.
5. a) إن آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

**B) Choose the correct English translation:**

6. d) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
7. a) Television has become a means of spreading knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children alike.
8. a) Rural life is more beautiful than city life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and pure air.
9. d) Man is by nature a lover of nature and beauty, they search for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
10. c) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and duties.



## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 5)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) minor/ d) secondary
2. c) every day/ e) daily
3. b) phishing
4. a) scam
5. b) personal
6. c) flexible
7. d) communications
8. b) illegally
9. a) leaves
10. a) are watching
11. c) are going to make
12. a) will fall
13. c) is going to perform
14. d) will be
15. c) are meeting
16. b) is going to be

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. a) computer technology
18. c) trade and business
19. d) stock market
20. b) communicate
21. a) digital technology
22. c) The advantages of globalisation
23. b) globalisation

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

 d) Reading is considered one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

 c) الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودا لاقتلاعهم، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

 Left to the student.

# Unit 6



Part (1)

## Lessons 1 & 2

### Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) treasure
2. b) hay
3. d) digging
4. a) lawyer
5. a) romantic
6. d) kidnapped
7. c) biography
8. b) serious
9. c) Polish
10. c) supposes

### Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) do
2. d) joyful
3. c) to
4. d) poetic
5. c) helpful
6. d) follow
7. d) adventure
8. a) popularity
9. c) dangerous
10. a) losing

### Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) into
2. b) hijacked
3. a) published
4. b) autobiography
5. c) aged

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) poets
2. d) gravel
3. c) capture
4. d) island
5. b) hay
6. c) In
7. c) discuss
8. b) literature
9. c) fields
10. d) rhyme
11. b) case
12. a) popular
13. d) strange
14. a) a while
15. c) Suppose
16. b) rhythm
17. a) issue
18. a) adventure
19. b) plot
20. b) keep the gravel walk
21. d) variety
22. d) with
23. c) dig
24. b) came out/ c) was published
25. a) turned/ b) made
26. a) remote/ e) distant
27. a) familiar/ b) conventional
28. a) a success/ c) successful

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) wasting
2. c) to send
3. a) to meet
4. c) doing
5. a) sharing
6. b) to treat
7. d) coming
8. d) being
9. b) to fly
10. c) to help
11. b) sitting
12. a) to get
13. a) writing
14. a) trying
15. b) to seeing
16. b) to buy
17. a) to buy
18. c) spending
19. d) avoid
20. a) In addition to
21. c) to studying
22. a) visiting
23. a) sailing
24. c) to play
25. d) to joining
26. b) to building
27. d) to accept
28. b) going
29. c) doing
30. c) denied
31. c) to phone
32. a) phoning
33. d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.
34. c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) Pirates
2. c) verse
3. d) treasure
4. d) locked
5. b) came out
6. c) kidnapped
7. d) all mentioned
8. b) dig
9. a) Currant
10. d) Hay
11. a) romantic
12. b) a success
13. c) full-time
14. a) into
15. b) fair
16. a) to join
17. c) going
18. d) meeting
19. a) to buy
20. c) stealing
21. b) sleeping
22. d) enjoy
23. b) to be
24. a) to go
25. c) reading
26. c) objected
27. b) to apologise
28. a) cleaning
29. d) buying
30. b) coming





## Check Point (1)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) hopping
2. a) summary
3. c) candlelight
4. d) broken
5. b) clear
6. d) brief

## Check Point (2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) by
2. c) at
3. b) dressing
4. d) specialist
5. b) bright
6. c) prejudiced
7. c) look for
8. a) situated

## Check Point (3)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) lie
2. b) hardly
3. c) lied
4. a) quite
5. c) quit

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) fun
2. a) had
3. b) stay
4. c) opinion
5. b) grown-ups
6. b) hopping
7. a) situation
8. c) summary
9. d) candlelight
10. d) rhymes
11. d) Rhythm
12. c) laid
13. a) toys
14. d) all mentioned
15. c) broken
16. a) activities
17. c) in brief
18. d) playing
19. c) for
20. a) went
21. a) differently
22. c) specifically/ d) particularly
23. a) dull/ b) boring
24. b) short/ c) compressed
25. d) describes/ e) details
26. b) successful/ d) a success
27. c) aged/ d) at the age of

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) have
2. d) to understand
3. c) to buying
4. d) to go
5. a) to have
6. c) making
7. a) parking
8. a) trying
9. a) staying
10. d) talk
11. b) to get
12. d) to tell
13. d) to spend
14. d) visiting
15. a) breaking
16. d) to sign
17. a) taking
18. b) making
19. d) delivering
20. b) to eat
21. a) to get
22. b) wasting
23. a) meeting
24. d) not helping
25. d) going
26. c) meeting
27. c) not to waste
28. c) singing
29. c) go
30. a) stopped eating
31. d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
32. c) first I remembered, then I did my homework
33. b) my mobile isn't with me now

## Test yourself Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) literature
2. b) makes
3. c) length
4. a) quiet
5. a) breakable
6. c) in
7. d) hop
8. a) activities
9. c) candlelight
10. a) toy
11. b) laid
12. a) dress
13. b) especially
14. d) brief
15. b) past
16. b) swimming
17. d) to go
18. a) to leave
19. b) to answer
20. b) watching
21. b) go
22. b) studying
23. a) meeting
24. c) going
25. d) being taken
26. b) to fly
27. b) to retire
28. b) fancy
29. a) stealing
30. a) to pay

## Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 6)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) pirates
2. d) defend
3. d) contact
4. a) fired
5. c) defended
6. b) including
7. d) advantage
8. c) prevent
9. b) cannon
10. a) attacked
11. d) reached
12. c) weapons
13. a) fort
14. b) take down
15. a) supplies

## Skills Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) Defeats.
2. d) One of the greatest football players.
3. a) more popular than
4. a) his bad behaviour
5. b) have achievements in the game
6. a) crazy about
7. c) Asia

**2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. b) يعرف الإنسان جيدا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
2. a) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومى؛ مما يساعد على رفع مستوى معيشتنا.
3. d) لكل طفل الحق فى أن يعيش حياة سعيدة، ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما فى وسعها للتأكد أن الأطفال يحيون وينمون.
4. c) قناة السويس هى أكبر ممر مائى بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرا هاما للدخل القومى.
5. d) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التى تختلف تماما عن ثقافاتنا.

**B) Choose the correct English translation:**

6. a) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.
7. c) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
8. d) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
9. d) The press has a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
10. d) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.



## Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 6)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) enhance/ e) develop
2. d) to/ e) from
3. d) hop
4. b) biography
5. b) other
6. a) alive
7. b) wishes
8. a) helpful
9. a) to take
10. a) playing
11. d) knowing
12. a) talking
13. c) seeing
14. b) to tell
15. a) to visit
16. b) to revise

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. b) scared
18. a) enjoyed
19. c) Sally's brother.
20. b) turned on the lights
21. a) had been outside
22. a) were asleep
23. d) Sally's Brother's Trick

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
d) The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

26. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
Left to the student.

## Chapter (1) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. a) swords
2. d) dare
3. b) grabbed
4. c) guard
5. a) scar
6. b) owes
7. b) inn
8. d) pale
9. c) island
10. b) cliff
11. d) blind
12. a) treasure
13. c) to go
14. d) towards
15. b) for

## Chapter (2) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. c) crew
2. a) clue
3. b) magistrate
4. c) servant
5. d) directions
6. b) head
7. d) rob
8. c) escape
9. b) sailors
10. a) buried
11. d) shout
12. c) cross
13. b) out
14. d) for
15. a) for



## Chapter (3) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) secret
2. d) frightened
3. c) pirates
4. d) mutiny
5. c) parrot
6. a) helpers
7. b) attacked
8. c) barrels
9. d) gang
10. a) destination
11. b) crutches
12. c) reach
13. d) for
14. a) after
15. b) blind

## Chapter (4) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) whistle
2. c) trust
3. d) branch
4. a) relax
5. d) disease
6. b) marked
7. a) expression
8. b) coast
9. c) shore
10. d) as
11. d) mistake
12. a) along
13. c) off
14. c) to
15. a) into




## Chapter (5) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. b) leader
2. a) sails
3. b) spades
4. d) fresh
5. d) bottom
6. b) voice
7. c) knelt
8. b) interested
9. d) allowed
10. a) dead
11. c) believe
12. b) burned
13. d) To
14. c) of
15. a) for

## Chapter (6) Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) supplies
2. c) fired
3. d) cannon
4. d) defend
5. a) fort
6. b) contact
7. c) medicines
8. d) including
9. a) advantages
10. b) sank
11. c) prevent
12. d) alive
13. a) on
14. b) down
15. c) from







*New*

# HELLO ENGLISH LANGUAGE

First Term

2021

## Skills Booklet

## 1st Secondary



# Contents

## Part 1

### Skills



## Part 2

### Integrated Skills



## Part 3

### Important General Grammar




# Skills

1. Reading Comprehension
2. Writing
3. Translation

## PART 1







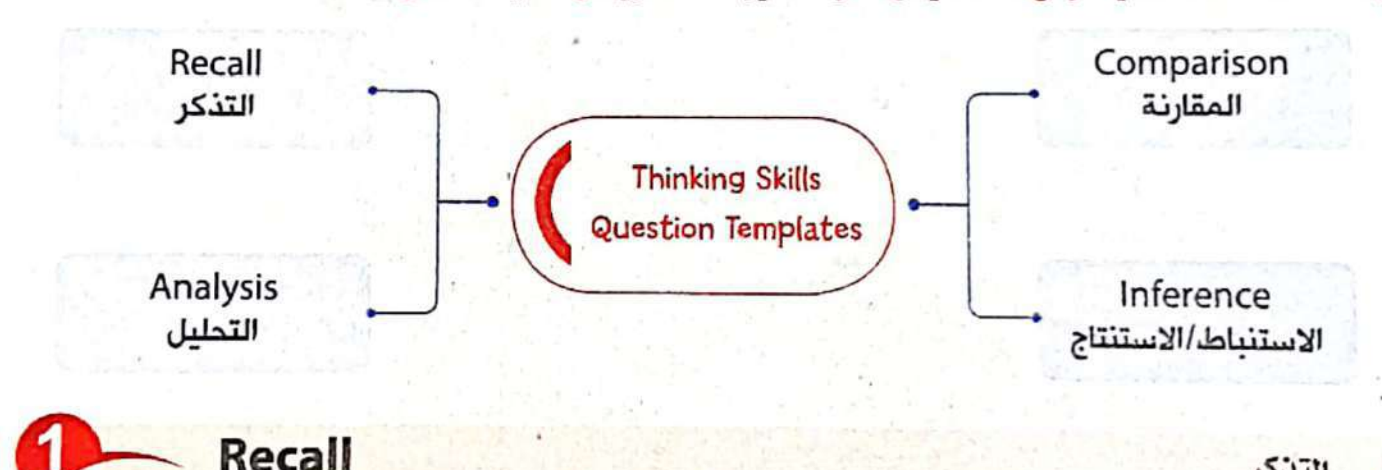
كيف تتعامل مع قطعة الفهم:

- اقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة، وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة، ويحدد لك المعلومات التى ستبحث عنها لاحقًا.
- اقرأ القطعة ولا تنزعج ولا تشغل بالك كثيرًا بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة وغير الواضحة الواردة فى القطعة، فلابد من وجود مفردات لم يسبق دراستها ... وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة؛ لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق الواردة فيه، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين. والمهارة هنا معرفة المعنى العام دون التوقف عند لفظ بعينه.

وتنقسم أسئلة قطعة الفهم **Comprehension** إلى نوعين:

- سؤال الاختيار من متعدد: وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط، وتتطلب الإجابة هنا مهارة عالية فى الفهم والتركيز.
- سؤال مقالى: يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما.

وهناك انماط للأسئلة عديدة وهى اسئلة لقياس مهارة التفكير المختلفة ويمكن تقسيمها كالآتى:




## 1 Recall التذكر

Any question becomes a recall question if the answer has already been explicitly provided to the student in the text.

أى سؤال يصبح سؤالًا للتذكر إذا تم بالفعل توفير إجابة صريحة للطالب فى النص.

| | |
|---|---|
| Who did ........? | من قام بـ ........؟ |
| When did ........ take place? | متى حدث ........؟ |
| List the ........ | سجل/أدرج ........ |
| What is a ........? | ما ........؟ |
| Name ........ | اذكر ........ |

## 2 Analysis التحليل

| | |
|---|---|
| Explain how does ........ work. | اشرح كيف يعمل ........ |
| Show ...... / Indicate ...... / Explain ...... / Discuss the reason ...... | وضح/اشرح/ناقش السبب |
| Explain why ........ | اشرح لماذا ........ |
| Mention in detail ........ / In brief ........ | اذكر بالتفصيل / اذكر باختصار |
| What caused ........? | ماذا سبب ........؟ |
| What is another possible cause of ........? | ما السبب الآخر المحتمل لـ ........؟ |
| Outline / Summarise the ........ | لخص ........ |
| Write down = Summarise ........ with words on your own. | اكتب / لخص بكلمات من عندك |
| In what sequence did ........ happen? | فى أى تسلسل حدث ........؟ |
| Give an example of ........ | أعط مثالًا لـ ........ |
| What does ........ symbolise? | ماذا ترمز ........ إلى؟ |
| Analyze how ........ | حلل كيف ........ |
| What was the author's point of view about ........? | ما هى وجهة نظر الكاتب بخصوص ........؟ |
| From the point of view of the writer, what ........? | من وجهة نظر الكاتب ماذا ........؟ |
| What kind of a ........ is ........? | ما نوع ........؟ |
| What is the function of ........? | ما وظيفة ........؟ |
| What is the purpose of ........? | ما الغرض من ........؟ |
| What is the relationship between ........ and ........? | ما العلاقة بين ........ و ........؟ |

## 3 Comparison المقارنة

| | |
|---|---|
| How is ........ like ........? | كيف ........ مثل ........؟ |
| How are ........ and ........ different? | كيف ........ و ........ مختلفان؟ |
| Compare the ........ before and after ........ | قارن ........ قبل وبعد ........ |
| Compare ..... at the beginning of the story and at the end. | قارن ........ فى بداية القطعة وفى النهاية |
| Distinguish between ........ and ........ | ميز بين ........ و ........ |
| Compare ........ with ........ | قارن ........ بـ ........ |
| On what dimensions might you compare ..... and .....? | على أى أبعاد يمكن مقارنة ........ و ........؟ |
| Which one is the biggest / oldest / tallest? | أيهما الأكبر/الأقدم/الأطول؟ |

## 4 Inference الاستنباط/الاستنتاج

| | |
|---|---|
| Predict what will happen if ........ | تنبأ ماذا سوف يحدث لو ........ |
| Solve the problem ........ | حل مشكلة ........ |
| Apply the rule to ........ | طبق القاعدة على |
| What is the main idea of ........? | ما الفكرة الرئيسية ........؟ |
| Put a suitable title to ........ | ضع عنوانًا مناسبًا لـ ........ |
| Predict how the story will end. | تنبأ كيف ستنتهى القصة. |
| What is the overall theme of ........? | ما هو الموضوع العام لـ ........؟ |
| What can you conclude about ........? | ماذا تستطيع الاستنتاج بشأن ........؟ |
| What if ........? | ماذا لو ........؟ |
| Propose a solution to the problem of ........ | اقترح حلًا لمشكلة ........ |



| | |
|---|---|
| From your point of view, what ........? | من وجهه نظرك ماذا ........؟ |
| Find in the passage words which mean ........ | استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى ........ |
| What does the pronoun ........ refer to? | ما الذى يشير إليه الضمير ........؟ |
| What does the underlined/black typed word ........ mean? | ماذا تعنى الكلمة التى تحتها خط/ المكتوبة بأسود داكن؟ |
| Do you agree/oppose/think ........? | هل توافق / تعارض / تعتقد ........؟ |
| What do you think of/about ........? | ما رأيك فى ........؟ |
| What is your opinion of/about ........? | ما رأيك فى ........؟ |

وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة إليك هذه النصائح:

١- تمهل فى استخلاص الإجابة من القطعة، فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول فى الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطًا أن تكون فى الفقرة الأولى.

٢- اكتب الإجابة الصحيحة فقط ولا تزد، لأن الزيادات المبالغ فيها وغير المطلوبة تقلل من الدرجة التى يضعها المصحح.

٣- التزم بالبناء السليم للجملة من حيث الزمن والضمائر وغيره.

٤- تأنَّ فى فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل، وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.

٥- راع القواعد العامة فى الكتابة من علامات ترقيم وخلافه.

PART 1

## Answered Comprehension Passage

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The following is a checklist to help you decide if it's time for you or a friend to change eating habits. Just one "warning sign" should be enough reason to take action. You shouldn't think of "junk food" the minute you start feeling hungry. There never is an acceptable reason for this.

It is a definite sign of a habit that is on the way to becoming an addiction. Comfort eating is usually associated with junk food and in general high calorie food that is also high in carbohydrates [starch and sugar] and fat. If you run to the nearest fast food chain every time you feel down, you know it is out of control. A healthy meal does not have to be flavorless and boring. When pushed, you can picture appetising dishes that do not contain fries or fatty ingredients but you still prefer to get a hold of a beef burger or a pizza. You know it's not the best food for you. You know that you are going to feel sleepy and tired after you have eaten.

To be honest, healthy is a relative term. It all depends on what your options are. There are "healthier" choices you can make even at a fast food restaurant. You might, for example, order salad as a side dish instead of a second helping of fries. You could avoid ketchup or mayonnaise or eat a chicken burger. You know all this, you have promised yourself to do it next time you are there, but somehow it never happens. You keep on insisting that those dishes take longer to prepare.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1.** Thinking of "junk food" when you're hungry is a ................... .

**a)** *sign of addiction*

**b)** sign of healthy eating

**c)** common eating habit

**d)** sign of change

**2.** If you are determined to change your diet, you can make healthy choices ................... .

**a)** in the country

**b)** near the sea

**c)** *at fast food restaurants*

**d)** in supermarkets



3. Although people know what is good for them they ................... .

a) choose to eat healthy, nutritious food

b) *choose to eat fatty, high calorie food*

c) decide to eat fatty, low calorie food

d) decide to eat low calorie fries and pizza

4. If you want to be healthy, you should ................... .

a) *avoid fatty and fried food*

b) eat salad and fatty food

c) avoid salad and condiments

d) order high calorie food and soft drinks

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Do you eat healthy food or not? Why?

Student's own answer.

6. What does "junk food" mean?

Fast food.

7. Give two reasons why doctors prefer eating healthy food.

Student's own answer.



## Exercises

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**1** Charles was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in a small caravan where there is only second-hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops. This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give up the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. He says it has brought him happiness. "A few years ago," says Charles, "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities. When he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas. Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. He decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? "No, I'm much happier now. I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything – no way."

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1.** According to the text, Charles has .................... .

a) a family　b) a huge house　c) everything　d) only a little money

**2.** Now, Charles is very happy because .................... .

a) he is a millionaire　b) he has no money　c) he misses nothing　d) he lives in a small caravan

**3.** Charles knew there were .................... hungry people in the world.

a) a few　b) many　c) no　d) some

**4.** Most people want to earn much money to .................... worries.

a) have　b) increase　c) find　d) avoid

**B) Answer the following questions:**

**5.** Would you like to be a millionaire? Why? Why not?

**6.** Compare Charles' life in the past to his life now.

**7.** What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

**2** Over the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, computer technology continues to grow every day. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car, or communicating with relatives and colleagues. This explosion in computer technology has resulted in a rush to install computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the internet. In the USA, between 1984, and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to more than 8 million sets. Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basics of computer skills, they are expected to teach students about computer know-how.

Few people would question the role that computers could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had any computer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the way cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach concepts and ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1.** Teachers are expected to teach students how to use computers although they ............ .
- **a)** know how to use a computer
- **b)** are still learning how to use computers
- **c)** know all the basics of computer skills
- **d)** are forced to use computers

**2.** "Few people would question the role that computers could play" means ............ .
- **a)** many people are certain about the importance of computers
- **b)** some people ask questions about computers
- **c)** not many people doubt the importance of computers
- **d)** some people want more computers

**3.** The phrasal verb "resulted in" means .................... .
- **a)** led to **b)** objected **c)** supported **d)** denied

**4.** The best title to the passage is "...................."
- **a)** Teachers **b)** Educators
- **c)** The computer and the internet **d)** Secondary schools

**B) Answer the following questions:**

**5.** How could computers help students become more successful?

**6.** Give some examples of everyday uses of computers in our life.

**7.** In your opinion, what are the possible disadvantages of using computers in education?

3 Your smile depends on simple dental care habits such as, for example, teeth brushing. Oral health begins with clean teeth. Keeping your teeth's surface clean can prevent oral disease.

The American Dental Association recommends a number of brushing rules to promote oral health. The first rule is to brush teeth at least twice a day using suitable equipment. Secondly, one should practise good brushing techniques. These techniques include rinsing the toothbrush with water after using it, keeping it uncovered in an upright position, and not storing it in closed containers which can encourage the growth of bacteria. The third rule is to replace the toothbrush every three months – or sooner if it becomes worn – to prevent painful and uncomfortable brushing. Finally, to reach tight spaces between teeth, it is recommended to use special wooden or plastic picks and brushes designed to clean between them.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ................... .
   - a) brushes
   - b) teeth
   - c) spaces
   - d) picks
2. The word "promote" in the second paragraph means ................... .
   - a) discourage
   - b) prevent
   - c) improve
   - d) collect
3. The third rule is to ................... .
   - a) brush your teeth at least twice a day
   - b) replace the toothbrush every three months
   - c) keep your teeth's surface clean
   - d) practise good brushing techniques
4. It is not recommended to keep the toothbrush in ................... .
   - a) wooden picks
   - b) plastic picks
   - c) upright position
   - d) closed containers

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. How can we avoid oral disease?
6. Why should you replace your toothbrush every three months?
7. What can we do to reach tight spaces between teeth?

**4** Successful marriage is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health. While many studies have shown the great importance of social support, it is still clear exactly what this means. Most likely it consists of being a sympathetic listener or offering helpful advice; providing emotional support and social acceptance; giving actual help or financial help, and simply doing ordinary things together, like eating and drinking. Husbands seem to benefit much more from marriage than wives do. Married women are in better physical and mental health, and are happier than single women, but these effects are nearly twice as great for men. Various explanations have been considered, but the most plausible is that wives provide more social support than husbands. Perhaps men need it more? They are more exposed to stresses at work, have worse health, and die earlier than women.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined word "plausible" is closest in meaning to .................... .
   - a) untrue
   - b) ambiguous
   - c) reasonable
   - d) vague
2. Successful marriage is useful for .................... .
   - a) social support
   - b) mental and physical health
   - c) plausible support
   - d) social acceptance
3. .................... are more exposed to stresses and have worse health.
   - a) Women
   - b) Men
   - c) Children
   - d) Babies
4. Married women are .................... than single women.
   - a) more stressed
   - b) living longer
   - c) happier
   - d) worse

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. How effective is successful marriage from the social point of view?
6. Why are men in need of more social support than women?
7. In what aspect did married women excel single ones?

5 As long as we live, we continue to learn, and the education we receive helps us to keep on learning. We are taught reading and writing so that we can learn further knowledge and learn how to find out things for ourselves. What is learned can vary widely. It may be manners, beliefs or attitudes, or it could be words and figures. It might be the technique of running a machine, or a skill in playing a musical instrument. Those who teach can also vary. Teaching may be done by teachers in school, but it may also be done by parents, older brothers or sisters or friends. Everyone has their own source of education, such as newspapers, television, books, films and museums. Every factory worker or farmer must at least know how to read and write. People like engineers, doctors and teachers need a high degree of training. In some countries, parents have to pay a lot of money to send their children to good schools. Many parents cannot send their children to school because of the expenses.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We continue to learn ................... .
   a) at school only
   b) only during childhood
   c) from birth to death
   d) at work only
2. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to the ................... .
   a) schools
   b) parents
   c) friends
   d) anyone
3. What helps us to continue learning?
   a) More education.
   b) Parents.
   c) Friends.
   d) Doctors.
4. Who needs a high degree of training?
   a) Engineers, doctors and mechanics.
   b) Engineers, doctors and teachers.
   c) Farmers, doctors and teachers.
   d) Engineers, cleaners and teachers.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. What is the main idea of the passage?
6. Why do you think workers and farmers need to know how to read and write?
7. Name a source of education not mentioned in the passage.

**6** Today, I'm a teacher. Many years ago, I used to have summer jobs. Once I worked in a factory for gloves. I liked the people who were working there. They used to treat me as if I were their son. They helped me with my work. I learned a lot of things from them. The summer after that one, I worked as a waiter in a restaurant. It was hard work. However, money enabled me to do many things I was unable to do before. I could join a swimming club without worrying about fees. I began to enjoy my spare time. I had a lot of time to enjoy outdoor sports. Today, I tell myself that I will never forget those days and the experience I gained.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Which job do you think was better for the writer?
   a) In the restaurant.
   b) In the factory for gloves.
   c) In the factory of clothes.
   d) In the hotel.
2. The writer was not a member in the swimming club before the second job because .................... .
   a) he didn't have enough time
   b) he doesn't like swimming
   c) it was far from his house
   d) he didn't have enough money
3. The writer will never forget the summer jobs due to the .................. he got.
   a) experiment  b) experience
   c) excursion  d) exercise
4. People at the gloves factory were .................. .
   a) friendly  b) cruel
   c) rude  d) impolite

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. What was the second job that the writer had?
6. Did he benefit from the second job? How?
7. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

7 Most of the passengers were fast asleep in the eight o'clock train. It was already half past nine. I was having tea while my wife was reading a letter. My little daughter was eating her ice cream. Suddenly we were all shocked to hear a very loud cry from a young lady. She screamed, "Help! He's going to kill me". Many people ran towards her. We asked her where the murderer was. She looked around herself for a few moments, then at us, and finally said in a whisper. "What a terrible dream! He killed my mother and sister. That thief! He had a gun, and a big knife!" We comforted her saying that she would feel better; we returned each to his seat. I observed an old man sitting beside her. He brought her a cold drink and kept talking with her all through the last fifty-five minutes of the journey. I wondered what they were discussing. When we got off at the station I approached the man and said to him, "It was kind of you to keep talking with her to help her to be quiet," He said, "Oh, no! I only wanted to prevent <u>her</u> from sleeping again and having another dream!"

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The train journey took .................... when the young lady cried.
   - a) two hours
   - b) one hour and a half
   - c) fifty-five minutes
   - d) a hundred and forty-five minutes
2. One of the passengers gave the young lady .................... .
   - a) an ice cream
   - b) a cold drink
   - c) a gun
   - d) a letter
3. Why did the young lady cry?
   - a) A thief attacked her.
   - b) The passengers mocked her.
   - c) She was dreaming.
   - d) She was over the moon.
4. Why did the old man keep talking with the lady?
   - a) To pacify her.
   - b) To show her that he was kind.
   - c) To stop her from sleeping again.
   - d) To help her dream more.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. How many dreams did the lady have?
6. What does the underlined pronoun "<u>her</u>"refer to?
7. What do you think of the old man mentioned in the passage? Justify your answer.

**8** Tokyo is one of the biggest cities in the world. Over 20 million people live and work in Tokyo, and important companies have their offices there. But most streets don't have names. So how can you find your way there? People in Tokyo are very good at giving directions. They can usually explain how to go home or to the office from the nearest train station. People in Tokyo often use maps when they give directions. Advertisements in newspapers usually have a small map to help you. If you're going to visit someone's house, it's good to ask him to draw, or fax you a map of the local area. If you get lost, the best idea is to go to a police station. In Japan, each neighbourhood has a small one, and the police officers there have a map of all areas. Giving directions is an important part of their job!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. According to the reading passage, what should you do if you get lost in Tokyo?
   a) You should go back home.
   b) You should go to a hospital.
   c) You should get rid of the map.
   d) You should go to the police station.
2. What is the problem with most Tokyo streets?
   a) They have names.
   b) They have strange names.
   c) They have no names.
   d) They have long names.
3. The underlined word "one" refers to .................... .
   a) a very large building
   b) a police station
   c) a part of a city
   d) a direction
4. "Over" means .................... .
   a) exceed
   b) below
   c) equal
   d) the same

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. What is the best title to this passage?
6. Is a police station important in big cities? Why/Why not?
7. List 5 ways to know directions (four from the passage and one of your own).

**9** People think that children should play sports. Playing sports is fun. However, it can have negative effects on children. It may promote aggressive behaviour in some children. According to research, 40 million kids play sports in the US. Of these, 18 million say they have been yelled at or called names while playing sports. This leaves many children with a bad impression of sports. They think sports are just aggressive.

Many researchers believe that parents and coaches are the main cause of too much aggression in children's sports. They believe children copy aggressive adult behaviour. Parents and coaches are powerful teachers because children usually look up to them. Often these adults themselves behave aggressively, sending children the message that winning is everything. At children's sporting events, parents may yell insults at other players or cheer when their child behaves aggressively. As well, children may be taught that hurting other players is acceptable. In addition, the media makes violence seem exciting. Children watch adult sports games and see violent behaviour replayed over and over on television.

As a society, we really need to face up to this problem and do something about it. Parents and coaches should act as better examples for children. They also need to teach children better values. They should teach children to enjoy themselves whether they win or not. If we make some basic changes, children might learn to enjoy sports again.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a) Children often become like their parents.
   b) Children need to play sports in school.
   c) Playing sports may have negative results.
   d) Some sports can cause health problems.
2. Which is described as the main cause of more aggressive playing?
   a) Adults. b) Naughty children. c) New rules in sports. d) Other players.
3. What does the writer suggest?
   a) Violent sports should not be shown on TV.
   b) Children should not play sports.
   c) Coaches study child's psychology.
   d) Adults should be good examples for children.
4. According to the article, the underlined expression "called names" means ...........
   a) their names are said in a loud voice. b) their names are whispered to others.
   c) to be described using bad words. d) to be excluded from the team list.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Who is a famous sports star in your country? Why is he or she a star?
6. Is this sports star a good example for young people? Why/ Why not?
7. How do you think we should approach a problem and how can we solve it effectively?



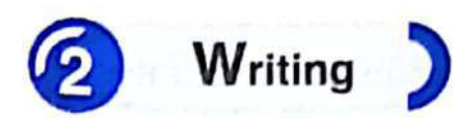
**10** More and more people are discovering that sharing and talking about their favourite books with others can be as rewarding as the act of reading itself. For people who feel that they are too busy to sit down with a book, a book club helps them schedule time to read. Others have gained self-confidence by practising in or leading a discussion. And they enjoy the chance to make new friends. A successful book club should have a group that is small enough so even the quiet people can be heard but also big enough for many different opinions. The best arrangement is a mixture of ages, sexes and backgrounds for more reading discussion. To make the meeting so smooth, a leader should be appointed. The leader will usually start the discussion by asking what the author's main idea was. Book club members should never be afraid to offer their opinions even if they don't like a book. They just need to be prepared to explain why they didn't like something.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What must people do before they meet?
   - a) They must phone each other.
   - b) They must call people of their own age.
   - c) They must prepare their ideas.
   - d) They must buy some flowers and presents.
2. What does a leader discuss at first?
   - a) The main idea of a book.
   - b) The conflicts between the members.
   - c) The opinions of the readers.
   - d) The fear and phobia of the members.
3. "Smooth" means ..................... .
   - a) easy
   - b) sad
   - c) dead
   - d) gloomy
4. Leadership and self-confidence are ..................... .
   - a) skills
   - b) quantities
   - c) societies
   - d) bullets

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Where, do you think, can people meet for a book club?
6. What kind of books could those people read or discuss?
7. Describe the variety in these meetings.




• هناك عدة أشكال من الكتابة سيتم تناولها بشكل موجز فى السطور التالية ومنها:

**An essay – A blog – A short story – A biography – An email**




• المقال من الأسئلة التى عادة ما تكون مخيفة للطلاب، حيث يواجه معظم الطلاب صعوبة فى كتابتها.

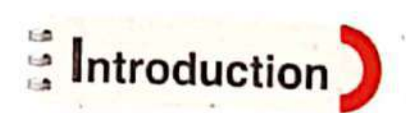
• المقال هو عبارة عن طرح فكرة للنقاش من خلال مجموعة من الفقرات المرتبطة ببعضها البعض مع تقديم وجهة نظر محددة، ولابد أن ينقسم إلى عدة فقرات مرتبة ومخططة يتم فيها شرح وتوضيح جوانب الموضوع المختلفة.

• تحديد نوع المقال (حسب الموضوع المطلوب الكتابة فيه) وأنواع المقال هى:

- Narrative Essay — مقال قصصى (هنا يكون عن قصة أو موقف تعرضت له)
- Descriptive Essay — مقال وصفى (وصف مكان أو شىء)
- Expository Essay — مقال تفسيرى (حقائق ومعلومات عن موضوع محدد)
- Argumentative Essay — مقال جدلى (تناول وجهات نظر مختلفة فى موضوع واحد)
- Persuasive Essay — مقال إقناعى (توضيح وجهات نظر مختلفة مع ترجيح وتفضيل وجهة نظر محددة)

• ويتم تقسيم المقال كما يلى:

1. Introduction. المقدمة
2. Body paragraph. صلب الموضوع
3. Conclusion. الخاتمة




• هى أول فقرة فى المقال والهدف منها هو طرح الفكرة العامة للموضوع والإشارة إلى الهدف الرئيسى له.

• لابد أن تتضمن المقدمة الفكرة الرئيسية topic sentence و لابد أن يفهم ويعرف منها القارئ بالضبط عن ماذا سيكون بقية المقال.

• من الممكن أن تكون المقدمة عبارة عن جمل عامة تصف الفكرة التى تعبر عن الموضوع أو جملة تتضمن تعريفًا بالموضوع أو حكمة أو أسئلة عامة يتم طرحها لإثارة القارئ.

• وهناك بعض الجمل التى تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات الايجابية ... مثل:

- It is taken for granted that .................. plays a vital role in our life; this is simply because the progress of any country depends on it.

من المسلم به أن .................... يلعب دورًا حيويًا فى حياتنا، وهذا ببساطة لأن تقدم أى دولة يعتمد عليه.

- Fancy holding my pen to write about .................. . I'm sure that everyone will tackle it from a different angle, but I will focus on the main points.

أتخيل أن أمسك بقلمى لأكتب عن .................. وأنا متأكد أن كل شخص سوف يتناوله من زاوية مختلفة ولكننى سوف أركز على النقاط الرئيسية.

• وهناك بعض الجمل التى تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات السلبية ... مثل:

- I reveal no secret when I say that we all agree that .......... stands as an obstacle عقبة in the way of our progress. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.

لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول إننا جميعًا متفقون أن .................. يقف كعقبة فى طريق تقدمنا. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.

- It can't be denied that .................. is one of the worst and most complicated problems. I don't exaggerate when I say that it has made our life like hell. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.

لا يمكن إنكار أن .................... هى واحدة من أسوء وأكثر المشكلات تعقيدًا وأنا لا أبالغ عندما أقول إنها جعلت حياتنا كالجحيم. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.

• وهناك بعض الجمل التى تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات التى تتكلم عن المزايا والعيوب ... مثل:

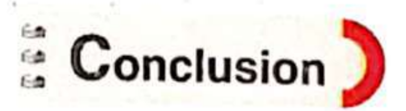
It is crystal clear that .................. has a lot of advantages (pros/merits) and disadvantages (demerits/cons). Let's shed light on the main aspects of this subject.

من الواضح تماما أن .................... له مزايا وعيوب ، هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذا الموضوع.

## Body Paragraph

- لابد أن يتكون صلب الموضوع من فقرتين أو ثلاثة على الأقل ... كل فقرة تتحدث عن جانب معين من الموضوع ... فمثلا إذا كان للموضوع مزايا وعيوب يكون الأول عن المزايا والثانى عن العيوب، وهكذا.
- يتم مناقشة وشرح ما تم إجماله فى المقدمة حيث يتم عرض تفاصيل الفكرة الأساسية.
- الحرص على استخدام جمل بسيطة وسهلة ولابد أن تراعى بداية الجمل بالفاعل يليه الفعل على حسب زمن الجملة ثم المفعول.
- الروابط فى المقال هى كلمات تساعد الكاتب فى تنظيم كتابته بحيث يستطيع ربط الجمل ببعضها البعض عن طريقها أوالتحول من فكرة إلى فكرة أخرى بطريقة سليمة ومنها:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Giving examples | إعطاء أمثلة | For example/ For instance/ such as ........ |
| Contrast | التناقض | But/ Although/ Even though/ On the other hand/ However |
| Giving reasons | إعطاء أسباب | because/ as/ because of/ owing to/ due to ........ |
| Showing results | بيان النتائج | So/ therefore/ Consequently/ and as a result |
| Adding information | إضافة معلومات | And/ In addition/ Moreover/ Also/ above all |
| Arranging incidents | ترتيب أحداث | First/ second/ then/ finally |
| Giving opinions | إعطاء آراء | I think / I believe / In my opinion / As far as I'm concerned |

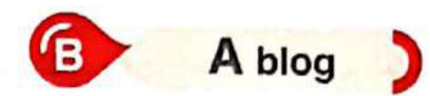


## Conclusion

- يتم تلخيص الفكرة الرئيسية فيه بصيغة أخرى بحيث تختلف عما كتبناه فى المقدمة من حيث الكلمات، ومن الممكن أن تتشابه معها فى المعنى.
- تكون الخاتمة عبارة عن نصيحة أو اقتراح أو رأى ... مثل:

- To sum up/ In conclusion / In brief ..................
- Finally, it is quite clear that .................. is really ..................
- To sum up, one can say that .................. is really ..................
- In conclusion, in my opinion, .................. is really ..................
- To sum up, why don't we ................../ we should ..................





## B A blog

• موقع إلكترونى أو صفحة شخصية، وهى بمثابة مُفكرة أو ساحة طرح للآراء الشخصية، والمدخلات فيه تكون مرتبة ترتيبًا تصاعديًا حسب الزمن.

• هناك عدة أنواع من المدونات blogs نتعامل معها وأهمها هى المدونات الشخصية personal blogs

• يوميات مستمرة أو تعليقات من قبل أفراد يكتبون عن تجاربهم اليومية وأفكارهم وأشعارهم، ويسمحون للقراء بالمشاركة، ومنها مثلاً موقع Facebook – Twitter

• Article blogs مدونات إخبارية أو مقالية.

• وهى التى توفر ملخصًا للأخبار عن موضوع معين ومصحوبة بتلخيص بسيط قصير، وتتكون من الآتى:

1. Blog title - عنوان المقالة (كلمة أو كلمتين للتلخيص)

(Wonderful day – A nice journey – Good news)

2. Summary - ملخص (شرح مبسط للعنوان)

3. Body - نص المقال (يحتوى على المادة الأساسية للمقال)

4. End of the article - الخاتمة

## C A short story

**With some brainstorming you can learn how to write a successful short story:**

• هناك عدة أمور يجب مراعاتها عند كتابة القصة القصيرة:

**1. Come up with a plot** التفكير فى حبكة القصة.

- Think about what the story is going to be about and what is going to happen in it.

**2. Main character** الشخصية الرئيسية.

- Focus on one or two main characters at the most. The main character has a clear description, features or qualities. He or she may be good or bad.

**3. Setting (place and time)** المكان والزمان.

- Choose a setting that is interesting to you and that can be interesting for your reader.

**4. Create a conflict for the main character** خلق صراع للشخصية الرئيسية.

- The main character has to deal with a case or a problem. Your main character may be trapped يقع in a bad or dangerous situation.

**5. Provide solutions for the problems or a bad situation** تقديم حلول للمشكلات والمواقف السيئة

- Let your main character find how to solve the problem that he or she faces or how to get out of a bad situation.

**6. Ending** النهاية

- Think of an ending with a surprise. An ending that will leave your reader surprised, or shocked.

## D A biography of a person 

**To write about a person especially famous people, we should follow the following steps:**

• للكتابة عن حياة شخص معين وخاصة المشاهير يجب اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. An interesting introduction to illustrate that you see this person as a model.
   كتابة مقدمة شيقة توضح اختيارك لهذا الشخص كنموذج.
2. Who is this person (the name and the job)
   أن تذكر عمل الشخص ووظيفته.
3. Where and when this person was born.
   كتابة مكان وتاريخ ميلاده.
4. The person's education and work.
   الكتابة عن تعليمه وشهاداته وأين يعمل الآن أو كان يعمل.
5. The person's achievements.
   إنجازات هذا الشخص.
   - This part is important as it shows why you admire him or her.
6. The effect of this person on society and how we benefited from him.
   تأثير هذا الشخص على المجتمع، وكيف استفدنا منه.
7. Say whether this person is still alive or dead.
   توضيح هل هذا الشخص ما زال حيًا أم متوفًى.
8. End your biography illustrating what we should do to be like this person.
   قم فى بنهاية السيرة بتوضيح ما يجب علينا فعله لنكون مثل هذا الشخص.

##  Email writing 

الرسالة الإلكترونية لها شكل ثابت، وهو كالتالى:

**New message**

To : ........................................ اسم المُرسَل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

From : ........................................ اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject : ........................................ موضوع الرسالة

Dear: ........................................,

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

Regards,
Best wishes,
Yours,
اسم المُرسِل

SEND

# Model Essay

## *The effects of following healthy habits*

Introduction

The best way to live a healthy life is to eat healthy and do more active physical activities. Healthy eating and exercising have a big effect on your future success, maintaining a healthy body and preventing obesity or overweight. It is a rule that everyone should live by and it brings many benefits to your life.

Body

Researches prove that staying healthy, getting enough sleep, and being physically fit help you in school by performing better. Also, developing healthy habits leads to many achievements in school. Children who perform many different physical activities remain in a healthy fit body. Children should have a minimum of 60 minutes of physical activities per day recommended by the centres for disease control and prevention. If you get enough exercise per day, then your body will function properly. In addition, children who exercise gain lifelong benefits like having a healthy body, flexibility, and stronger and healthier bones and muscles.

Conclusion

When we develop healthy habits, we can learn to make healthier decisions or choices like when and what to eat and when to exercise. We can also learn to keep our bodies fit. In life, we have many rules to live by and developing healthy habits should be one of them.

## *Pollution*

Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity. There are different kinds of pollution like air pollution, water pollution and noise pollution. Air pollution is mainly caused by smoke of mills and factories. The sound and noise of loudspeakers, vehicles' loud horns, etc. cause sound pollution. The dirty chemical waste from factories causes water pollution.

No one can deny that pollution affects all forms of life badly. It can also cause many health problems such as cancer and heart disease. Above all, pollution is the main cause of damaging ozone layer; it causes global warming which in turn results in a lot of natural disasters such as hurricanes, floods and forests' fires.

To solve the problem, the government must impose and enforce laws to prevent pollution. The government also should reward the factories which control their waste and use technology to check pollution. Governments also reward the associations which work for plantation. Cutting down trees must be strictly prohibited if it is done without reason. We should also plant a lot of trees and plants to cut down pollution.

Finally, we should all cooperate to solve this problem which threatens our lives on the planet.

### Reading is the first source of information

Reading is probably one of the most important activities and hobbies that anyone can do. Those who read can discover new ideas, concepts, places, and people. Reading is so important in our lives for many reasons; firstly, even if we have a stressful day, a book can easily distract us from our own problems.

Reading has the ability to calm us down. Secondly, reading is also a way for children to reach out to the world. So, reading should be encouraged among children at an early age as it increases children's vocabulary and spelling more than talking or direct teaching. Reading forces us to look at words that we might not have seen or heard in our lives. The third reason why reading is so important is that reading improves our thinking process. Reading books requires readers to think and imagine about different details in the book such as characters and plot; this helps us to improve our thinking process. Since the readers must concentrate in order to read, they will improve their concentration and thinking abilities. Finally, reading can widen our scopes and help us to know all cultures of the world.

Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life. "No entertainment is so cheap, or introduces everlasting pleasures as much as reading. It will not only refresh our minds and souls but it will give us a great outlook towards life.

### A situation that happened to one of your friends

My friend Kamal was looking around for a used car. He saw an advertisement in the paper for a Toyota for twenty thousand pounds.

He rang up and arranged to go round and have a look. The car was brand new and spotless but Khalid told the woman who showed him the car that he liked to think about it. Really, he didn't think very long. An hour later, he was back. He asked the woman some questions and she said all she wanted for it was only twenty thousand pounds. He asked to try it and he was given the keys. The engine started at the first touch. He backed it out and tested everything. He paid the money, filled out the change of ownership and took the car. Khalid couldn't believe it was all legal. He said he was sure there must be something fishy about it and he didn't want to put himself in trouble.

So instead of going home, he drove straight to the police station where he left a note for the police to check his car. The police officer told him that everything is legal but the woman hadn't told him everything. Her husband was taken dead out of the car and soon no one wanted to buy it. Khalid wished he had never known about that. He himself felt uncomfortable.

Although he was able to make a profit of many thousand pounds, he still regrets selling the car.



### The bad side of mobile phones

I have believed for a while that mobile phones are harmful to our health, due to the radiation that we're exposed to. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe.

After all, people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Above all, they can cause headaches, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology. Now, there is 24 hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electric gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without them, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause brain damage if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

### Coronavirus

Nations around the world are battling with a major outbreak of a new deadly virus. The coronavirus, which started in the Chinese city of Wuhan, on 22nd January 2020 has already killed thousands of people from around the world. Countries highly affected include China, America, the UK and Italy. The infected people are currently subject to quarantine at a hospital. Many countries have been on lockdown for many weeks and people have not been to work, school and all public transport has been suspended.

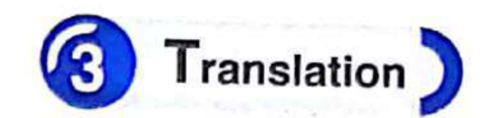
In other countries schools have been closed and people have been told not to travel. The new coronavirus is suspected to have come from illegally traded animals in a Wuhan market. The virus mutated and spread from an animal to a human. There are fears it could mutate and spread further. Scientists say the virus is contagious and can be passed from person to person.

The World Health Organisation, which declared the outbreak as an international health emergency, recently updated the global risk assessment to "very high." It has also advised the public to wash their hands more than the usual besides delaying or avoiding travel to affected areas. Common signs of the infection include fever, cough, shortness of breath and breathing difficulties.

## Exercises

**Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED FIFTY (150) words on:**

1. The job you would like to do when you leave school.
2. Purposes of using the internet.
3. Social work is a means through which Egyptian youth can help society.
4. How to keep the environment clean.
5. Reasons for happiness are different from one person to another.
6. How do you think life will be like in the year 2050?
7. What can we do to overcome the problem of unemployment?
8. Your own ideas to develop the educational system in Egypt.
9. Friendship.
10. Your favourite holiday place.
11. A person you consider as a model.
12. Making use of your free time.
13. A blog post on the problems children have because of the internet.
14. A summary of a novel you read.
15. An email to a friend telling him about your future plans including education and work.



# 3 Translation

## - What is "Translation"?

First, we should know that the word "Translation" means changing the written words from one language into another language.

- الترجمة فن وليست مجرد حفظ كلمات فقط، فهى عبارة عن كيفية الاعتماد على توصيل المعنى المراد من الجملة، وليست ترجمة حرفية للكلمات.
- القدرة على التخمين لمعانى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق ما نعرفه من كلمات هو أساس الترجمة.
- الترجمة ليست مجرد نقل كلمة، ولفظ، بل هى نقل لمفاهيم الكلام وربطها بالنص.

## - Language is meaning-based

When we want to say something or translate a sentence, we should know that the meaning in general is more important as any language depends on general meaning not meaning of every separate word.

- عند ترجمة جملة أو التحدث بشىء يجب أن نعرف أن المعنى العام هو الأكثر أهمية حيث إن اللغة تعتمد على المعنى وليس ترجمة كل كلمة منفصلة.

So, translation is considered an art which depends on how to transfer the whole meaning of the sentence and also the ability to guess the meaning of new and difficult words from the words that we know.

- من هنا تعتبر الترجمة فن يعتمد على كيفية نقل المعنى العام للجملة و القدرة على تخمين معانى الكلمات الجديدة والصعبة من الكلمات التى نعرفها.
- لاحظ المثال التالى:
- «يجب أن يتحد الشعب المصرى لمواجهة تحديات العصر».

Egyptians must (should) unite (work together/ help each other) to face (stand against) the challenges (difficulties) of the age (present time).

- لاحظ أننا استخدمنا أكثر من معنى لنفس الكلمة و ليس الشرط هنا أن نترجم ترجمة حرفية، ولكن الأهم توصيل المعنى.



• لاحظ مثالًا آخر.

"I had my lunch and then went out to meet my friends to have a nice time together and we really were over the moon."

• هنا لو تمت الترجمة الحرفية فسوف يضيع المعنى تمامًا، فمثلًا كلمة have نعرفها بمعنى يمتلك و لكن هنا لا يتناسب المعنى الحرفى مع المعنى العام.

• أيضًا كلمة over the moon لو تم ترجمتها حرفيًا (فوق القمر) لضاع المعنى السليم و هو (سعيد جدًا).

• تناولت الغذاء ثم خرجت لمقابلة أصدقائى لكى نقضى سويًا وقتًا جميلًا وبالفعل كنا سعداء جدًا.

## What is the difference between "Translation into Arabic and Translation into English"?

• الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية تعتمد على المعنى، وتخمين الكلمات الصعبة وليس هناك شرط لتكوين الجملة والزمن.

"The government tries to solve most of our problems in Egypt."

• تحاول الحكومة (الحكومة تحاول) أن تحل (حل) معظم مشاكلنا فى مصر.

• أما الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية فتعتبر الأصعب حيث لابد من معرفة تكوين الجملة و الحفاظ على الزمن السليم و كذلك كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح.

• «تلعب الرياضة دورًا هامًا فى بناء الجسم و الشخصية»

Play sport role important in building body and character. (×)

• هنا ترجمة حرفية ليست صحيحة سواء تكوين الجملة أو المعنى

Sport بدأنا هنا بالفاعل plays الفعل مفرد an important role الصفة قبل الاسم in building (forming) body and personality.



# Translation from English into Arabic:

١ لابد من البعد عن الترجمة الحرفية و توصيل المعنى هو الأهم كما أوضحنا سابقًا.

٢ من الأفضل أن يتحول المبنى للمجهول إلى المعلوم.

- A lot of new schools were built by the government.

لقد قامت الحكومة ببناء الكثير من المدارس الجديدة.

٣ من الممكن استخدام بعض الكلمات و الحروف من عندنا لتحسين المعنى.

- Tourism is one of the most important sources of our national income and hard currency.

تعتبر السياحة (إن السياحة) واحدة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومى لدينا و كذلك العملة الصعبة.

٤ الالتزام بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة من حيث (مضارع أو ماضٍ أو مستقبل).

٥ يتم ترجمة have/has + p.p. إلى «لقد».

٦ لا يظهر v. to be فى المضارع ولكن من الممكن أن يظهر فى الماضى.

- Music is the food of soul.

- الموسيقى غذاء الروح.

- Ali was at home when I phoned.

- كان على فى البيت عندما اتصلت.

٧ v. to have يترجم إلى أكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة (لـ - عند - يملك - لدى - يقتنى - يتناول - يصاب - يناقش - ......)

- We had our meals.

- تناولنا وجباتنا.

- My son had a serious disease.

- أصيب ابنى بمرض خطير.

- Hala has a nice car.

- تمتلك هالة سيارة جميلة.

- Egypt has a lot of relations with the world countries.

- لمصر علاقات كثيرة بدول العالم.



## 2 Translation from Arabic into English:

١ لابد من تحديد أجزاء الجملة حيث إن الجملة فى اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول ....... .

Subject – verb – object .........

تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا فى الشرق الأوسط

- Egypt plays a great role in the Middle East.

٢ الالتزام بقواعد اللغة من حيث الأزمنة الصحيحة للجملة.

لقد لعبت مصر مباراة رائعة بالأمس.

- Egypt played a wonderful match yesterday.

الزمن هنا ماض بسيط حيث حدد وقته و علامته.

لقد اجتاز الاختبار وسيتقدم للجامعة الأسبوع القادم.

- He has passed the test and he will apply to university next week.

هنا مزيج من المضارع التام والمستقبل

٣ الصفة دائمًا قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل

أعتقد أن عليًا طالب رائع حيث إنه يتحدث الإنجليزية بلباقة.

- I think that Ali is a wonderful student as he speaks English fluently.

٤ أداة النصب «إن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- إن تطوير التعليم هو أساس التقدم.

- Developing education is the basis of progress.

لاحظ: أن (is) هنا لم تكن موجودة فى الجملة باللغة العربية، ولكن لابد من وجودها فى الإنجليزية.

لاحظ: أيضا أن عند بداية الجملة بالفعل يتم إضافة ing ليتحول إلى اسم فاعل gerund.

٥ من + صفة + لـ أو على + مفعول + أن ........... = ......... .It's + adj.+ for + obj. + to + inf

- من الضرورى لنا جميعًا أن نتحد لخدمة بلدنا.

- It is necessary for all of us to unite to serve our country.

٦ الضمائر المستترة فى العربية pronouns يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- علينا أن نحاول بجد لكى نحقق ما نتمناه.

- We should try hard to achieve what we hope.

هنا ضمير مستتر (نحن) ولاحظ أيضًا أن وجود (على + الضمير) يتم ترجمتها should – must.

٧ لام التعليل تترجم إلى: المصدر + in order to/ so as to/ to.

- استيقظ مبكرًا للحاق بالقطار المتجه إلى القاهرة.

- He woke up early to catch the train to Cairo.



٨ الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى ضمير مفعول (us – them – him – me – her)
الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية) (your – its – our – his – her – their – my):
- قام الكثير من أصدقائى بزيارتى حيث إننى كنت مريضًا.

- A lot of my friends visited me because I was ill.

٩ الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التى لا تجمع لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية.
- السعادة كنز لا يقدر بثمن.

- Happiness is a priceless treasure.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| honour | الشرف | virtue | الفضيلة | peace | السلام |
| beauty | الجمال | love | الحب | friendship | الصدقة |
| freedom | الحرية | advice | نصيحة | hatred | الكراهية |
| success | النجاح | justice | العدالة | honesty | الصدق |

١٠ الأسماء التى لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة the.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| paper | الورق | luggage | الأمتعة | baggage | الحقائب |
| grass | العشب | money | المال | oil | الزيت |
| electricity | الكهرباء | information | معلومات | news | أخبار |

- أريد معلومات عن البحث الجديد.

- I want information about the research.

١١ حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) المرادف لهما فى اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط.

- I will visit my friends tomorrow.

١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ وفى الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضى البسيط تترجم إلى ماضٍ بسيط.
- لقد ذهبنا معا إلى السينما الشهر الماضى.

- We went to the cinema together last month.

١٣ لقد + فعل ماضٍ بدون أى إشارة تدل على الماضى تترجم لمضارع تام.
- لقد حققت مصر كثيرًا من التقدم ونتمنى المزيد.

- Egypt has achieved a lot of progress and we hope for more.

١٤ قد + فعل مضارع تدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم may.
- قد نقوم برحلة مدرسية قريبًا.

- We may have a school trip soon.

١٥ لن + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفى future simple.

- لن يأتى على إلى حفل التخرج بسبب سفره.

- Ali won't come to the graduation party because of his travel.

١٦ لم + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية ماضٍ بسيط Past simple.

- لم يتمكن صديقى من الحصول على الوظيفة التى تقدم لها.

- My friend didn't get the job that he applied for.

١٧ كان + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية ماضٍ مستمر.

- عندما وصلت المنزل كانت ابنتى تعمل واجباتها المدرسية.

- When I reached home, my daughter was doing her school homework.

لاحظ: أن كلمة home هنا لا تأخذ حرف جر.

١٨ كان + قد + فعل ماضٍ يقابله فى الإنجليزية الماضى التام.

- عندما ذهبت إلى العمل كان الاجتماع قد انتهى.

- When I went to work, the meeting had finished.

١٩ المفعول المطلق لا يتم ترجمته، ويتم تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف.

- يؤثر التدخين تأثيراً سلبيًا على الصحة.

- Smoking has a negative effect on our health.

- Smoking affects our health negatively.

٢٠ الفعل بعد and يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل قبلها من حيث الزمن والإضافات.

- I enjoyed visiting my relatives and talking to them.

٢١ بعض الأفعال فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر (بينما تأخذ فى اللغة العربية).

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| contain | يحتوى على | need | يحتاج إلى | affect | يؤثر على |
| overcome | يتغلب على | fear | يخاف من | enjoy | يتمتع بـ |
| admire | يعجب بـ | feel | يشعر بـ | celebrate | يحتفل بـ |

## Some Important Words for Translation



| Word | Translation |
|---|---|
| achievements | إنجازات |
| acquire | يكتسب |
| addiction | الإدمان |
| admiration | الإعجاب |
| adolescence | فترة المراهقة |
| advance | تقدم/يتقدم |
| adventure | مغامرة |
| aggression | عدوان |
| aging | كبر السن |
| alternatives | بدائل |
| ancient monuments | الآثار القديمة |
| artery | شريان |
| ashamed | خجلان من موقف |
| assassination | اغتيال |
| attitude | موقف |
| authenticity | أصالة |
| authority | سلطة |
| awareness | وعي |
| aware of | واعٍ بـ |
| backbone | العمود الفقري |
| baggage/luggage | أمتعة السفر |
| balanced diet | غذاء متوازن |
| battle | يكافح |
| bear | يتحمل |
| believing that | إيمانا بـ |
| birthplace | مهد |
| blessing | نعمة |
| blood | إكسير |
| book fair | معرض الكتاب |
| bossy | متغطرس |
| bread winner | عائل الأسرة |
| bringing up | تنشئة |
| bring prices down | يقلل الأسعار |
| brotherhood | الأخوة |
| campaign | حملة |
| capacity | قدرة/طاقة |
| capital treason | خيانة عظمى |
| car fumes | عوادم السيارات |
| catastrophe | كارثة |
| catch up with | يواكب/يساير |
| championship | بطولة |
| chaos | فوضى |
| characteristics | خصائص |
| circumstances | ظروف |
| citizens | مواطنون |
| civilisation | حضارة |
| civil wars | الحروب الأهلية |
| cloning | الاستنساخ |
| co-existence | التعايش |
| colleagues | زملاء العمل |
| comfort | راحة |
| communities | مجتمعات |
| concentration | تركيز |
| considerate | مراعٍ للآخرين |
| consideration | اعتبار |
| consult | يستشير |
| contagious | ناقل للعدوى |
| corner stone | حجر الزاوية |
| craft | حرفة |
| creative | مبدع |
| creativity | الإبداع |
| crisis | أزمة |
| curfew | حظر التجوال |
| deadly | مميت |
| declare | اعلن |
| emotion | عاطفة |
| exploit | يستغل الوقت |
| fate | القضاء والقدر |
| financial loss | خسارة مادية |
| first stone | اللبنة الأولى |
| gatherings | التجمعات |
| greed | جشع |
| dialogue | الحوار |
| imitate | يقلد |
| impose | يفرض |

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| infection | عدوى |
| instructions | التعليمات |
| join hands | يتكاتف |
| lack of responsibility | انعدام المسئولية |
| layers of society | طبقات المجتمع |
| mental | عقلى/ذهنى |
| model teacher | المدرس القدوة |
| mutate | يتحور/يتحول |
| one tissue | نسيج واحد |
| optimism | التفاؤل |
| outbreak | تفشى |
| outlet | مخرج |
| outstanding | بارز/ظاهر |
| overcome = get over | يتغلب على |
| pandemic | وباء |
| patience | الصبر |
| patriotism | وطنية |
| pave | يمهد |
| perfection/mastering | الإتقان |
| perform | يؤدى/يعمل |
| pessimistic | متشائم (صفة) |
| phenomena | ظواهر طبيعية |
| pioneer | رائد/قائد |
| policy | سياسة |
| positively | بإيجابية |
| postpone | يؤجل |
| poverty | الفقر |
| praise | يمدح/يشهد بـ |
| pray | صلاة/يصلى |
| preserve | يحافظ/يصون |
| prevention | وقاية |
| prime minister | رئيس الوزراء |
| principles | مبادئ |
| privacy | خصوصية |
| private sector | القطاع الخاص |
| process | عملية |
| producer | منتج |
| productive | منتج/غزير الإنتاج |
| promote | يترقى/ينشط |
| prosperity | الرخاء |
| protection | حماية |
| provide | يوفر |
| public sector | القطاع العام |
| punctuality | المواظبة |
| punctual | مواظب |
| quarantine | حجر صحى |
| quarrels | مشاجرات |
| rapidly | بسرعة |
| rare | نادر |
| rationalisation | ترشيد |
| rationalise | يرشد |
| reasonable | معقول |
| recycling | إعادة تصنيع/تدوير |
| reduce | يقلل |
| reflection | انعكاس |
| reforms | إصلاحات |
| relationships | علاقات |
| religion | الدين |
| reputation | سمعة |
| resources | مصادر |
| respect | الاحترام/يحترم |
| respiratory system | الجهاز التنفسى |
| responsibility | مسئولية |
| restore/recovery | استرجاع |
| revolution | ثورة |
| rewarding | مجزية |
| rights | حقوق |
| rise/ leap | طفرة |
| rivals | منافسون |
| rumour | إشاعة |
| rush hour | ساعة الذروة |
| sacrifice | التضحية |
| satisfaction | الرضا |
| satisfactory | مُرضٍ |
| satisfied | راضٍ |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sects | طوائف | springs | ينابيع | trash = rubbish | قمامة |
| security | الأمن | stability | استقرار/ثبات | treaty | معاهدة |
| self-reliance | الاعتماد على النفس | standard of living | مستوى المعيشة | undertake | يتعهد |
| self-sufficiency | الاكتفاء الذاتى | sterilization | التعقيم | unemployment | البطالة |
| selfishness | الأنانية | stimulate | يحفز | unite | يتحد |
| selfish | أنانى | strength | قوة | unrest | عدم استقرار/اضطراب |
| separate | يفصل/يفرق | strike | إضراب | unselfishness | عدم الأنانية |
| serious | جاد | strong will | إرادة قوية | up-to-date | حديث/عصرى |
| severe | شديد/قاس/صادم | struggle | يكافح | update | يحدث بيانات |
| shade | الظل | subject | يتعرض | uprising | انتفاضة |
| shortage | نقص | sufficiency | اكتفاء/كِفَايَة | uproot | يستأصل |
| shortness | نقص/عجز | summer resort | المصيف | urge | تحث على |
| shy | خجول بطبعه | survive | يعيش/يبقى حيًا | vaccine | مصل |
| sightseeing | رؤية المعالم السياحية | suspend | يؤجل | values | القيم |
| sights | معالم سياحية | symptoms | أعراض | votes | أصوات انتخابات |
| signs | علامات | take to | يلتزم بـ | wasteful | مبذر |
| slogan | شعار | talented | موهوب | wealth | ثروة |
| social affairs | الشئون الاجتماعية | terrorism | الإرهاب | weapons | أسلحة |
| solidarity | تماسك/تضامن | thanks to | بفضل | welfare | رفاهية |
| source | مصدر | theft | السرقة | while | يقضى وقتا أو يضيعه |
| species | فصيلة/نوع | the press | الصحافة | wisdom | الحكمة |
| spirit | روح | threaten | يهدد | witness | يشهد |
| splendid | رائع | tolerance | التسامح | work market | سوق العمل |
| spoil | يفسد | tourism | السياحة | worship | يقدس/عبادة |
| sports facilities | تسهيلات رياضية | tourist revenue | الدخل من السياحة | | |

## Exercises

### A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The television and the mobile are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young.
2. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour like helping the people in need and accepting differences among people.
3. Mass production brought down prices and meant that people could afford to buy things that had been too expensive for them in the past.
4. We are becoming increasingly dependent on computers. They are used in businesses, hospitals, banks and even crime detection.
5. Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life.
6. Cleanliness is extremely important in protecting us from many different kinds of infections. Everyone should follow cleanliness to be healthy and happy all through the life.
7. Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity.
8. Getting the right amount of sleep is not only important in terms of being able to function properly during daytime, but it also has an impact on your overall health.
9. Our country is in need of every one's efforts. We must work hard to produce and export. Then, we will save hard currency and achieve welfare.
10. We can't ignore the fact that education in our country needs an urgent rescue operation.
11. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
12. There is no doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures show that the number of smoking victims is increasing all the time.
13. We all must stop throwing rubbish in the streets and in the Nile to solve pollution problems.
14. With patience and strong will, man can get over the hardships he faces.

15. Reading helps us to increase our information to become knowledgeable about many things in life.
16. Many people prefer the peaceful life of the countryside to the noise and congestion of large cities.
17. A successful leader should be intelligent, strict, far-sighted and an example worthy to be followed.
18. Earthquakes, volcanoes, storms, hurricanes and tsunamis are all natural phenomena which destroy all the achievements of man.
19. The Egyptian woman plays a vital role in all walks (fields) of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.
20. The educational institution seeks to deepen the democratic thought and train the young generations in participation, voicing opinion and constructive criticism.
21. The invisible serious problem of water is increasing more and more due to the wrong thought that sea and river water is endless.
22. Dumping trash in water pollutes it, so laws must be imposed to prevent that.
23. Don't waste your time. Time is your life and you should exploit it carefully and benefit from it as much as possible.
24. A bird in hand is better than two in the bush. Hence, be satisfied with what you own.
25. Methods of irrigation must be promoted to economise the amount of water used in the traditional way.
26. Tourism is the hope of our country to supply hard currency and work opportunities for our youth.
27. Do you think our youth deliberately desire to be naughty or they just imitate with closed eyes and minds?
28. Coral reefs must be conserved as they attract a lot of tourists and are the home of scarce species of fish.
29. Work is worship. Without it neither we nor our motherland would progress. So, don't be ashamed of any job or craft.
30. We must attract foreign and Arab investors, stimulate tourism and change cultural awareness if we want to recover the Egyptian economy.

## B) Translate into English:

١ إن مشاهد العنف التى تشهدها بعض ملاعب الرياضة خير دليل على غياب الروح الرياضية.

٢ حاليًا يتابع معظم الناس الأخبار على الإنترنت بدلًا من مطالعة الصحف المطبوعة.

٣ النظافة الشخصية مهمة إذا كنت تريد الحفاظ على صحتك، فهى تحمينا من الأمراض المعدية التى تنتقل بسرعة من شخص لآخر.

٤ إن الاستقرار الاجتماعى والسياسى سيجلب مزيدًا من الاستثمارات وينعش الاقتصاد .

٥ إن قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التى تواجه المجتمع المصري؛ حيث إن البحث العلمى أحد ركائز الأمن القومى.

٦ أن مصر تحتاج إلى جهود المخلصين من أبنائها حتى تتغلب على كل المشاكل التى تعوق تقدمها.

٧ إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجبًا وطنيًا لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة فى مصر.

٨ يجب على الحكومة الاستثمار فى البنية التحتية وتشجيع الاستثمارات الداخلية والخارجية.

٩ السياحة مصدر هام لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر، لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر.

١٠ يجب أن نشجع الاستثمار ونزيد الإنتاج ونقلل الاستهلاك، فهذا سوف يخفض الأسعار ويحل المشكلة الاقتصادية، ولا يمكن أن يتحقق ذلك بدون تعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

١١ هل استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى التعليم سيساعد الطالب فى تخطى الكثير من التحديات المعاصرة؟

١٢ يعتمد تقدم أى أمة على تطوير التعليم، وكذلك الاهتمام بالزراعة والصناعة.

١٣ الرياضة ليست فقط من أجل تنمية اللياقة البدنية، ولكن لتطوير الناحية الذهنية كذلك.

١٤ لابد من تطوير القطاعين الخاص والعام لتوفير فرص عمل للخريجين والقضاء على البطالة.

١٥ لابد من ربط التعليم بسوق العمل، وفتح كليات جديدة تؤهل الطالب للعمل بكفاءة.

١٦ الأب هو عائل الأسرة ليوفر لها الحماية والرعاية، والأم هى حجر الأساس لتوفير العاطفة والحب.

١٧ يجب علينا الاهتمام بالموهوبين لأنهم أمل الأمة ومستقبلها، لذلك يجب توفير رعاية خاصة لهم.

١٨ ندرة الماء أزمة العالم القادمة، ومن ثم اقتصد فى استهلاكك للمياه، فقطرة الماء تساوى حياة.

١٩ إن الإصرار هو أول خطوة للنجاح، فلابد أن تتميز بالإصرار والعزيمة وقوة الإرادة.

٢٠ لابد أن يسود مبدأ الشورى داخل العائلة لينمو الطفل محبًا للحوار واحترام الرأى الآخر.

٢١ كلما كانت لديك القدرة على التخيل كنت أكثر إبداعًا، لذلك أكثرْ من القراءة.

٢٢ الماء إكسير الحياة وشريانها، فحافظ عليه من التلوث ولا تلق القمامة فيه.

٢٣ علينا أن نلتزم بعاداتنا وتقاليدنا، ولا نقلد لمجرد التقليد، فنحن شعب متدين بطبيعته.

٢٤ لابد من صيانة وتطوير وسائل المواصلات العامة لكى يتم استخدامها بواسطة فئات المجتمع المختلفة.

٢٥ الشعب المصرى نسيج واحد، فلا تؤثر فيه الإشاعات ومحاولات التفرقة بين طوائفه المختلفة.

٢٦ المدرس القدوة هو العمود الرئيسى فى العملية التعليمية، لذلك تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتدريبه.

٢٧ ارض بما قدره الله لك لأن راحة النفس تقلل الضغوط وتمنع الكثير من الأمراض.

٢٨ لقد ثبت علميًا أن الموسيقى تقلل التوتر ويتم استخدامها فى علاج بعض الأمراض.

٢٩ المدرسة هى اللبنة الأولى لتعليم الطفل النظام والمواظبة، لذلك يجب الاهتمام بالمدرسة.

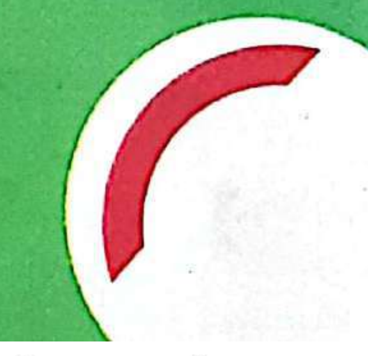
٣٠ وسائل الإعلام مصدر لمعرفة الكثير من طبقات الشعب، لذلك يجب أن تقدم محتوًى جيدًا.

# Part 2

Integrated Skills

## Integrated Skills

Getting Away
Supporting Community
Improving Lives
Friendship
Communications
Learning from literature





# Skills Integration Methodology

- نهدف من خلال تدريس هذا الجزء (Skills Integration) إلى الارتقاء بمستوى تعلم مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب فى بداية المرحلة الثانوية. حاولنا من خلال ذلك الربط بين المهارات الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة و الاستماع و الكتابة (Reading & Listening & Writing) بصورة مترابطة عن طريق تدريس نفس الموضوع من جوانب عده وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بالإضافة إلى إكسابهم رؤى مختلفة يستطيعون من خلالها تكوين منظورهم الخاص. تم تقديم المهارات بشكل يتواكب مع طريقة تلقى الطالب فتم البدء بمهارة القراءة ثم مهاره الاستماع وانتهاء بمهارة الكتابة بعد أن ينتهى الطالب من اكتساب مفردات لغوية جديدة فى جزئيتى القراءة والاستماع.
- بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill فى صورة قطعة فهم Comprehension Passage يليها أسئلة مشابهة لما قد يتعرض له الطالب أثناء أدائه الامتحان النهائى. تلى ذلك تقديم ومراجعة بعض الإرشادات الخاصة بقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية Grammar Hints.
- يأتى بعد ذلك الجزء الخاص بتقديم مهارة الاستماع Listening Skill ويعتبر كتاب GEM رائدًا فى تقديم تلك المهارة فى قالب غير تقليدى لمساعدة الطلاب فى تنميتها من خلال تقديم نص مسموع حول نفس موضوع قطعة الفهم. ثم تقديم ترجمة الكلمات الجديدة التى قد تساعد فى فهم الطالب للموضوع وتكوين حصيلة لغوية لديه. ثم تقديم أسئلة حول هذه الكلمات للتأكد من فهم الطالب لها وقدرته على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.
- فى الجزء الأخير يطلب من الطالب تطبيق نتائج ما تم فهمه فى الأجزاء السابقة من خلال ممارسة مهارة الكتابة Writing Skill عن طريق:

  ١- ترجمة لبعض الجمل المتعلقة بالموضوع.

  ٢- كتابة مقال مطابق للمعايير متعلق بالموضوع أيضًا.

وبذلك يكون الطالب قد تحصل على معلومات إضافية فى قالب غير تقليدى تساعده فى الإجابة عن أية أسئلة محررة مسايرة لاتجاهات التقييم الحديثة.



# Getting away



## Comprehension passage

Reading

Travel is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Travelling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be. The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train.

A number of destinations can be travelled to by using the sea. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

**A) Choose the correct answer:t**

1. Which mode of transport does not cost money?
   - a) Train.
   - b) Car.
   - c) Walking.
   - d) Bus.
2. Why do some people not enjoy travelling?
   - a) They find it a waste of time.
   - b) It is not comfortable.
   - c) It is expensive.
   - d) They become unwell.

3. Name the mode of transport which is controlled by a pilot and stops at an airport.
   a) Train.
   b) Airplane.
   c) Car.
   d) Bus.
4. Which mode of transport is ideal for travelling between countries connected by land?
   a) Bicycle.
   b) Train.
   c) Airplane.
   d) Car.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. In your opinion, how would life be without planes?
6. Which mode of transport do you prefer? Why?
7. Why are using cars and motorcycles very expensive?



## Grammar hints

Grammar

When you talk about travelling and means of transporting you mainly use the present simple tense because you are talking about facts. Also you can use the future simple to express your prediction about the future and use the past simple to talk about past actions and experiences.

**How to form the present simple tense in English:**

| Structure of present simple | | |
|---|---|---|
| **positive** | **negative** | **question** |
| I work in a bank. | I don't work in a bank. | Do I work in a bank? |
| You work in a bank. | You don't work in a bank. | Do you work in a bank? |
| He works in a bank. | He doesn't (does not) work in a bank. | Does he work in a bank? |
| She works in a bank. | She doesn't (does not) work in a bank. | Does she work in a bank? |
| It rains a lot. | It doesn't (does not) rain. | Does it rain a lot? |
| We work in a bank. | We don't work in a bank. | Do we work in a bank? |
| They work in a bank. | They don't work in a bank. | Do they work in a bank? |

## How to form the past simple tense in English:

| Structure of Past simple | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Positive** | **Negative** | **Question** |
| I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrived. | I / you / he / she / it / we / they didn't arrive. | Did I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrive? |

## How to form the future simple tense in English:

| Structure of future simple | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Positive** | **Negative** | **Question** |
| I will (I'll) be there tomorrow. | I won't (will not) be there. | Will I be there tomorrow? |
| you will, he will, she will, it will, we will, they will | you will not, he will not, she will not, it will not, we will not, they will not | will you?, will he?, will she?, will it?, will we?, will they? |



PART 2

## 3 Listening text




### Helping Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| advantages | مزايا |
| assume | يؤكد |
| avoid | يتجنب |
| connected | متصل |
| consuming | استهلاك |
| cruise | رحلات نهرية |
| travel agency | شركة سياحة |
| expenses | نفقات |
| companion | رفيق/صحبه |
| journey | رحلة |

| | |
|---|---|
| encourage | يشجع |
| environment | البيئة |
| especially | وبخاصة |
| gasoline | بنزين |
| passengers | مسافرون |
| payment | مقابل مادى |
| enjoyment | متعه |
| gain | يكتسب |
| purpose | غرض |

# Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I took the ring road to ................ the traffic jams in the downtown.
   a) get b) find c) stay d) avoid
2. The underground stopped suddenly because of a breakdown so all the ................ had to get out of it.
   a) passengers b) crafts c) workers d) trekkers
3. The big amount of pollution is very harmful to the ................ and all living creatures.
   a) lobby b) environment c) market d) closers
4. My little brother got low marks in the midyear exam but my parents ................ him to get better.
   a) discouraged b) rejected c) encouraged d) discussed
5. One ................ of electric cars is that it doesn't go for long distances.
   a) demerity b) activities c) advantage d) con
6. She rationalized the ................ by buying cheaper products for her house.
   a) expenses b) accounts c) prices d) attendants
7. I get a lot of ................ out of working with young children. They are fantastic.
   a) sorrow b) worry c) enjoyment d) boredom
8. The ................ of this meeting is to elect a new chairman.
   a) reason b) purpose c) situation d) conclusion
9. She has ................ a good reputation as a great teacher.
   a) earned b) won c) beaten d) gained
10. A/An ................ is a company that arranges hotel rooms, plane tickets for people who want to travel.
    a) news agency b) advertising agency c) travel agency d) travel channel

## 2 Translation:

Writing

### A) Translate into English:

قالو فى الماضى إن للسفر سبع فوائد، ولكن يرى البعض أن فوائد السفر لا حدود لها ولكن يتوقف ذلك على الغرض من السفر.

### B) Translate into Arabic:

People who are interested in travelling don't give due care to how much money they will spend, they only think about how much enjoyment they will have.

## 3 Writing:

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**Expectations about travelling in the future.**

(The previous ideas (comprehension- vocabulary- exercises- translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay)






# Supporting community

## 1 Comprehension passage

Reading

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A community is a group of people who live and work together. People who help each other and provide service to them are called community helpers. Whether you live in a small town, on a farm, or in a big city there are many community helpers.

Community helpers are people who work to help the community and the people who live in a community. There are many kinds of community helpers. There are community helpers who keep you safe and healthy, keep neighbourhoods clean, volunteer their time, and make sure everything works and gets built in the community.

The people who keep a community safe include firefighters, paramedics, and police officers. A police officer keeps people in the community safe from those who might try to hurt others. Firefighters also keep people safe. They help people who are in an accident or who have a fire at their house. A paramedic cares for people and takes them to a hospital when they are hurt or sick.

Two community helpers increase the knowledge of the people. A librarian takes care of and provides books and other materials to those in the community who need them. A librarian must be smart and care about books. A teacher helps others learn many different things in a school. A teacher must know a lot about different subjects and how to tell this information to others.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. How many community helpers are mentioned in the passage?
   a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .................. .
   a) firefighters b) paramedics
   c) police officers d) all mentioned
3. The suitable title of the passage is .................. .
   a) community helpers b) community workers
   c) community services d) community savers



4. Which of the following must know a lot about climbing ladders?
   a) Police officers.
   b) Pilots.
   c) Firefighters.
   d) Librarians.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Why do you think we should be community helpers?
6. Who can increase the knowledge of the people? How?
7. What is a community?

## 2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about charity work and how to help our society, you mainly use present simple tense whether active or passive forms as you are talking about persons' habits and also facts.
- Also, you can use the past simple tense when you talk about someone's achievements in the field of supporting and helping the society.

**How to form the past simple tense:**

| Positive | Negative |
|---|---|
| - I/He/She/It/We/You/They went out fast.<br>- I/He/She/It/We/You/They played football well. | - I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't go out.<br>- I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't play football well. |
| **Question** | **Passive form** |
| Did (subject) inf. ................?<br>What did (subject) inf. ................? | Obj. (was –were) + p.p.<br>A football match was played yesterday. |

**How to form the passive form of the present simple:**

| Active form | Passive form |
|---|---|
| - Some people donate money for charities.<br>- We always help the poor in our community. | - Money is donated for charities.<br>- The poor are always helped in our community. |





## 3 Listening text

Listening



### Helping Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| achievement | إنجاز |
| characteristics | سمات |
| charities | الجمعيات الخيرية |
| climb | يتسلق |
| clothing | ملبس |
| collect | يجمع |
| desire | رغبة |
| distribute | يوزع |
| donate | يتبرع |
| effort | جهد |
| firefighter | رجل المطافى |

| | |
|---|---|
| good citizen | مواطن صالح |
| knowledge | معرفة |
| ladder | سلم |
| neighbourhood | حى سكنى |
| paramedic | مسعف |
| possessions | ممتلكات |
| provide | يمد/يزود |
| safe | آمن |
| smart | ذكى |
| through | من خلال/عن طريق |
| volunteer | يتطوع/متطوع |

# Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all celebrate the ................ of our national team to be qualified to the world cup.
   a) characteristic b) achievement c) desire d) clothing
2. The ................ students get good grades and go to the Faculty of Medicine.
   a) safe b) financial c) homeless d) smart
3. The university should ................ more facilities for disabled students.
   a) provide b) collect c) climb d) create
4. You'll need waterproof ................ if you go out in the rain.
   a) charities b) characteristics c) clothing d) possessions
5. Ali was treated at the scene by a team of ................ before being taken by an ambulance to the hospital.
   a) firefighters b) paramedics c) volunteers d) neighbourhoods
6. The company ................ information about consumer favourite products.
   a) donates b) climbs c) attends d) collects
7. My father lifted the box easily, without using much ................ .
   a) effort b) clothing c) possessions d) knowledge
8. Sorry, I can't. The wall is too high to ................ over.
   a) go b) run c) climb d) walk
9. My son ................ for the army even though he did not have to.
   a) joined b) volunteered c) distributed d) provided
10. My brother is on the first step on the ................ of success.
    a) characteristic b) clothing c) knowledge d) ladder

## 2 Translation:

Writing

### A) Translate into English:

- إن الرغبة فى مساعدة المجتمع عن طريق التبرع بالمال والدم والجهد واحدة من سمات المواطن المصرى الصالح.

### B) Translate into Arabic:

Volunteer work is a great way to help and support the communities. As many people like to work as volunteers during their free time.

## 3 Writing:

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**Ways of supporting our society to be a better one.**

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write a comprehensive essay.





## 1 Comprehension passage

Reading

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

If you wish to change life and to get success, you need to work hard. Yes, it is very difficult to do, but you will get a lot of benefits later. Only those people, who work hard and spend a lot of their time can reach their goals and be successful.

If you do something, that you like, it is known, that you will get success quickly and you will get positive results. You should not think about what other people are speaking, it is needed just to do and reach the goals. You should understand that life consists of different events, without them, it is impossible to get success. Do you know that all dreams will come true if you work hard on them? All thoughts are connected with the reactions and because of them, if you change the way of thinking, you can change life.

A lot of the doctors say that smiling is very useful for life. It will give a lot of power and positive emotions. You will see that it is impossible to be in a bad mood, if you are smiling. Also, it is better to communicate with people, who are smiling, because it creates better start of the conversation. If you are eating healthy food, the brain will get all needed vitamins and minerals. Because of this fact, you will have a lot of power to do something new and to work hard to reach goals. Because of this fact, it is recommended to check the way of life and start doing sport.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. To be successful, you should .................... .
   a) think about what other people are speaking
   b) eat junk food
   c) be serious
   d) neglect people's speech

2. It is impossible to be in a bad mood, if you are .................. .
   a) eating healthy food
   b) changing your life
   c) smiling
   d) doing sport
3. The synonym of "understand" is .................. .
   a) grasp
   b) recognise
   c) mistake
   d) attach
4. The underlined word "them" refers to .................. .
   a) results
   b) reactions
   c) goals
   d) events

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
6. How do you think we can achieve our dreams?
7. How can healthy food help us to improve our life?

## 2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about an important or a famous character, you mainly use the past simple tense to describe his life, place of birth, date of birth and how he became famous. Also, you can use the past simple tense to talk about his works or achievements that he made.
- When you write about a situation that happened to you or a story, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- But, when you talk about an invention or a discovery that has made some improvements to our lives, you can use the present perfect tense to show its effects that are still with us.

**How to form the present perfect tense:**

| Positive | Negative |
|---|---|
| - I/we/you/they have cleaned the house.<br>- He/She/it has left the house. | - I/you/they haven't cleaned the house.<br>- He/she/it hasn't left the house. |
| **Question** | **Passive form** |
| - Have you/they cleaned the house?<br>- Has he/she/it left the house? | - The house has been cleaned.<br>- Some books have been published recently. |



## Listening text

Listening



### Helping Vocabulary

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| benefits | فوائد |
| bringing up | التربية |
| create | يخلق |
| dreams | أحلام |
| emotions | عواطف |
| encourage | يشجع |
| event | حدث هام |
| financial | مادى |
| goal | هدف |
| healthy food | طعام صحى |
| homeless | مشرد |
| ideal | مثالى |
| impossible | مستحيل |
| mental | عقلى |
| minerals | أملاح معدنية |
| mood | حالة مزاجية |
| physical | بدنى |
| positive | إيجابى |
| reaction | رد فعل |
| result | نتيجة |
| shelter | مأوى |
| smiling | الابتسام |
| success | نجاح |
| successful | ناجح |
| understand | يفهم |
| vitamins | فيتامينات |

# Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The discovery of oil brought many .................. to the future of our country.
   a) benefits b) vitamins c) results d) minerals
2. The new projects are expected to .................. 2000 jobs.
   a) encourage b) discourage c) create d) bring up
3. The centre provides help for people suffering from .................. illness.
   a) beneficial b) mental c) homeless d) successful
4. The concert of Amr Diab was a great .................. .
   a) succeed b) successful c) successor d) success
5. Having a .................. is considered as one of the basic needs of life.
   a) shelter b) mood c) reaction d) vitamin
6. If you could complete the report by Friday, that would be ..................; I need it before Saturday.
   a) properly b) improper c) ideal d) ideally
7. The response we've had from the public has been very ..................; it motivates us to make more success.
   a) negative b) positive c) disappointing d) impossibly
8. Can you tell us about your .................. when you knew that you won the prize?
   a) smiling b) result c) goal d) reaction
9. The government achieved their ............ of providing free education for every child.
   a) goal b) emotion c) mood d) disadvantage
10. We should help people with severe .................. disabilities.
    a) successful b) impossible c) physical d) curable

## 2 Translation:

Writing

### A) Translate into English:

- يجب على الدولة و كذلك المواطنون الاهتمام بأطفال الشوارع والمشردين عن طريق توفير مأوى آمن لهم وأيضا الاهتمام بهم من النواحي البدنية والعقلية والمادية.

### B) Translate into Arabic:

Parents and teachers are the main supporters for improving the lives of their children and students through providing the ideal upbringing and education.

## 3 Writing:

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**The efforts of the Egyptian government to improve the lives of the Egyptians.**

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.




## 1 Comprehension passage

Reading

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Friendship is one of the greatest bonds anyone can ever wish for. Lucky are those who have friends they can trust. Friendship is a devoted relationship between two individuals. They both feel immense care and love for each other. Usually, a friendship is shared by two people who have similar interests and feelings.

You meet many along the way of life, but only some stay with you forever. Those are your real friends who stay by your side through thick and thin. Friendship is the most beautiful gift you can present to anyone. It is one which stays with a person forever. A person is acquainted with many persons in their life. However, the closest ones become our friends. You may have a large friend circle in school or college, but you know you can only count on one or two people with whom you share true friendship.

There are essentially two types of friends, one is good friends the other are true friends or best friends. They're the ones with whom we have a special bond of love and affection. In other words, having a true friend makes our lives easier and full of happiness. Most importantly, true friendship stands for a relationship free of any judgments. In a true friendship, a person can be himself/herself completely without the fear of being judged. It makes you feel loved and accepted. This kind of freedom is what every human strives to have in their lives.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. If you have trusted friends, you are .................... .
   - a) unlucky
   - b) unfortunate
   - c) devoted
   - d) lucky
2. How many types of friends are in our life?
   - a) One.
   - b) Two.
   - c) Three.
   - d) Four.



3. The underlined word "It" refers to .................... .

a) freedom
b) ordinary friendship
c) true friendship
d) fear

4. The word "immense" is similar in meaning to .................... .

a) many
b) small
c) minor
d) great

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Do you have a true friend? Why? Why not?

6. Why do you think we need true friends?

7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

## 2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about how to make a new friend, friendship, or the qualities of a good friend, you can use present simple tense. But if you want to talk about an experience with a friend, you can use the past simple tense.
- When you talk about your experience of moving to a new place, you can use both the present simple tense and the past simple tense to compare between the two places and to describe your feelings. Also you can here use the present continuous and the past perfect.
- Take care of the articles (a – an – the) when you talk or write about something. You have to know whether the noun is singular, plural, specified or unique.

**How to form the past perfect tense:**

| Positive | Negative |
|---|---|
| - I/He/She/It/We/You/They had played with the ball. | - I/He/She/It/We/You/They hadn't played with the ball. |
| **Question** | **Passive form** |
| - Had you/she/he/it/they played with the ball? | - Obj. + had been + p.p. |



PART 2

## 3 Listening text

Listening



### Helping Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| affection | عاطفة | interests | اهتمامات |
| attribute to | يعزز/ينسب إلى | internal | داخلي |
| bonds | روابط | judge | يحكم |
| college | كلية | judgments | أحكام |
| companion | صحبة | loyalty | الإخلاص |
| confidence | الثقة | lucky | محظوظ |
| deceive | يخدع | maintain | يحافظ على |
| factors | عوامل | mutual respect | الاحترام المتبادل |
| feelings | مشاعر | relationship | علاقة |
| forever | للأبد | self-esteem | تقدير الذات |
| freedom | حرية | share | يشارك |
| friendship | الصداقة | sorrow | حزن |
| gift | هدية | tie | رابطة |
| immense | ضخم | tolerance | تسامح |
| individuals | أفراد | trust | يثق |



# Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I really have a good ................ with my little sister. I adore her.
   a) relative b) relationship c) citizenship d) championship
2. To cooperate well with each other, all of us should show ................ .
   a) violence b) intolerance c) tolerance d) difference
3. Parents must have ................ respect as they are role models for their children.
   a) manual b) annual c) monster d) mutual
4. The thief ................ the woman and took all her money.
   a) deceived b) received c) ticked d) tracked
5. My friend expressed his ................ at the death of my father. He was very sad.
   a) joy b) happiness c) sorrow d) hope
6. The prisoner was given his ................ after 25 years in prison.
   a) free b) freedom c) boredom d) relationship
7. His unhappiness in his workplace was the main ........ in his decision to travel abroad.
   a) element b) result c) consequence d) factor
8. During the last few days, I had ................ difficulties because of my serious injury.
   a) simple b) immediate c) immense d) deference
9. The school trip was very exciting because of the wonderful ................ .
   a) companion b) campaign c) continent d) constant
10. No country has the right to interfere in other country's ................ affairs.
    a) internal b) ordinary c) abnormal d) extraordinary

## 2 Translation:

Writing

### A) Translate into English:

- الصداقة هى رابطة قوية تربط بين شخصين وتكون قائمة على الثقة و التعاون والمحبة والإخلاص والاحترام المتبادل ولايمكن للإنسان أن يعيش بدونها.

### B) Translate into Arabic:

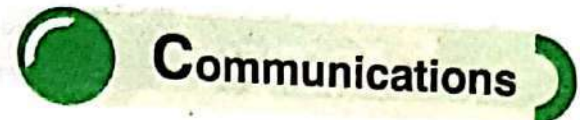
Loneliness can be attributed to internal factors such as low self-esteem. People who lack confidence in themselves often believe they are unworthy of attention.

## 3 Writing:

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**The qualities of a good friend.**

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.




## 1 Comprehension passage

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** Reading

It is rare to find someone with good technical and communication skills. People will judge, evaluate, promote or block you based on your communication skills.

Learning what not to say is probably more important than learning what to say. As your career develops, you will realise that the wise speak less. Speak when you have value to add. Avoid any communication in an emotional state when you might say things you will regret later. One unnecessary word uttered at the wrong time or place can ruin a relationship, career or even your life. Such is the power of words. If such a thing happens, you should immediately apologise, else it may haunt you for life.

Another problem to overcome is speaking too fast. Since our minds are working faster than our speech, we are inclined to speak fast. This does not necessarily mean that the person hearing it will get it any faster. On the contrary, it is always the reverse. So slow down, and think before you speak. "When I get ready to speak to people," Abraham Lincoln said, "I spend two-thirds of the time thinking what they want to hear and one-third thinking what I want to say." Adding humour is also essential. But realise that not all jokes are funny and observe certain boundaries. Never say anything that could offend. Remember you are not a comedian who must offend as many people as you can to be witty.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. To find someone with good technical and communication skills is something .................. .
   a) easy b) ordinary c) reachable d) seldom
2. To be wise, you should speak .................. .
   a) a lot b) a little c) more d) fast
3. The word "uttered" is similar in meaning to .................. .
   a) cut b) found c) said d) realised
4. The antonym of the word "essential" is .................. .
   a) trivial b) major c) main d) important

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Why do you think it is necessary to have good communication skills?
6. How can communication skills be developed?
7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

## 2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about means of communications or any modern technology in the future, you mainly use the future tense with its different forms.
- When you talk about any invention and its advantages and disadvantages, you mainly use the present simple tense.
- When you talk about something that happened at a particular time in the past, you can use the past simple and past continuous.

**How to form the future tenses:**

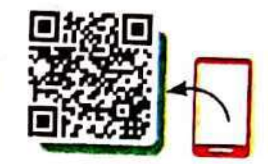
| Positive | Negative | Question | Passive form |
|---|---|---|---|
| Subj. + will + inf. | Subj. + won't + inf. | Will + subj. + inf. ? | Obj. + will be + p.p. |
| Subj. + (be) going to + inf. | Subj. + (be not) going to + inf. | (Be) + sub+ going to + inf.? | Obj. + (be) going to be + p.p. |
| Subj. + (am – is – are) + v-ing. | Subj. + (am –is – are) not + v-ing. | (Am – Is – Are) + subj. + v-ing? | Obj. + (am – is – are) + being + p.p. |
| Subj. + will have + p.p. | Subj. + won't have + p.p. | (Will) + Subj. + have + p.p...? | Obj. + will have been + p.p. |

**How to form past continuous tense:**

| Positive | Negative |
|---|---|
| - I/we/you/they were playing football.<br>- He/She/ It was eating. | - I/We/You/They weren't playing.<br>- He/She/It wasn't eating. |
| **Question** | **Passive form** |
| - Were you/they playing football?<br>- Was he/she/it eating? | - Obj. + (was – were) being + p.p. |



## 3 Listening text



Listening

### Helping Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| comedian | ممثل كوميدى |
| develop | يطور/ينمى |
| devices | أجهزة |
| entertain | يسلى |
| especially | خاصة |
| essential | أساسى/جوهرى |
| evaluate | يقيم |
| funny | مضحك |
| humour | دعابة |
| jokes | نكات |
| multi-functional | متعددة الاستخدامات |
| overcome | يتغلب على |
| pave | يمهد |
| portable | قابل للنقل |
| rare | نادر |
| realise | يدرك |
| role | دور |
| ruin | يدمر |
| schoolmates | زملاء فى المدرسة |
| slow down | هدئ (سرعة) |
| speech | الكلام/الحديث |
| value | قيمة |
| wise | حكيم |
| witness | يشهد |

# Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The television and the computer are now ................ . They are easy to move or carry.
   a) profitable b) bearable c) portable d) fictional
2. It has become ................ to keep your environment clean to avoid most diseases.
   a) unimportant b) essential c) inadvisable d) unnecessary
3. There were two ................ to the murder and they were asked to say what they saw.
   a) witnesses b) criminals c) killers d) prisoners
4. Hams has a good sense of ................ . She is cheerful and funny.
   a) human b) boredom c) humour d) sorrow
5. The city was in a state of ................ after the earthquake.
   a) rule b) ruin c) role d) run
6. We should ................ the situation carefully before making our decision.
   a) cultivate b) valuate c) evaporate d) evaluate
7. The government is working on developing our roads by ................ them well.
   a) paving b) waving c) moving d) pawing
8. The thieves stole goods with a total ................ of 10 million pounds.
   a) value b) valve c) evaluation d) speed
9. Egypt has managed to ................ most of the problems in a very short time.
   a) overload b) overcome c) overcast d) overcharge
10. We should have freedom of ................, but we must be polite and responsible for what we say.
    a) speak b) sponge c) speech d) sped

## 2 Translation:

### A) Translate into English:

Writing

- شهد العالم مؤخرًا توسعًا كبيرًا فى الكثير من المجالات و خاصة وسائل الاتصال حيث أصبح التواصل بين الناس فى كافة أنحاء العالم عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أكثر سهولة.

### B) Translate into Arabic:

Modern technology has paved the way for multi-functional devices like the smartwatch and the smartphone.

## 3 Writing:

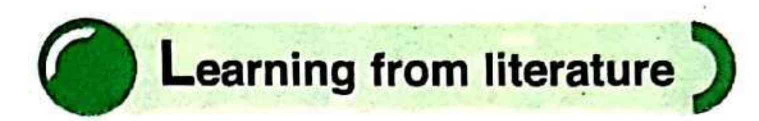
**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**Adverts on the internet and if they are good or bad.**

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.






## 1 Comprehension passage

Reading

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Reading literature is a good habit, but it is of no use if one cannot understand or remember what he or she has read. A lot of people even forget the name of the book they have just finished reading because of their inability to make the most out of their reading.

Careful reading is the key tool for understanding the main idea of the content and making the most out of your reading activity. It is advisable to read a single line more than once if it has complex meanings. This makes its understanding better and clearer.

After reading the book, write a summary of the content on your own. In that abstract, emphasise the main idea and informative points of the content. Having an understanding the text is more important than reading or memorising it.

There are several ways for a reader to enhance his comprehension ability. The first one is to read the text in a loud voice. This way the reader will be able to listen to his voice and it will be easier for him to understand what he is reading.

The person who is reading the text doesn't have to know all the expressions and words written in the text. While reading, the reader should jot down those difficult words in a notebook so that later he can search for them. Once the reader has gathered all the incomprehensible words, he should look up those words in a dictionary. Exploring those words in the dictionary will help them to establish the lucid meaning of the text.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined word "it" refers to ................... .
   - a) the main idea
   - b) the content
   - c) reading activity
   - d) a single line
2. How many ways are mentioned in the passage to enhance comprehension ability?
   - a) One.
   - b) Two.
   - c) Three.
   - d) Four.

3. The person who is reading the text should ................... .
   a) read in a loud voice
   b) understand the meaning of all words
   c) look up new words in a dictionary
   d) all mentioned

4. The underlined word "enhance" means ................... .
   a) improvise
   b) decrease
   c) discourage
   d) improve

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. How do you think reading helps our life?
6. What kind of books do you like to read? Why?
7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

## 2 Grammar hints

**Grammar**

- When you want to talk about your opinion of something such as a poet or a novel, you can use the present tenses; simple, perfect or continuous. But when you talk about the biography of the author or the writer, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- Take care when you talk or write about something that some verbs are followed by (to + inf.) or (V-ing) and also some verbs are followed by both according to the meaning.

**How to form the present continuous tense:**

| Positive | Negative |
|---|---|
| - I am watching TV.<br>- You/We/They are watching TV.<br>- He/She/It is watching TV. | - I am not watching TV.<br>- You/We/They aren't watching TV.<br>- He/She/It isn't watching TV. |
| **Question** | **Passive form** |
| - Are you watching TV?<br>- Are They/you watching TV?<br>- Is he/she/it watching TV? | - Obj. + (am – is – are) being + p.p.<br>- TV is being watched. |







## Listening text



Listening

### Helping Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| activity | نشاط | gather | يجمع |
| Book Fair | معرض الكتاب | habit | عادة |
| complex | معقد | hold | يقام |
| content | محتوى | inability | عدم القدرة |
| emphasise | يؤكد | literature | الأدب |
| establish | يؤسس | poetry | الشعر |
| exhibitions | معارض | publishing | نشر |
| explore | يستكشف | recognise | يتعرف على |
| expressions | تعبيرات | reduce | يقلل |

# Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the afternoon, there will be plenty of .................. to be practised by the kids.
a) expressions b) exhibitions c) activities d) views
2. Most of the money will be used to .................. local industries and mobilise the work-force.
a) ruin b) emphasise c) reduce d) recognise
3. The chemical processes involved in the experiment are extremely .................. .
a) wise b) complex c) portable d) rare
4. My teacher always .................. the importance of studying hard.
a) established b) explored c) gathered d) emphasised
5. Medical supplies have been .................. among families affected by Corona virus.
a) explored b) established c) distributed d) published
6. A collection of paintings by the great artist is on .................. at the Museum of Art.
a) literature b) Book Fair c) expression d) exhibition
7. He plans to .................. the area before he rents a flat there.
a) explore b) hold c) recognise d) reduce
8. What annoyed me is the .................. of my team to win the match.
a) inability b) content c) skill d) cleverness
9. .................. is the business of producing books and magazines.
a) Literature b) Publishing c) Emphasising d) Exploring
10. We thought it was COVID-19, but the doctor didn't .................. the symptoms الأعراض.
a) establish b) explore c) recognise d) hold

## 2 Translation:

### A) Translate into English:

Writing

- الشعر، الرواية، القصص القصيرة، المسرحيات والكتب بمختلف موضوعاتها هى فنون الأدب الذى من خلاله نتعرف على ثقافة الدولة وشعبها.

### B) Translate into Arabic:

The Cairo International Book Fair is the largest and oldest Book Fair in the Arab World. It is held every year at the Egypt International Exhibitions Centre.

## 3 Writing:

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

**A biography of a famous Egyptian writer and his achievements.**

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.




Important General Grammar

## Important General Grammar

# Important General Grammar

## 1 Causative

**السببية**

وهى ليست مثل المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول فهى تأتى مع الأشياء التى لا يقوم الإنسان بفعلها بنفسه ولكن شخصًا آخر يقوم بهذا العمل له وتتكون من:

| الشخص صاحب الشيء | + | v. to have على حسب الزمن | + | الشيء | + | P.P. التصريف الثالث | + | باقى الجملة |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

وعلى سبيل المثال، لو قلنا: إن الميكانيكى قام بتصليح سيارة أحمد، فلو بدأنا بالميكانيكى لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمعلوم، ولو بدأنا بالسيارة لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمجهول، ولو بدأنا بصاحب الشيء وهو أحمد لكانت الجملة سببية وهو ما نتحدث عنه الآن:

- The mechanic repaired Ahmed's car. (Active)
- Ahmed's car was repaired. (passive)
- Ahmed had his car repaired. (causative)

ولاحظ جيدًا تصريفات have فى مختلف الأزمنة وهى كالآتى:

| have/has | is having | had | was having | have/has had | had had | will have | أى فعل ناقص + have |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

| Active | Causative |
|---|---|
| She cleans her house. | She has her house cleaned. |
| She is cleaning her house. | She is having her house cleaned. |
| She cleaned her house. | She had her house cleaned. |
| She was cleaning her house. | She was having her house cleaned. |
| She will clean her house. | She will have her house cleaned. |
| She will be cleaning her house. | She will be having her house cleaned. |
| She has cleaned her house. | She has had her house cleaned. |
| She has been cleaning her house. | She has been having her house cleaned. |

| She had cleaned her house. | She had had her house cleaned. |
|---|---|
| She had been cleaning her house. | She had been having her house cleaned. |
| She must clean her house. | She must have her house cleaned. |
| She likes cleaning her house. | She likes having her house cleaned. |
| She has to clean her house. | She has to have her house cleaned. |
| She used to clean her house. | She used to have her house cleaned. |

- Mother was preparing our food when we returned home.
= We were having our food prepared when we returned home.
- The barber is going to trim my hair.
- I'm going to have my hair trimmed.
- I have bought a computer for Mr Osama recently.
= Mr Osama has had a computer bought recently.

**Ex.**

A: I hardly recognised you! You have had your hair dyed, Ahmed.
B: You should have your eyes tested. My name's Ramy not Ahmed.
A: Oh! You have had your name changed too, haven't you?

ويمكن استخدام الفعل get بدلًا من have

- You should get/have your car washed and polished.
- Did you have your hair cut?

# Exercises

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He .................... his teeth checked twice a year.
   a) had
   b) is having
   c) will have
   d) has
2. She .................... her skirt cleaned at the moment.
   a) is being had
   b) has
   c) is having
   d) will have
3. I .................... my hair trimmed once a month.
   a) am having
   b) have
   c) will have
   d) am going to have
4. We .................... a central heating installed in our house next month.
   a) are going to have
   b) had had
   c) had
   d) have had
5. Omar .................... burglar alarm fitted last week.
   a) is having
   b) has
   c) has had
   d) had
6. We .................... our new furniture delivered tomorrow.
   a) are had
   b) have
   c) are going to have
   d) have had
7. They are having their new house .................... at the moment.
   a) decorating
   b) decorated
   c) decorate
   d) decorates
8. Mrs. Othman had the shopping .................... to the house by her son.
   a) carried
   b) carries
   c) carrier
   d) carrying
9. We have to .................... the lock fixed.
   a) had
   b) having
   c) be having
   d) have
10. He is going to have a new pair of glasses .................... .
    a) making
    b) make
    c) made
    d) will make

## 2 Wishes & Regrets

الأمانى والندم

### I wish & If only يااليت

| Wish/ If Only | | |
|---|---|---|
| | + Past Simple | → refers to the present |
| | + Past perfect | → refers to the Past |
| | + Would/could | → refers to the Future |

### 1. wish/ if only + past simple

١ - للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف فى الحاضر نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط.

- My father only speaks Spanish. He wishes he spoke English or French.
- If only I didn't have so much homework. (I have a lot of homework).
- If only I lived in a big city. It's boring in the country.
- I wish I was/were a millionaire.

- يجوز استخدام (were) بدلًا من (was) فى هذه الحالة وخاصة فى المواقف الخيالية غير الواقعية.

### 2. wish/ if only + past perfect

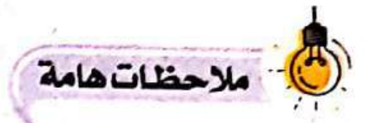
٢- للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى نستخدم زمن الماضى التام.

- I wish I'd studied harder when I was at school. (I didn't study harder when I was at school).
- I wish I hadn't eaten all that chocolate. I feel sick.

### 3. wish/ if only + would/ could

٣- للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف فى المستقبل نستخدم (مصدر + would/could).

- I wish it would rain.
  - The garden really needs some water.
- I wish you'd give up smoking.
  - It's really bad for you.




١ – يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أمنية فى الحاضر:

- If only I could sing. (but I can't)
- I wish I could find my keys to be able to enter the flat.

٢- غالبًا ما نستخدم (could) مع (I/we) ويمكن استخدام (would/could) مع باقى الضمائر فى معان, خاصة مثل:

- I wish they could speak French. (They can't.)
- I wish they would speak French. (They don't want.)

- الجملة الأولى أنهم لا يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية وأتمنى لو يستطيعون.
- الجملة الثانية أنهم يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية ولكنهم لا يريدون وهذا يضايقنى.

٣- نستخدم (could have + P.P) بدلاً من الماضى التام للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى.

- I wish I could have attended your party, but I was abroad.

٤- نستخدم ( If only) مثل حالات (if) كالآتى:

- If only Ahmed had come earlier, he'd have met his classmates.

٥- لا تؤثر (wishes/ wished) فى معنى الجملة أو زمنها.

- Maher wishes that he had a lot of money to buy a new house.
- Sameer wished he had mended the window before winter.

٦- يمكن أن نستخدم الماضى المستمر بعد (I wish/ if only).

- I wish it wasn't raining. (It is raining.)
- I wish you weren't leaving tomorrow. (You are leaving tomorrow.)

٧- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى (المصدر + to)

- Please do not hesitate to contact me if you wish to discuss the matter.

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I wish my flat .................... big enough to have a party.
   a) is  b) would be
   c) will be  d) were
2. Omnia wishes she .................... all that money on new clothes.
   a) will spend  b) could spend
   c) hadn't spent  d) spends
3. Ali wishes he .................... a basketball player, but he is short.
   a) is  b) were
   c) had been  d) are
4. I wish I .................... to Ahmed's wedding last week as he is angry with me.
   a) had gone  b) went
   c) would go  d) will go
5. My hope is to be a doctor. I wish I .................... a doctor.
   a) had been  b) am
   c) would be  d) could be
6. I can't concentrate. I wish they .................... this music down.
   a) had turned  b) have turned
   c) would turn  d) turn
7. He is an engineer, but he wishes he .................... medicine at university.
   a) studied  b) had studied
   c) would study  d) will study
8. I missed the train to Assuit. I wish I .................... it.
   a) had caught  b) caught
   c) catch  d) would catch
9. I usually visit China, but I wish I .................... their local food.
   a) had liked  b) like
   c) would like  d) liked
10. I regret going to the final match. I wish I .................... there.
   a) didn't go  b) wouldn't go
   c) hadn't gone  d) won't go

## 3 had better/ would rather/ prefer

- had better + inf. = should/ ought to/ had better not + inf.

- نستخدم had better بمعنى يجب أن، وبعدها المصدر وفى النفى not + inf.

- He'd better book his flight early.
- I'd better not take out a loan; I won't be able to pay it back.

Would rather = prefer +v-ing

- نستخدم would rather بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها المصدر وفى النفى not + inf وهى تفيد تفضيل شىء على شىء، لذلك يمكن استخدام than ثم المصدر معها.

- I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.
- I'd rather not have gone to the dinner party last night.
- I'd rather stay at home than go out. ('d rather + inf. than + inf.)

- إذا جاء اسم أو ضمير بعد rather نستخدم الماضى البسيط أو الماضى التام بنفس معنى wish نستخدم الماضى للتعبير عن المضارع والماضى التام للتعبير عن الماضى.

- I'd rather you stayed with us tonight. 'd rather + subject + past
- I'd rather Ramy hadn't taken his father's car yesterday.

(Prefer + ing) form/ noun + (to + ing) form/ noun (general preference)

- I prefer playing tennis to playing football. I prefer tennis to football.

Prefer + (to + inf.)/ noun + rather than + inf./ noun (general preference)

- I prefer to eat fish rather than (eat) meat.

Would prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. (specific preference)

- I'd prefer to walk home rather than take the bus.

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We went to the theatre yesterday; today I would rather .................. to the cinema.
   - a) going
   - b) to go
   - c) go
   - d) went
2. It's such nice weather – I 'd prefer .................. in the garden rather than watch TV.
   - a) to sitting
   - b) sitting
   - c) sit
   - d) to sit
3. It's such nice weather – I 'd prefer to sit in the garden .................. watching TV.
   - a) instead of
   - b) to
   - c) than
   - d) rather than
4. I'd rather you .................. a taxi. It's not safe on the streets at night.
   - a) to take
   - b) take
   - c) took
   - d) not take
5. The film is quite violent. I'd rather our children .................. it.
   - a) watch
   - b) didn't watch
   - c) to watch
   - d) watched
6. I prefer using a keyboard .................. with a pen.
   - a) to writing
   - b) to write
   - c) rather write
   - d) than write
7. I'd rather speak to him in person .................. things over the phone.
   - a) to discussing
   - b) to discuss
   - c) than discussing
   - d) than discuss
8. If I had a choice, I think I'd rather .................. London.
   - a) living in Paris to
   - b) live in Paris than in
   - c) live in Paris to
   - d) to live in Paris than
9. They'd rather have lunch inside, but I'd prefer .................. outside in the garden.
   - a) eat
   - b) eating
   - c) to eat
   - d) to eating
10. Although I love relaxing on beaches, I think I prefer .................. in the mountains.
    - a) walk
    - b) not to walking
    - c) to walking
    - d) walking

## 4 Unreal Past

### الماضى غير الحقيقى

- يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط للإشارة إلى الحاضر (الحاضر غير الواقعى) عندما نتحدث عن مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق فى الوقت الحاضر.
- يمكن استخدام الماضى التام للإشارة إلى مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق فى الماضى (الماضى غير الحقيقى).

| Past Simple is used with: | Past Perfect is used with: |
|---|---|
| - Conditionals Type 2<br>▸ If I were you, I would pay. | - Conditionals Type 3<br>▸ If I had seen him, I would have told you. |
| - wish (present)<br>▸ I wish he were here now. | - wish (past)<br>▸ I wish you had taken his advice when he gave it. |
| - Suppose/ Supposing<br>▸ Suppose you were asked to move out, what would you do? | - Suppose/ Supposing<br>▸ Suppose you had seen the crime being committed, what would you have done? |
| - I'd rather + sbuj. ... (present)<br>▸ I'd rather you went now. | - I'd rather + subj. ... (past)<br>▸ I'd rather you hadn't told all those lies. |
| - as if/ as though كما لو<br>▸ He isn't French but he speaks French as if he were from France. | - as if/ as though<br>▸ He hadn't been awarded the first prize but he behaved as if he had been awarded it. |
| - It's (about/high) time<br>▸ It's time you retired. | |

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Mr Khalid acted as if he .................... the company.
   a) would own  b) will own
   c) owns  d) owned
2. Supposing you .................... taking the money, what would you have done?
   a) were seen  b) had been seen
   c) had seen  d) saw
3. I wish I .................... to the concert last night.
   a) didn't go  b) went
   c) had gone  d) have gone
4. It's high time you .................... how to cook.
   a) learnt  b) had learnt
   c) hadn't learnt  d) learn
5. Suppose you .................... someone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do?
   a) were seen  b) saw
   c) had seen  d) can see
6. It's about time we .................... the old printer.
   a) replace  b) had replaced
   c) replaced  d) have replaced
7. I'd rather you .................... everyone my secret at the party last night.
   a) hadn't told  b) told
   c) didn't tell  d) had told
8. I would have prepared some sandwiches if I .................... you were visiting.
   a) know  b) could know
   c) knew  d) had known
9. I'd rather you .................... on the TV when I'm reading.
   a) turn  b) didn't turn
   c) hadn't turned  d) turned
10. If only I .................... my dad's camera. He's very angry with me.
    a) broke  b) didn't break
    c) hadn't broken  d) had broken

## 5 Pronouns

الضمائر

الضمائر هى كلمات تشير إلى أسماء تنقسم إلى:
ضمائر فاعل – ضمائر مفعول – صفات ملكية – ضمائر ملكية – ضمائر منعكسة

| Subject pronouns | Object pronouns | Possessive pronouns | Possessive adjectives | Reflexive pronouns |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | me | mine | my | myself |
| He | him | his | his | himself |
| She | her | hers | her | herself |
| It | it | -- | its | itself |
| We | us | ours | our | ourselves |
| They | them | theirs | their | themselves |
| You | you | yours | your | yourself – yourselves |
| يأتى بعدها الفعل<br>تأتى فى بداية الجملة | تأتى بعد الفعل<br>تأتى بعد حرف الجر | لا تتبع باسم | يأتى بعدها الاسم | تعود على فاعل الجملة<br>الغرض منها التأكيد |

- I play football with my friends.
- He will visit me tomorrow.
- Don't speak with them again.
- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- I took his book but I couldn't take hers.
- I did my homework (by) myself.
- She, herself, phoned me to tell the truth.

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Our house is as big as .................... . They are the same area.
   a) your  b) you
   c) yourself  d) yours
2. Trees protect .................... from many problems such as global warming.
   a) us  b) we
   c) our  d) ours
3. Ali is going to travel tomorrow. .................... has booked the tickets.
   a) His  b) Him
   c) He  d) Himself
4. Make .................... at home and enjoy your time.
   a) yourself  b) yours
   c) you  d) ourselves
5. I couldn't clean the house by .................... so I asked my sister's help.
   a) my  b) myself
   c) mine  d) me
6. Amal is sitting next to .................... in the exam room.
   a) me  b) mine
   c) my  d) myself
7. I love English very much. .................... my favourite subject.
   a) Its  b) It's
   c) There's  d) He's
8. When she came home, she made .................... husband a cup of coffee.
   a) her  b) hers
   c) herself  d) hers
9. This is Mona's car, it isn't .................... .
   a) my  b) her
   c) mine  d) myself
10. You can take this present. I got it for .................... .
    a) your  b) you
    c) yourself  d) yourselves

## 6 Question Tag

السؤال المذيل

يأتى السؤال المذيل فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية بعد comma ويكون الغرض منه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟)

يتكون السؤال المذيل من كلمتين (auxiliary verb + Subject pronoun).

السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (يكون مثبتا إذا كانت الجملة منفية والعكس صحيح).

النفى فى السؤال المذيل يكون مختصرًا بمعنى (n't) و ليس (not).

- Ali is playing football, isn't he?
- They don't sleep late, do they?
- Mona always gets up early, doesn't she?
- I am happy, aren't I?
- I am not astonished, am I?
- You'd rather come early, wouldn't you?
- You'd better study hard, hadn't you?
- He'd studied his lessons, hadn't he?
- They'd study their lessons, wouldn't they?
- Open the door, will/won't you?
- Don't open the door, will you?
- Let's go out tonight, shall we?
- Let us go out tonight, will you?
- I think you will pass the exam, won't you?
- I don't think you will pass the exam, will you?
- I never watch plays on TV, do I?
- Someone is recording a video, aren't they?
- No one can come here today, can they?
- This is a nice story, isn't it?
- Amazing, isn't it?

# Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I think that nobody lives in this house, ....................?
   a) don't they   b) do they
   c) don't I   d) does he
2. We are very happy to be with you, ....................?
   a) are we   b) are you
   c) aren't we   d) are we
3. Hams can hardly walk as she has injured her leg, ....................?
   a) can she   b) can't she
   c) does she   d) has she
4. He's visited his grandfather and stayed a long time with him, ....................?
   a) isn't he   b) doesn't he
   c) hasn't he   d) wasn't he
5. He slept after he had finished his homework, ....................?
   a) hadn't he   b) didn't he
   c) wouldn't he   d) had he
6. He's the best grade in English, ....................?
   a) has he   b) isn't he
   c) doesn't he   d) hasn't he
7. I am going to travel to Cairo tomorrow, ....................?
   a) am not I   b) amn't I
   c) am I   d) aren't I
8. Hana runs fast to school, ....................?
   a) doesn't Hana   b) does not she
   c) doesn't she   d) does Hana
9. Give me another chance, ....................?
   a) will you   b) would you
   c) wouldn't you   c) will not you
10. I don't think they saw us, ....................?
   a) did they   b) do they
   c) didn't they   c) do I

# 7 Conjunctions

الروابط

❶ روابط التناقض

1. Although = though/even though (S + V + ............ (بالرغم من (يأتى بعدها جملة كاملة)
   ▸ Although he's only 14, he's an expert at computers.
2. However + صفة + فاعل + فعل
   ▸ However fast he was, he couldn't catch the bus.
3. صفة + as + فاعل + فعل
   ▸ Fast as he was, he couldn't catch the bus.
4. Despite/in spite of (noun/ gerund = V + ing) بالرغم من (يأتى بعدها عبارة)
   ▸ Despite his illness, he passed his exams.
5. but =, however =, yet
   ▸ She drove fast, however she missed the plane.
   ▸ I studied so hard, but I didn't get the full mark.

❷ روابط الإضافة

6. As well as = besides + in addition to (noun/ gerund) بالإضافة إلى
   ▸ Besides cooking for 20 people, I did all the washing up.
7. in addition + جملة
   ▸ He played very well in addition he scored a goal.
8. فاعل, as well as فاعل، فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول
   ▸ I, as well as my friend, play football well.
9. Not only + صيغة استفهامية + but + جملة كاملة + as well
   ▸ Not only have you got top marks but you've got a prize as well.

❸ روابط السبب

10. Because = since = as (S + V) ( لأن (يأتى بعدهم جملة كاملة
    ▸ Because /since we are early, I think we should wait outside.
    ▸ My daughter got up early because she slept early.
11. Because of = owing to = due to ( noun/ gerund) بسبب
    ▸ Due to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.
    ▸ He can answer any question because of being clever.

❹ روابط الغرض

12. So as to = in order to = to + inf. لكى
    ▸ He opened the door in order to see who was there.
13. So that = in order that (S فاعل + can/may/could/might + verb)
    ▸ He left early so that he could/ (might) catch the train.

❺ روابط النتيجة

14. So = therefore =that's why = - Consequently
    ▸ My bike's broken, so I'll have to walk.
    ▸ I missed the train. Consequently I was late for school.

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He didn't expect to win .................. he was delighted when he won the gold medal.
   a) so b) for c) if d) as
2. They risked their lives .................. save their country.
   a) due to b) so that c) because d) so as to
3. .................. writing a famous book, he translated French literature into Arabic.
   a) Because of b) Beside c) In addition d) As well as
4. I want to buy a nice present .................. it is my mother's birthday.
   a) so b) as c) although d) despite
5. I felt really tired this morning .................. I slept early last night.
   a) because b) but c) although d) so that
6. He tries to save much money .................. he can buy a car.
   a) so that b) to c) in order to d) because
7. .................. old he is, he can play tennis very well.
   a) However b) Although c) Despite d) So
8. He didn't do his best, .................. he came first in the final exam.
   a) so b) because c) However d) however
9. I was very late for my work. .................., I had to take a taxi.
   a) Consequently b) Occasionally c) However d) As well
10. My brother, as well as his friends, .................. late for school.
    a) were b) are c) have been d) was
11. .................. running as fast as he could, he missed the bus.
    a) However b) As well as c) Despite d) Although
12. Hams had to change her opinion .................. the problems she had.
    a) owing to b) because c) so d) besides
13. Poor .................. this man is, he feels very happy and satisfied.
    a) however b) as c) although d) so
14. She didn't attend the wedding .................. she had promised me to come.
    a) so b) though c) because d) but
15. Not only .................. to the party, but he brought a present as well.
    a) he came b) he had come c) did he come d) will he come

## 8 so ... that/ such ... that/ enough/ too ... to

1. فاعل + فعل + so + صفة – ظرف + that + جملة — جدًا لدرجة أن

▸ Hams is so clever that she can answer any questions.

2. فاعل + فعل + such + a/an+ صفة + اسم + that + جملة — جدًا لدرجة أن

▸ Hams is such a clever student that she can answer any question.

3. فاعل + فعل + such + صفة + اسم جمع – اسم لا يعد + that + جملة

▸ They are such clever students that they can answer any questions.

▸ He gave me such useful information that we were so happy.

4. فاعل + فعل + adjective / adverb + enough + to + inf. — كافٍ

▸ Hana is clever enough to answer any question.

▸ She isn't tall enough to join the basketball team.

5. فاعل + فعل + enough + اسم + to + inf.

▸ He has enough money to buy the car that he likes.

6. فاعل + فعل + too + صفة – ظرف + to +inf. — جدًا لدرجة أن لا (تعطى معنى النفى)

▸ Ali is too lazy to do the homework.

▸ The question was too difficult to answer.

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He is .................... clever student that he always gets the full mark in his exams.
   a) such
   b) such a
   c) so
   d) too
2. I couldn't answer the question. It was .................... for anyone to answer.
   a) so difficult
   b) difficult enough
   c) too difficult
   d) such difficult
3. Ali is .................... ill to go to school on his own.
   a) enough
   b) too
   c) so
   d) such an
4. The food was .................... hot to eat.
   a) too
   b) to
   c) so
   d) very
5. I have .................... work to do. It's hard to finish it.
   a) so much
   b) such much
   c) too much
   d) enough much
6. The water in the pool was .................... to swim in.
   a) cold enough
   b) so cold
   c) enough cold
   d) too cold
7. So fast .................... that he could catch the bus before leaving.
   a) Ali ran
   b) did Ali run
   c) Ali was run
   d) Ali was
8. I don't have .................... money to buy this wonderful car.
   a) too much
   b) such much
   c) enough
   d) many
9. He is .................... stupid that he couldn't pass the simple test.
   a) so
   b) such
   c) too
   d) enough
10. I think they are .................... students that they managed to pass all their exams.
    a) so clever
    b) such a clever
    c) such clever
    d) so a clever

# 9 Distributives

all + اسم جمع يعد ----------- فعل جمع
all + اسم كمية لا يعد ---------- فعل مفرد

both + اسم جمع يعد ----------- فعل جمع
both + فاعل + and + فاعل ---------- فعل جمع

either + اسم مفرد يعد ------------- (إثبات) فعل مفرد
either of + اسم جمع ----------- فعل مفرد أو جمع
either ..................... or ..................... الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى
neither + اسم مفرد يعد ----------- (تعطى معنى النفى) فعل مفرد فى صيغة الإثبات
neither of + اسم جمع ------------ فعل مفرد أو جمع
neither ..................... nor ..................... الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى

every + اسم مفرد = all + اسم جمع
every + الفترات الزمنية

each + اسم مفرد كل واحد على حدة
each of + اسم جمع -------------- فعل جمع
each + اسم مفرد تشير إلى واحد من اثنين each arm = both arms

# Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Hams wants to study .................... English or Geology at school.
   a) either  b) both  c) neither  d) half
2. There was a fire in the toy shop and .................... toys were damaged.
   a) both  b) all  c) every  d) each
3. .................... of my parents are at home today because they are at work.
   a) Neither  b) Both  c) Either  d) All
4. My teacher gave .................... student in the class a small present.
   a) all  b) each  c) either  d) both
5. .................... the rice that you need is in the cupboard.
   a) All  b) Both  c) Either  d) Each
6. I need to be good at .................... speaking and writing English to get a good job.
   a) each  b) both  c) every  d) half
7. I called both Hana and Mona, but .................... replied.
   a) neither  b) either  c) both  d) every
8. He had an accident and he was injured in .................... leg.
   a) both  b) every  c) all  d) each
9. He had an accident and he was injured in .................... legs.
   a) both  b) every  c) all  d) each
10. He comes to visit his parents .................... three days.
    a) each  b) all  c) half  d) every
11. .................... citizen has the right to vote in the elections.
    a) Both  b) Every  c) Neither  d) All
12. Neither Dina nor her sisters .................... to the club.
    a) go  b) is going  b) goes  d) has gone
13. .................... student in the class knows the right answer to this question. I am really shocked.
    a) Every  b) Neither  b) All  d) Either
14. .................... of the two brothers were at the party yesterday.
    a) All  b) Every  b) Half  d) Each
15. The teacher will ask .................... student in turn.
    a) all  b) each  b) neither  d) both

# 10 Adjectives

الصفة هى الكلمة التى تصف الاسم وتأتى:

١- قبل الاسم المفرد أو الجمع

٢- بعد v-to be

٣- بعد الظرف

- Ali is a clever boy.
- I saw some wonderful animals yesterday.
- Hind is lazy.
- He was well-organized.

## Ordinary and Extreme adjectives:

بعض الصفات عادية فى حين أن بعض الصفات قوية:

الصفات العادية نستخدم معها الظروف التالية:

- Very – quite – fairly – rather

الصفات القوية نستخدم معها الظروف التالية

- Absolutely – extremely – totally – completely – really – incredibly

## Examples of ordinary and strong adjectives:

| Ordinary | Strong | Ordinary | Strong |
|---|---|---|---|
| happy | excited | bad | awful |
| clever | brilliant | good | amazing |
| cold | freezing | angry | furious |
| interesting | fascinating | large | huge |
| hot | boiling | clean | spotless |

- Mona is very angry.
- Mona is absolutely furious.

## Verbs followed by adjectives

الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها صفة:

(go – get – turn – fall – grow – come – become – feel …….)

- The weather turned cold.
- He fell asleep while watching the film.



# Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He is .................... I can't stand dealing or even speaking with him.
   - a) bore
   - b) bored
   - c) boring
   - d) boredom
2. The soup tasted ...................., so I asked for some more.
   - a) wonderfully
   - b) wonder
   - c) wonderful
   - d) wonders
3. School kids are very .................... during breaks.
   - a) noisy
   - b) nosily
   - c) noise
   - d) nosiness
4. Mona is absolutely .................... with her children who broke the vase.
   - a) angry
   - b) annoyed
   - c) angrily
   - d) furious
5. He tried to solve the problem, but everything went .................... .
   - a) wrong
   - b) wrongly
   - c) wronged
   - d) wrongness
6. My son Mohammed is .................... clever.
   - a) absolutely
   - b) terribly
   - c) very
   - d) enough
7. I looked .................... at the present that my dad bought.
   - a) happy
   - b) happily
   - c) happening
   - d) happiness
8. The plane that I saw flew .................... in the sky.
   - a) high
   - b) highness
   - c) highly
   - d) higher
9. He was brought up .................... so, he has good manners.
   - a) badly
   - b) bad
   - c) good
   - d) well
10. My brother is .................... tall, so I advised him to join a basketball team.
    - a) extreme
    - b) extremely
    - c) extremism
    - d) an extreme

# 11 The Gerund and The Past Participle as Adjectives

**1. The gerund is used as an adjective for the doer of the action.** (اسم الفاعل)

- تصف المسبب للحدث (اسم الفاعل)

- The film is amazing. (not amazed)
- He was very boring and I had no desire to talk to him.

**2. The past participle adjective is used for the receiver of the action.** (اسم مفعول)

- تصف مستقبل الحدث (اسم مفعول)

- I was amazed when I saw the film.
- I am really bored when I talk to this person.

- ومن هنا نلاحظ أنه من الخطأ الشائع أن نقول إن الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء وإن الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف الأشخاص.

- I was very frightened when I met that frightening man.

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I was so .................... and for that reason I went to bed early.
   a) tiring b) tire
   c) tired d) tiredness
2. The dog got .................... with the same food that it usually got.
   a) boring b) bored
   c) boredom d) bore
3. I became .................... on seeing the mountains in Sinai.
   a) impressed b) impressing
   c) impressive d) impress
4. Mido is so .................... that I always enjoy being with him.
   a) interested b) interest
   c) interests d) interesting
5. The match was .................... so we were so happy to attend it in the stadium.
   a) fascinated b) fascinating
   c) fascinate d) fascination

# 12 Adverbs

الظرف هو الكلمة التى تصف الفعل وتأتى:

بعد الفعل

قبل الصفة

فى بداية الجملة أحيانا

- He runs quickly.
- Ali is badly injured.
- Interestingly, they won the match.

هناك عدة أشكال مختلفة للظرف و هى:

إضافة ly للصفة مثل:

slowly – quickly – interestingly – terribly – happily .....

ظروف و صفات بنفس الشكل

high – late – early – hard – fast

الصفات المنتهية بـ ly نستخدم الترتيب التالى:

in a/a + adj. + way

in a friendly way – in an ugly way

ظروف التكرار مثل:

often – generally – sometimes – hardly – rarely – frequently

ظروف التأكيد والاحتمال:

certainly – definitely – probably – exactly – possibly – maybe

ظروف الدرجة:

almost – much – nearly – quite – really – very – too – fairly – extremely

ظروف شاذة مثل:

well – indoors – outdoors

## Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My mother was ………………, so she was taken to hospital.
   - a) bad injury
   - b) bad injured
   - c) badly injured
   - d) injured bad
2. I shouted ……………… at my son when he broke his toys.
   - a) angry
   - b) angrily
   - c) anger
   - d) angrier
3. I haven't seen her ……………… . She must be travelling.
   - a) late
   - b) later
   - c) lately
   - d) late time
4. Teachers at schools treat students ……………… .
   - a) in a friendly way
   - b) friendly
   - c) in friendly
   - d) in a friend way
5. ………………, I own a very wonderful house.
   - a) Current
   - b) In a current way
   - c) Current less
   - d) Currently
6. I could ……………… walk after the terrible accident because of my broken leg.
   - a) hardly
   - b) hard
   - c) harder
   - d) hardness
7. I always speak ……………… about our great Egyptian scientists.
   - a) proud
   - b) pride
   - c) proudness
   - d) proudly

## 13 Comparative and Superlative

| Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|
| صفات الدرجة الثانية و هى المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين | التفضيل بين شخص أو شىء و بين مجموعته |
| adj. + er + than | the + adj. + est |
| more + adj. + than | the most + adj. |
| less + adj. + than | the least + adj. |
| better + than | the best |
| worse + than | the worst |

- Mona is taller than Leila.
  - Mona is the tallest in the class
- Basma is more beautiful than Hams.
  - Basma is the most beautiful in the family.
- Ahmed is better than Ali.
  - Ahmed is the best student in the class.

عند المساواة equality نستخدم as + adj. + as

عند نفى التساوى نستخدم not as (so) + adj. + as

- Rasha is as clever as Noha.
- Rami isn't as (so) fast as Ali.

لاحظ الآتى:

**The + comparative of two ..................**

- He is the taller of two friends.

**The + comparative .................., the + comparative ..................** كلما .................. كلما

- The more you study, the higher marks you will get.

## Exercises

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is .................... interesting book I have ever read.
   - a) more
   - b) most
   - c) as
   - d) the most
2. Maha is .................... of the two sisters.
   - a) fast
   - b) faster
   - c) the faster
   - d) the fastest
3. This question is not .................... the other one.
   - a) more difficult
   - b) most difficult
   - c) as difficult
   - d) so difficult as
4. The .................... you run, the earlier you arrive.
   - a) most
   - b) more
   - c) fastest
   - d) must
5. Who is ...................., Mona or Eman?
   - a) young
   - b) the youngest
   - c) as younger
   - d) younger
6. No river in the world is .................... the river Nile.
   - a) as long as
   - b) longer than
   - c) the longest
   - d) longest
7. Of all the boys in my street, Hani is .................... .
   - a) clever
   - b) cleverest
   - c) cleverer
   - d) the most cleverest
8. I am good at cooking, but my mother is .................... .
   - a) better
   - b) best
   - c) goodies
   - d) the better
9. I think running is .................... useful than walking.
   - a) much
   - b) much more
   - c) many
   - d) more much
10. This is one of .................... places in the whole world.
    - a) hotter than
    - b) the hottest
    - c) as hot
    - d) the most hot




Gem

# English

الصف 1 الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

# Final Tests

## Final Test 1

40

**Choose Two of the Five options:** 4

1. Hala was angry when she lost her mobile. The antonyms of the word "angry" are ................ .
   a) furious b) satisfied c) stingy d) cruel e) pleased
2. Modern means of transport make it easy to reach remote areas. The synonyms of the word "remote" are ................ .
   a) faraway b) nearby c) close d) distant e) near

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** 14

3. Footballers often ................ a lot of money because football has become the most famous sport.
   a) beat b) earn c) win d) gain
4. Each person should ................ blood once a year at least.
   a) lend b) transplant c) donate d) transmit
5. She ................ to London since last month. She is still there.
   a) has gone b) has been c) hasn't been d) hasn't gone
6. The ................ of the ship consists of seven sailors and the captain.
   a) staff b) team c) band d) crew
7. Some animals live in very ................ parts of the world.
   a) isolated b) insulated c) insulted d) installed
8. You bought me a theatre ticket yesterday, so I ................ you some money.
   a) lend b) borrow c) owe d) own
9. While I was revising my lesson, my mother ................ dinner.
   a) was preparing b) preparing c) is preparing d) prepares
10. A man ................ by the company he keeps, so we have to choose our friends well.
    a) is known b) knows c) has known d) was known
11. We need to wake up early tomorrow. The train to Aswan ................ at 6 a.m.
    a) is going to leave b) leaves c) will leave d) leave
12. Last night, I went to ................ Indian restaurant. ................ restaurant served good food.
    a) an/The b) a/The c) the/The d) the/a
13. My sister ................ buy a new dress. She's already decided to do so.
    a) will b) would c) is going to d) can
14. We never allow ................ at school. It has bad effects on children.
    a) bully b) bullying c) cyberbully d) to bully

15 The boy ................ on the wall when he fell down.

a) was walking b) walked c) walks d) was walked

16 During the exam, I ................ a friend of mine cheating.

a) was seeing b) was see c) see d) saw

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**



Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 Natural remedies are attracting attention because they ................ .

a) are used in Egypt

b) have side effects

c) are exported from Egypt

d) can treat a lot of diseases

18 Garlic is an example of ................ .

a) natural remedies b) artificial herbs

c) chemical medicines d) modern drugs

19 ................ is a physical condition that shows you may have a particular disease.

a) Prescription b) Property

c) Symptom d) Remedy

20 A herbalist writes out a prescription ................ checking his reference books.

a) during b) after

c) while d) before

21 The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the ................ .

a) herbalist b) shop

c) customer d) prescription

22 Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because ................. .

a) it's cheaper and cleaner
b) it's easily found and easily taken in
c) it cures and protects from side effects
d) many local people benefit from selling it

23 The antonym of the underlined word "advantage" is ................. .

a) demerit
b) advancement
c) disagreement
d) agreement

24 The main idea of the passage is ................. .

a) the herbal medicine benefits
b) the chemical medicine disadvantages
c) the Faculty of Medicine
d) the trees can cure

25 Which sentence is NOT correct about Natural herbs?

a) They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.

26 The bark of the ................. is used to make aspirin.

a) bush tree
a) shadow plant
c) palm tree
d) willow tree

27 **Translate into English:** 3

كثير من الشباب متحمسون للمشاركة فى العمل الاجتماعى لكى يطوروا بلادهم. فالشباب هم أساس التطور لأى أمة لذلك تولى الدول المتقدمة اهتماما خاصا بالشباب.

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

28 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Unemployment is a time bomb that threatens the security and stability of Egyptian society. The solution to this problem will be through new investments which provide more job opportunities.

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"The importance of charities in society"

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................

# Final Test 2

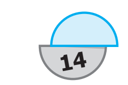
40

## Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. Science fiction films are boring. The opposites of the word "boring" are ................ .
   - a) annoying
   - b) interesting
   - c) terrifying
   - d) exhausting
   - e) exciting
2. She looked after the patients during their illness. The synonyms of "looked after" are ................ .
   - a) ignored
   - b) cared for
   - c) left
   - d) nursed
   - e) found about

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:




3. Germany is ................ European country. It has an area of 357,021 square kilometers.
   - a) the
   - b) a
   - c) an
   - d) no article
4. Manal hasn't phoned us ................ the summer holiday. It's unusual of her.
   - a) ago
   - b) since
   - c) already
   - d) for
5. We met a lot of our friends ................ our stay in Austria.
   - a) while
   - b) in
   - c) since
   - d) during
6. We always ................ to school when we were young as the school wasn't far from our house.
   - a) walk
   - b) walked
   - c) are walking
   - d) were walking
7. The police have so far failed to ................ down the criminal.
   - a) track
   - b) tick
   - c) trek
   - d) truck
8. It's the first time we have ................ been to Naples.
   - a) ever
   - b) never
   - c) since
   - d) yet
9. I don't know how to operate my tablet. Don't worry, I ................ you.
   - a) show
   - b) am showing
   - c) am going to show
   - d) will show
10. Do you think the words "dine" and "fine"................?
    - a) rhythm
    - b) compose
    - c) rhyme
    - d) belong
11. My grandfather died ................ 84.
    - a) age
    - b) aging
    - c) aged
    - d) ages
12. The bank lost a lot of money. They think their computer system had been ................ into.
    - a) baked
    - b) caked
    - c) backed
    - d) hacked
13. Use your mind and don't take anything ................ granted.
    - a) at
    - b) for
    - c) with
    - d) from
14. She certainly hasn't done anything that ................ that cruel punishment.
    - a) reserved
    - b) deserved
    - c) observed
    - d) reversed

15 Mum used ................ delicious meals before she started her job.

a) cooking b) to cook c) to cooking d) that cooking

16 We should avoid ................ into troubles with people we love.

a) to get b) that get c) getting d) to getting

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** 10

With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes a driver age to get to his destination.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 Taking a public bus is a problem because ................ .

a) it is expensive b) getting on and off the bus is difficult

c) it is very slow d) bus drivers drive carelessly

18 The pronoun "they" refers to ................ .

a) taxi drivers b) taxis

c) buses d) passengers

19 Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep ................ the long wait at the bus stop.

a) up b) away from

c) on d) down

20 Possessing a private car is ................ to doctors and engineers.

a) unnecessary b) kind

c) indispensable d) bad

21 The synonym of the word "complicated" is ................ .

a) complex b) simple

c) easy d) noncomplex

22 According to the writer, possessing a car can be a trouble because ................ .
a) cars take a space in the garage
b) cars have to be left in the streets
c) drivers are careless
d) traffic is incredible

23 The best title for this passage is "................" .
a) Traffic Rules
b) Types of Cars
c) Driving carelessly
d) Transportation

24 According to the passage, it takes drivers a long time to reach their destination when .............. .
a) the streets are empty
b) it's the rush hour
c) the drivers drive slowly
d) the garages are full

25 According to the passage, some taxi drivers are ................ .
a) greedy
b) good
c) honest
d) funny

26 The sentence "it takes a driver age to get to his destination" shows that ................ .
a) people don't know their destination
b) GPS always misleads people
c) drivers can't drive
d) it takes long time

## 27 Translate into English:

3

يجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع لمحاربة التنمر؛ فهو مشكلة اجتماعية سيئة تنتشر بين الشباب وتهدد الناس فى كل مكان.

## 28 Translate into Arabic:

3

To achieve your ambitions in life, you should have determination, courage, patience as well as a sense of responsibility.

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

## 29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"Some young children spend a great amount of their time practising sports. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer."

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

# Final Test 3



## Choose Two of the Five options:



1 My mother asked me to watch my little son till she comes back. The synonyms of the word "watch" are ................ .

a) observe b) look for c) monitor d) see off e) collect

2 Doing sports increases his fitness. The antonyms of the word "increase" are ................ .

a) support b) decrease c) reduce d) raise e) strengthen

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3 The rich should ................ money to charities to help the poor.

a) donate b) steal c) rob d) take

4 Firefighters should wear ................ clothes while facing fires.

a) protection b) protected c) protective d) protects

5 My brother got his master's degree, so he is over the ................ .

a) ground b) sky c) earth d) moon

6 Just as the dinner ................, my father was reading the newspaper.

a) was preparing b) was being prepared
c) was prepared d) is preparing

7 I ................ living away from my family before travelling abroad.

a) wasn't used to b) used to c) didn't use to d) is used to

8 Tourists will stop coming to Egypt if tourism is not ................ .

a) tricky b) tiny c) sustainable d) boring

9 Ragab ................ to the beach every summer when he was young.

a) went b) goes c) go d) going

10 Most of the students feel ................ when they start a new school as it isn't easy.

a) happy b) glad c) stressed d) pleased

11 If you have a problem, you can ................ me for advice by phone or email any time.

a) contact b) conduct c) connect d) communicate

12 Mona doesn't mind ................ to the cinema tonight as she is not busy.

a) go b) to go c) going d) goes

13 The best thing to do when you are thirsty is to drink ................ glass of water.

a) no article b) a c) the d) an

14 I only bought my new car last week, but I ................ 5000 km with it so far.

a) already driven b) have already driven
c) had already driven d) drove

15. My trousers ................ well every week by the laundry. They are professional.
   a) are wash  b) is washed  c) are washed  d) is washing
16. Our bus driver ................ us to school on time. He is very punctual.
   a) always drive  b) always drives  c) drive always  d) drives always

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**



Advertising has become very specialised in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufactures of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising. The manufacturer advertises in newspapers and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive sales girls to distribute samples of it. He organises competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all is on television. He has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible. Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements.

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. Advertisements persuade us to buy things even if ................ .
   a) the product is good
   b) we don't need them
   c) supply is greater than demand
   d) we need them
18. One of the following is not mentioned and it is a way of advertising ................ .
   a) newspapers and TV  b) posters
   c) cinemas  d) trains
19. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to his ................ .
   a) advertisement  b) factory
   c) product  d) customer
20. The best title of this text is "................".
   a) Ways of Advertising  b) Competition
   c) A specialised activity  d) Manufacturers
21. The antonym of the word "particular" is ................ .
   a) choosy  b) unique
   c) selective  d) common

22 Manufacturers spend so much money on advertising .................. .
a) because advertising needs lots of thinking
b) because there are lots of work to do
c) to persuade customers to buy their own particular make
d) to distribute the largest amount of flyers

23 According to the passage, advertisers use beautiful girls to .................. .
a) distribute products
b) deceive people
c) buy products
d) attract more workers

24 The main idea of the last paragraph is "..................".
a) The Power of Advertisements
b) How to Advertise in Newspapers
c) The TV Advertisements
d) The Good Marketing

25 Some manufacturers set competitions .................. .
a) to encourage people to be active
b) to sell their products
c) to advertise their products
d) to entertain people in the street

26 Some people don't care whether .................. .
a) the material is good or not
b) the prices are good or not
c) the advertiser is truthful or not
d) the TV is on or not

## 27 Translate into English:

3

إن مساعدة المعاقين هى مسئولية كل فرد فى المجتمع؛ لذا يجب علينا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا كى نجعلهم يختلطون مع أفراد المجتمع الآخرين.

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

## 28 Translate into Arabic:

3

"Education is the principle of progress and development for all people and countries of the world all the same the advanced and the developing."

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

## 29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"Your future job"

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

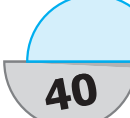
.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

.................................................................................................................

# Final Test 4




## Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. My room is always messy because of my little son. The synonyms of the word "messy" are ................. .
   a) disordered b) disappointed c) tidy
   d) unhappy e) untidy
2. All my colleagues went to the laboratory. The class is empty. The antonyms of the word "empty" are ................. .
   a) confused b) busy c) pleased
   d) crowded e) delighted

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. The horrible accident was the ................. of high speed.
   a) cause b) result c) reason d) affection
4. Radi suffers from a heart disease. Doctors recommend an urgent heart ................. operation.
   a) transmission b) transport c) transfusion d) transplant
5. Sara sent me ................. SMS just now. She told me that our exams had postponed.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
6. ................., which is dried grape, is much used in cooking.
   a) Currant b) Currency c) Current d) Curtain
7. Your blue jeans ................. hung in the wardrobe. You always forget.
   a) is b) have c) are d) was
8. **Amir :** I'm presently short of money.
   **Samir:** Don't bother about that. I ................. you a loan.
   a) will give b) am giving c) going to give d) give
9. Unlike now, I ................. black coffee. I only drank tea and fruit juice.
   a) use b) didn't use to c) used to d) wasn't used to
10. Be careful, the car ................. hit you; it is very near!
    a) will b) would c) is d) is going to
11. He had a ................. face as he had been working all day.
    a) tiring looking b) tired looking c) tired looked d) tiring looked
12. The little girl ................. missing down town. Her mother was very worried about her.
    a) got b) went c) found d) came
13. I always use the ................. "Kimo" for my little brother Kamal.
    a) pen name b) pseudonym c) nick name d) surname
14. Sara has enjoyed reading ever since she ................. very young.
    a) was b) is c) will be d) has been

15. The manager is going to the mechanic because his car ................. every month.

a) is repaired b) is repairing c) was repaired d) repairs

16. The plumber managed ................. the tap and apologised for our neighbours.

a) fixing b) to fixing c) to fix d) he fixes

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**




Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment. Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. Desertification means ................. a wide area of trees.

a) clearing b) planting
c) irrigating d) spraying

18. The underlined word "its" refers to ................. .

a) desertification b) global warming
c) environment d) $CO_2$

19. Scientists recommend ................ fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.

a) using b) misusing
c) reducing d) reusing

20. Burning fossil fuels ................. global warming.

a) causes of b) results of
c) leads to d) results from

21. .................% of the sunlight is absorbed by oceans air and land.

a) 30 b) 50
c) 70 d) 90

22 The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ................ .
a) environmental b) biological c) chemical d) material

23 Using nonrenewable sources of energy is not safe because it ................ .
a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
b) can be stolen easily
c) can be flamed
d) can't be moved from a place to another

24 According to the passage, we ................ the destructive effects of the global warming.
a) will face
b) faced
c) are already facing
d) have never faced

25 According to the writer, these problems are caused by ................ .
a) aircrafts
b) animal
c) humans
d) plants

26 The best title for this passage is "................" .
a) National Disasters
b) Global Disasters
c) Trees and Nature
d) Anthropogenic Activities

27 **Translate into English:** 3

تضطر بعض الحيوانات إلى تغيير لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى أنفسها من حيوانات أقوى. فكل حيوان له خصائص تعينه على الحياة فى بيئته الخاصة.

........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................

28 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

No one can avoid being old as aging is a natural process that gradually happens with the passing of time.

........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"Different forms of pollution and how to fight them"

........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................

# Final Test 5




## Choose Two of the Five options:




1. Egypt does many giant projects nowadays. The synonyms of the word "giant" are ................ .

   a) huge  b) generous  c) delighted  d) gigantic  e) modern

2. Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world. The antonyms of the word "famous" are .............. .

   a) celebrated  b) nameless  c) well-built  d) unknown  e) well-known

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:




3. He felt lonely and ................ after his mother had passed away.

   a) miser  b) miserliness  c) miserably  d) miserable

4. Have you finished writing the essay ................? You are very quick!

   a) just  b) yet  c) ever  d) already

5. His father ................ him a good job as an accountant in a multi-national company.

   a) is finding  b) founded  c) found  d) has founded

6. She ran up the ................ road leading to the castle.

   a) gravel  b) plot  c) digging  d) gravels

7. In ................ time, I will travel to London. I will stay for 2 weeks there.

   a) two week  b) two week's  c) two weeks  d) two weeks'

8. I ................ lunch at home yesterday. My father invited me to have it outdoors.

   a) haven't  b) used  c) didn't have  d) hadn't

9. It was not polite of him to interrupt what I ................ .

   a) was saying  b) am saying  c) will say  d) says

10. Doctors ................ after patients in hospitals. It is their job.

    a) lock  b) looked  c) looking  d) look

11. You must protect the data on your laptop against ................ .

    a) hacks  b) hack  c) hacking  d) hijack

12. You are no more than a ................ who frightens people online.

    a) cyberbullying  b) cyberbully  c) phishing  d) terror

13. Sports stars are ................ for thousands of youngsters so they should behave well.

    a) role games  b) role models  c) role makers  d) role players

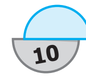
14. The accident is a ................ of one that happened to her three weeks ago.

    a) reputation  b) repetition  c) revision  d) religion

15. As soon as I ................ the key, I will set off very fast.
   a) found b) had found c) was finding d) have found

16. I ................ as a professor since I was 30, and this is the first time to see this theory.
   a) worked b) have worked c) was working d) work

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**



Bullying can take a variety of forms, from the verbal-being called hurtful names – to the physical-being kicked – as well as indirect forms, such as being excluded from social groups. A survey I conducted with Irene Whitney found that in British primary schools up to a quarter of pupils reported experience of bullying, which is about one in ten cases was persistent. There was less bullying in secondary schools, with about one in twenty-five suffering persistent bullying, but these cases may be particularly rebellious.

Bullying is clearly unpleasant and can make the child experiencing it feel unworthy and depressed. In extreme cases, it can even lead to suicide, though this is thankfully rare. Victimized pupils are more likely to experience difficulties with interpersonal relationships as adults, while children who persistently bully are more likely to grow up to be physically violent and convicted of anti-social offences.

Until recently, not much was known about the topic, and little help was available to teachers to deal with bullying. Perhaps, as a result, schools would often deny the problem. "There is no bullying at this school" has been a common refrain, almost certainly all true. Fortunately, more schools are now saying: There is not much bullying here, but when it occurs we have a clear for dealing with it.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. Teachers ................ know how to deal with bullying, but now they do.
   a) don't b) didn't
   c) had d) hadn't

18. Being ................ is an indirect form of bullying.
   a) called hurtful names b) kicked
   c) excluded from social groups d) slashed

19. Children experiencing an extreme case of bullying may commit ................ .
   a) suicide b) theft
   c) tolerance d) violence

20. A recent survey found that in British secondary schools there was ................ bullying than in primary schools.
   a) more b) less
   c) least d) much more

21. The pronoun "it" in the last paragraph refers to ................ .
   a) little help b) bullying
   c) school d) refrain

22 The synonym of the underlined word "conducted" is ................. .

a) performed b) attached c) linked d) ignored

23 When a school has a case of bullying ................. .

a) they neglect it
b) they make up between students
c) they deal with it strictly
d) they report it to the police

24 The the best title for the passage is "................." .

a) Bullying can be Treated
b) Students are Disrespectful
c) Schools Need Reform
d) Bullying as a Social Disease

25 Teachers ................. to deal with bullying.

a) are ready b) are supported c) are not trained d) can't be trained

26 Being exposed to bullying, the child suffers from ................. .

a) over happiness b) depression c) creativity d) disrespect

**27 Translate into English:** 3

يجب عليك أن تبذل قصارى جهدك لكى تنفع نفسك وعائلتك وبلدك، فالعمل الجاد والاجتهاد هما السبيل الوحيد للنجاح فى الحياة.

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

**28 Translate into Arabic:** 3

Tourism is extremely necessary for Egypt because it creates job opportunities and brings hard currency to the country. So, we must all work together to develop it.

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

**29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"Someone you admire"

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................................

# Final Test 6




### Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. My neighbour donated his old clothes to a charity in our neighbourhood. The synonyms the word of "donated" are ................ .

   a) kept  b) presented  c) received  d) asked  e) gave

2. After a long discussion, they admitted their responsibility for the robbery. The antonyms of the word "admitted" are ................ .

   a) denied  b) regretted  c) adapted  d) concealed  e) avoided

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. He denied ................ that bad thing. In fact, he was innocent.

   a) to do  b) did  c) doing  d) do

4. ................ are fully grown persons.

   a) Children  b) Old people  c) Teenagers  d) Adults

5. When I was young, I always ................ before going to school.

   a) crying  b) cry  c) cried  d) was crying

6. When I heard the ................ of the gun parts, I know the man was about to shoot.

   a) direct  b) object  c) check  d) click

7. We use ................ friendly materials in ecotourism to keep the surroundings.

   a) environment  b) environmental  c) environmentally  d) environmentalist

8. He had lost his job, so he couldn't pay back the money he ................ .

   a) owned  b) earned  c) gave  d) owed

9. ................ the flight, I was reading a book called "*For Whom the Bell Tolls*".

   a) While  b) During  c) Just as  d) When

10. My first computer didn't work, so they sent me a ................ .

    a) replaced  b) replacement  c) replace  d) replaces

11. Mona ................ on holiday next Sunday. She's arranged to do so.

    a) will go  b) will have gone  c) goes  d) is going

12. There is plenty of meat, but there is not ................ bread.

    a) plenty  b) many  c) much  d) a lot

13. Decision ................ needs knowledge and experience.

    a) doing  b) having  c) making  d) saying

14. I have passed this test ................ .

    a) already  b) yet  c) just  d) so far

15 The lesson ................ at 10 o'clock, so we can have breakfast together.

a) will start b) starts c) is going to start d) is starting

16 While ................, me sister fell off the bed and got injured.

a) sleep b) she was slept c) slept d) sleeping

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**



"Necessity is the mother of invention" is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well with a world full of speed changes.

Man's needs have often directed him to discover the natural resources around him, and to make with his own hands the things he wants.

Thus, he made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilisation. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man's basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped him to take wide steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services.

Thus, we are now enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation. When civilisation developed and man lived in organised societies, he found himself in need of more than his necessities; Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to acquire experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living.

Education changed our style of living and led to higher thinking levels. He invaded space. He invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable him to create more inventions in the future.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 The underlined word "acquire" has a similar meaning to ................ .

a) require b) demand

c) obtain d) contain

18 According to the passage education is of great importance because ................ .

a) it gives us experience and making a living

b) it is pre to food in importance

c) it is natural resource before us

d) the tools played a role in our civilisation

19 Man needed more than his necessities when he ................ .

a) needed tools b) lived in organised societies

c) discovered natural resources d) made the things he wanted

20 "He made tools to cultivate the land" another word for "cultivate" is ................ .

a) ignore b) destroy

c) plant d) abandon

21 According to the passage, the need for collecting the crops led man to .................. .
a) plant huge areas of land
b) invent agricultural tools
c) buy machines
d) rent peasants to help him

22 In the last paragraph, invading the space and inventing the computer is an evidence that .................. .
a) man spends a lot of money
b) man has extraordinary abilities
c) science is obtainable
d) the space exploration is not impossible

23 The main idea of the passage is ".................." .
a) Necessities can be postponed
b) Conditions create inventions
c) The needs are motivated by possibilities
d) The agriculture and civilisation

24 The word from the passage that means "run" is .................. .
a) manage
b) discover
c) means
d) enable

25 Man invented the computer because .................. .
a) it was easy
b) the education led to this
c) the internet was free
d) sending emails was a necessity

26 Which sentence is NOT mentioned in the passage?
a) Man created new things in order to manage well with the world.
b) Man made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops.
c) Man made wars which destroyed the planet.
d) All of us are enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation.

## 27 Translate into English:

3

عندما تعطي وعدًا لشخص فلا يجب أن تخلفه، ولا تقل غير الصدق، ولا تخف أن تقول الحقيقة فهذه قوة، ولا تمدح شخصًا لمجرد المدح.

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

## 28 Translate into Arabic:

3

When you give a person a quality education, you not only revive a nation, but also you help him to think and create to be a good citizen.

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

## 29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"Donation and charities"

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

# Final Test 7



40

## Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. Maya likes wearing fashionable clothes. The synonyms the word of "fashionable" are ................ .
   a) old b) clean c) stylish
   d) expensive e) cool
2. Your question isn't clear. Can you clarify what you want? The antonyms of the word "clear" are ................ .
   a) ambiguous b) pure c) bright
   d) complicated e) obscure

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. It is important to respect the ................ of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours.
   a) leader b) friendship c) diversity d) punctuation
4. **A:** We have not got any sugar.
   **B:** I know, I ................ some this evening.
   a) won't buy b) am going to buy
   c) will be buying d) will have bought
5. He has been doing three jobs to get out of ................ .
   a) debit b) doubt c) count d) debt
6. The countryside is mainly ................ by farmers and their families.
   a) populated b) population c) unpopulated d) pollution
7. We all recommended ................ that book.
   a) that read b) that he read c) to read d) to reading
8. What is the correct plural of the word "belief"?
   a) Believes. b) Beliefs. c) Beliefes. d) Believe.
9. Finally, my mother ................ how to use the internet. Now she can send e-mails.
   a) learns b) has learnt c) had learnt d) was learning
10. A/An ................ is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
    a) biologist b) guardian c) hunter d) admirer
11. There are ................ differences between people in Upper Egypt and those in the Delta.
    a) culture b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally
12. Do not open the door until I ................ you.
    a) told b) had told c) tell d) was told
13. My grandfather was a great ................ . When we were children we would listen to his stories for hours.
    a) storyteller b) poet c) playwright d) dancer
14. My uncle arrived on ................ Sunday, after my birthday.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15 I've ................ many countries but I like Egypt the most.

a) been b) been to c) gone d) gone to

16 I bought ................ mp3 which can be connected to the car via Bluetooth.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** 10

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure ................ Sally.

a) screamed b) scared
c) cared d) cracked

18 Sally ................ reading ghost stories.

a) enjoyed b) did not enjoy
c) feared d) avoided

19 Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?

a) The strange noise. b) Sally.
c) Sally's brother. d) The ghost.

20 Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother ................ .

a) stretched his hand b) turned on the lights
c) walked down the steps d) laughed

21 "He couldn't help laughing" couldn't help means ................ .

a) couldn't stop b) couldn't breathe
c) couldn't give a hand d) couldn't sleep

22 Ken ................ when Sally started reading the story.

a) had been outside
b) had been on the roof
c) hadn't entered the house
d) had hidden under the bed

23 Sally thought it was a ghost because all of her family ................ .

a) were asleep
b) got out
c) went shopping
d) didn't like tricks

24 The best title to this passage is "................" .

a) Reading is important
b) Scary Tales Effects
c) Ken is coward
d) Sally's brother's trick

25 What kind of texts is this passage?

a) A Letter.
b) A short film.
c) A short story.
d) An Email.

26 The word from the passage which means "discover" is ................ .

a) turn on
b) walk into
c) find out
d) push

27 **Translate into English:** 3

إن القراءة وسيلة لتنمية الثقافة وتحصيل المعرفة النافعة فى وقت الفراغ، وممارسة الرياضة تساعد فى الحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية وتجديد النشاط.

28 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Building good citizens and creating a creative society are the main aims of education. This will teach them self-reliance.

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"The advantages of teamwork"

................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................

# Final Test 8




## Choose Two of the Five options:




1. Wild flowers grow along the sides of rivers. The antonyms of the word "wild" are ................ .
   a) fierce b) harmful c) tame
   d) domestic e) legal
2. Our car broke down and we had a long trek. The word "trek" here is a synonym of ................ .
   a) fishing b) hike c) losing
   d) fabricating e) journey

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:




3. As an ................, you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature.
   a) ecotourism b) ecotourist c) ecosystem d) eco-friendly
4. ................ emails usually targets your bank accounts.
   a) Fishing b) Phishing c) Cyber d) The internet
5. He was a great ................ who wrote many poems.
   a) novelist b) author c) poet d) illustrator
6. You should have your sight ................ regularly.
   a) checked b) shocked c) choked d) shook
7. Families should ................ their children's internet activity.
   a) meet b) click c) monitor d) scam
8. My friend keeps ................ photos all day.
   a) logging in b) posting c) lighting d) connecting
9. While Roqaya was cooking lunch, her brother ................ .
   a) slept b) sleeping c) was sleeping d) has slept
10. ................ anybody need help?
    a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
11. I haven't seen him since he ................ a child.
    a) is b) has been c) been d) was
12. He doesn't have ................ money.
    a) many b) few c) a lot d) much
13. Next week, she ................ 16 years old.
    a) is going to be b) going to be c) will be d) is being
14. He is looking forward to ................ his friends.
    a) meet b) meets c) met d) meeting

15 Physics ................. my favourite subject. I like Newton and Einstein very much.

a) is b) are c) have been d) is being

16 I ................. my aunt eagerly last Friday. I can't stand waiting for the next month.

a) have visited b) has visited c) visited d) visit

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

10

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases.

Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals are released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia in humans. This is a serious problem which is serious to human health. The World Health Organisation "W.H.O." reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed. Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight.

Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 The ozone layer, being widened by pollutants, ................. .

a) prevents ultraviolet rays from coming down to earth
b) protects the globe
c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
d) absorbs the harmful pollutants

18 Toxic chemicals ................. .

a) break down easily in the atmosphere
b) do not break down easily in the atmosphere and don't come down to earth
c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
d) are emitted from the atmosphere and come down to earth

19 Toxic emissions sometimes cause ................. .

a) ultraviolet rays to break down easily
b) chest ailments and other diseases
c) ultraviolet rays
d) the reduction of pollution

20 A suitable title for the passage is "................."

a) Ultraviolet rays
b) Toxic air-pollution
c) Leukemia in humans
c) The World Health Organisation

21 ................. of the layer that protects the globe is remaining.

a) Two thirds b) One third c) Three fifths d) Half

22 The ozone layer is important because ................ .
a) it wraps the earth
b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
c) it protects the space from the sun
d) it protects the other planets from the earth

23 The industry is responsible for polluting the environment because ................ .
a) factories don't pay taxes
b) factories discharge dangerous substances
c) many people work in industry
d) building new factories takes a lot of water

24 When the petrol runs out from the world, ................ .
a) there will be a big problem in energy price
b) the pollution will disappear
c) there will be an energy crisis
d) the deserts will fade

25 The antonym of the underlined word "toxic" is ................ .
a) healthy
b) creepy
c) unhealthy
d) weak

26 According to the last paragraph of the passage, all countries ................ .
a) ignore the case
b) want to solve the problem
c) dig more oil wells
d) create solar panels

27 **Translate into English:**

3

لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائمًا دورًا حيويًا فى تحسين المجتمع ونمو الاقتصاد المصرى من خلال اهتمامها بأسرتها ووظيفتها فى نفس الوقت.

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

28 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

Egypt hosted the last Africa Cup of Nations in 2019 and the Algerian National Team won the Cup for the second time.

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:**

6

"Pollution"

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

# Final Test 9

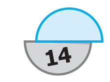


40

## Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. There is a major problem with parking in London. The antonyms of the word “major” are ................ .
   a) minor b) trivial c) fundamental
   d) remarkable e) tremendous
2. “Exotic birds are seen here in winter.” In this sentence, the word ’exotic’ is a synonym of ................ .
   a) native b) unusual c) unconventional
   d) foreign e) original



14

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Children like to ................ new games and movies from the internet.
   a) upload b) download c) downside d) destroy
4. ................ has made the world a smaller place.
   a) Any plane b) Planes c) The plane d) The planes
5. Luxor is considered a main ................ for most tourists.
   a) location b) cooperation c) destination d) foundation
6. ................ I started my profession, I have met a lot of excellent students.
   a) On b) Before c) After d) Since
7. The money saved for buying clothes ................ on that table.
   a) was b) were c) has d) had
8. Although he looks smart, he has a ................ across his forehead.
   a) scar b) scarce c) scared d) scare
9. ................ I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.
   a) Since b) During c) While d) After
10. The ................ set the prisoner free when he realised that he was innocent.
    a) master b) manager c) magistrate d) servant
11. You should avoid ................ friends with such bad people.
    a) to make b) making c) makes d) to making
12. Wicked young people and media fans sometimes try hard to ................ the accounts of famous men.
    a) pack b) hack c) mock d) highjack
13. Good people never ................ or tell lies. They are respected characters.
    a) behave b) beat c) cheat d) wear
14. Twenty years from now, I think my city ................ a fantastic place to live in.
    a) is b) is being c) is going to be d) will be

15 The coach advised me to practise ................ more to get fit shortly.

a) jogging b) to jog c) to jogging d) jog

16 Have you cleaned your room ................?

a) just b) till now c) yet d) never

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** 10

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. Do you want to know how they do that? Well, the octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand. This colour change happens in less than a minute.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. It will change the colour of those arms to match a sea snake.

If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Don't worry though. The octopus's arm will grow back.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 A ................ is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.

a) prey b) predator

c) chameleon d) magician

18 When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's ................ .

a) easy b) dangerous

c) covered in stick d) unable to move

19 The synonym of the word "intelligent" is ................ .

a) smart b) dangerous

c) venomous d) visible

20 The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both ................ .

a) swim in the same way b) eat the same food

c) catch small fish d) can change their skin colour

21 The octopus can separate one of its arms to ................ .

a) distract the predator b) renew it

c) catch a prey d) lay eggs

22 Octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to .................. .
a) defend themselves
b) eat small fish
c) attack their predator
d) sleep

23 The octopus can shoot ink into the water which .................. .
a) kills the attackers
b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water
d) attracts preys

24 Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves .................. .
a) so, they are eaten easily
b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
c) moreover, they are not brave
d) that's why they are about to extinct

25 The best title for this passage is .................. .
a) The Magician Octopuses
b) The Sea World and the Predator
c) The Seabed
d) The Sea Ink

26 The octopus has a remarkable advantage which is its ability to .................. .
a) swim in the sea
b) kill small fish
c) renew its arms
d) breath underwater

## 27 Translate into English:

3

لقد فاز المنتخب الأوليمبى المصرى لكرة القدم بكأس الأمم الإفريقية وأسعد الكثير من المصريين. ونحن نهنئ مصرنا الغالية من أعماق قلوبنا.

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

## 28 Translate into Arabic:

3

There is no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance.

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

## 29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"The different forms of pollution and how to fight them"

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

# Final Test 10

40

## Choose Two of the five options:

4

1 Voluntary work is of a great importance. The antonyms of the word "voluntary" are .............. .

a) optional b) exceptional c) obligatory
d) compulsory e) obligation

2 "I admire your idea." In this sentence, the word 'admire' is a synonym of .................. .

a) praise b) approve c) disapprove
d) appreciate e) prove

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3 Some people's .................. in money gets them to do illegal things.

a) interesting b) interested c) interests d) interest

4 He got his degree in economics from .................. university in Finland.

a) a b) an c) the d) these

5 We should leave for work early, or we might get .................. in the traffic jams.

a) struck b) stock c) stuck d) through

6 He felt exhausted as he isn't used to .................. such hard work.

a) do b) did c) doing d) done

7 He always listens to his father's advice. He usually takes it for .................. .

a) grants b) granted c) granting d) grant

8 If you want to connect to the internet, .................. on this icon.

a) kick b) click c) clock d) block

9 Nader wishes he had studied for his exams. He regrets .................. .

a) to study b) to studying c) studying d) not studying

10 His colleagues and teachers like him as he is .................. .

a) behaves politely b) usually polite c) usual politely d) usually politely

11 Before the operation, the doctor should check the blood .................. of the patient.

a) pleasure b) treasure c) pressure d) measure

12 Money .................. to Egypt by the tourists, so we should keep our country clean and safe.

a) brings b) is bringing c) is brought d) are brought

13 .................. the last two weeks, we have prepared for our graduation party.

a) Since b) At c) For d) While

14 Now and then we ask our parents .................. advice on what we should do.

a) of b) about c) to d) for

15 ................. children don't like schools because they want to play all the time.

a) Lots b) Lots of c) A lot d) Any

16 Samy is a fantastic boy. I think he ................. the record of the other class.

a) won't break b) isn't going to break c) is going to breaking d) will break

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

10

**Dear Mr. Reda,**

I hope everything is Ok with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing tennis table and volleyball. But let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmad and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transportation, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mum solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing. See you soon, my manager.

**Best regards,**

**Anas**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17 What kind of passages is this one?

a) A short story. b) An email. c) A letter. d) A diary.

18 To whom is this speech written?

a) Anas. b) Amgad. c) Ahmad. d) Reda.

19 The writer thinks that his friends ................. .

a) didn't like his appearance b) liked his appearance
c) made fun of his appearance d) were ashamed of his shoes

20 The underlined word "up-to-date" means ................. .

a) old b) ancient c) modern d) fast

21 The house, where the party was held, is ................. .

a) narrow b) vast c) boring d) old-fashioned

22 What is the purpose of this passage?

a) The writer wants to tell a story. b) The writer is not going to work.
c) The writer is proud of his mum. d) The writer is showing his abilities.

23 According to the passage, the writer is ................ .

a) careful b) punctual c) careless d) hard-working

24 How much did it cost the writer to go home?

a) 150 pounds. b) 300 pounds. c) 75 pounds. d) 225 pounds.

25 The writer sent ................ in the attachment.

a) his tasks b) his shoes c) his photos d) nothing

26 How could the writer pay for the ride?

a) He paid by a visa card.
b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house.
c) His mum paid for him when he reached home.
d) The driver didn't take money.

## 27 Translate the following into English:

3

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرًا مباشرًا من مصادر الدخل القومى فى مصر؛ فمصر تمتلك الكثير والكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التى يرغب السياح فى زيارتها.

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

## 28 Translate the following into Arabic:

3

Some youth spend a long time on the internet nowadays unaware of the potential dangers there. They are vulnerable to many kinds of crimes.

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

## 29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"Friendship is a precious thing."

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................................




Gem

# English

الصف 1 الثانوى

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

2021 - 2022

# Answers To Final Tests

## Final Test 1

### Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) satisfied / e) pleased
2. a) faraway / d) distant

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) earn
4. c) donate
5. a) has gone
6. d) crew
7. a) isolated
8. c) owe
9. a) was preparing
10. a) is known
11. b) leaves
12. a) an/The
13. c) is going to
14. b) bullying
15. a) was walking
16. d) saw

### Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) can treat a lot of diseases
18. a) natural remedies
19. c) Symptom
20. b) after
21. c) customer
22. c) it cures and protects from side effects
23. a) demerit
24. a) The herbal medicine benefits
25. c) It can be fried on fire to be served
26. d) willow tree

**27. Translate into English:**

A lot of youth are keen on taking part in social work to develop their country. Young people are the basis of the development for any nation, so the developed countries pay special attention to youth.

**28. Translate into Arabic:**

إن البطالة قنبلة موقوتة تهدد الأمن والاستقرار للمجتمع المصرى وحل هذه المشكلة سوف يجلب استثمارات جديدة والتى ستوفر المزيد من فرص العمل.

**29. Student's own answer.**



# Final Test 2

## Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) interesting / e) exciting
2. b) cared for / d) nursed

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) a
4. b) since
5. d) during
6. b) walked
7. a) track
8. a) ever
9. d) will show
10. c) rhyme
11. c) aged
12. d) hacked
13. b) for
14. b) deserved
15. b) to cook
16. c) getting

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
18. a) taxi drivers
19. b) away from
20. c) indispensable
21. a) complex
22. b) cars have to be left in the streets
23. d) Transportation
24. b) it's the rush hour
25. a) greedy
26. d) it takes long time

27. **Translate into English:**
All members of society should cooperate to fight bullying as it is a bad social problem spread among youth and threatens people everywhere.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
لتحقيق طموحاتك فى الحياة يجب عليك أن تمتلك الإصرار والشجاعة والصبر بالإضافة إلى الشعور بالمسئولية.

29. **Student's own answer.**

# Final Test 3

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. a) observe / c) monitor
2. b) decrease / c) reduce

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. a) donate
4. c) protective
5. d) moon
6. b) was being prepared
7. a) wasn't used to
8. c) sustainable
9. a) went
10. c) stressed
11. a) contact
12. c) going
13. b) a
14. b) have already driven
15. c) are washed
16. b) always drives

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. b) we don't need them
18. d) trains
19. c) product
20. a) Ways of Advertising
21. d) common
22. c) to persuade customers to buy their own particular make
23. a) distribute products
24. a) The Power of Advertisements
25. c) to advertise their products
26. c) the advertiser is truthful or not

27. **Translate into English:**
Helping the disabled is the responsibility of every one in society so we should do our best to make them mix with other members of society.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم على حد سواء المتقدمة والنامية.

29. **Student's own answer.**

# Final Test 4

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. a) disordered / e) untidy
2. b) busy / d) crowded

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. b) result
4. d) transplant
5. b) an
6. a) Currant
7. c) are
8. a) will give
9. d) wasn't used to
10. d) is going to
11. b) tired looking
12. b) went
13. c) nick name
14. a) was
15. a) is fixed
16. c) to fix

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. a) clearing
18. b) global warming
19. c) reducing
20. c) leads to
21. c) 70
22. a) environmental
23. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
24. c) are already facing
25. c) humans
26. b) Global Disasters

27. **Translate into English:**
Some animals have to change their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it live in its own environment.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
لا أحد يستطيع تجنب كبر السن لأنه عملية طبيعية تحدث تدريجيًا بمرور الوقت.

29. **Student's own answer.**

# Final Test 5

### Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) huge / d) gigantic
2. b) nameless / d) unknown

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) miserable
4. d) already
5. c) found
6. a) gravel
7. d) two weeks'
8. c) didn't have
9. a) was saying
10. d) look
11. c) hacking
12. b) cyberbully
13. b) role models
14. b) repetition
15. d) have found
16. b) have worked

### Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) didn't
18. c) excluded from social groups
19. a) suicide
20. b) less
21. b) bullying
22. a) performed
23. c) they deal with it strictly
24. d) Bullying as a Social Disease
25. c) are not trained
26. b) depression

**27. Translate into English:**

You must do your best to benefit yourself and your country. Hard work and diligence are the only way to succeed in life.

**28. Translate into Arabic:**

إن السياحة ضرورية جدًا لمصر لأنها تخلق فرص عمل وتجلب العملة الصعبة للبلد؛ لذلك يجب أن نتعاون جميعا لتنميتها.

**29. Student's own answer.**



# Final Test 6

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. b) presented / e) gave
2. a) denied / d) concealed

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. c) doing
4. d) Adults
5. c) cried
6. d) click
7. c) environmentally
8. d) owed
9. b) During
10. b) replacement
11. d) is going
12. a) much
13. c) making
14. d) already
15. b) starts
16. d) sleeping

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. c) obtain
18. a) it gives us experience and making a living
19. b) lived in organised societies
20. c) plant
21. b) invent agricultural tools
22. b) man has extraordinary abilities
23. b) Conditions create inventions
24. a) manage
25. b) the education led to this
26. c) Man made wars which destroyed the planet

27. **Translate into English:**
When you make a promise, you shouldn't break it, don't say nothing but truth, don't afraid to say the truth and don't praise someone for just praise.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
عندما تعطى شخصًا تعليمًا قيمًا فأنت لا تنعش الأمة فقط، بل أيضًا تساعده على التفكير والإبداع ليكون مواطنًا صالحًا.

29. **Student's own answer.**

# Final Test 7

### Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) stylish / e) cool
2. a) ambiguous / d) complicated

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) diversity
4. b) am going to buy
5. d) debt
6. a) populated
7. b) that he read
8. b) beliefs
9. b) has learnt
10. b) guardian
11. b) cultural
12. c) tell
13. c) storyteller
14. d) no article
15. b) been to
16. b) an

### Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) scared
18. a) enjoyed
19. c) Sally's brother.
20. b) turned on the lights
21. a) couldn't stop
22. a) had been outside
23. a) were asleep
24. b) Scary Tales Effects
25. c) A short story
26. c) find out

**27. Translate into English:**

Reading is a means to develop culture and getting knowledge in spare time and doing sport helps to keep fit and renew energy.

**28. Translate into Arabic:**

إن بناء المواطنين الصالحين وخلق مجتمع مبدع هى الأهداف الأساسية للتعليم وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على النفس.

**29. Student's own answer.**

# Final Test 8

## Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) tame / d) domestic
2. b) hike / e) journey

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) ecotourist
4. b) Phishing
5. c) poet
6. a) checked
7. c) monitor
8. b) posting
9. c) was sleeping
10. b) Does
11. d) was
12. d) much
13. c) will be
14. d) meeting
15. a) is
16. c) visited

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
18. c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
19. b) chest ailments and other diseases
20. b) Toxic air-pollution
21. b) One third
22. b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
23. b) factories discharge dangerous substances
24. b) the pollution will disappear
25. a) healthy
26. b) want to solve the problem

27. **Translate into English:**

The Egyptian woman has played a vital role in improving society and developing the Egyptian economy through her interest in her family and job at the same time.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**

استضافت مصر كأس الأمم الإفريقية الأخيرة عام ٢٠١٩ وفاز الفريق الجزائرى بالكأس للمرة الثانية.

29. **Student's own answer.**

# Final Test 9

**Choose Two of the Five options:**

1. a) minor / b) trivial
2. b) unusual / c) unconventional

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. b) download
4. c) The plane
5. c) destination
6. d) Since
7. a) was
8. a) scar
9. c) While
10. c) magistrate
11. b) making
12. b) hack
13. c) cheat
14. d) will be
15. a) jogging
16. c) yet

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**
**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. b) predator
18. b) dangerous
19. a) smart
20. d) can change their skin colour
21. a) distract the predator
22. a) defend themselves
23. b) helps it hide from the attackers
24. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
25. a) The Magician Octopuses
26. c) renew its arms

27. **Translate into English:**
The Egyptian Olympic football team won the African Nation Cup and pleased a lot of Egyptians and we congratulate our dear Egypt from the bottom of our hearts.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
بلا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمى وبدون المعلمين سيعانى الناس من ظلام الجهل.

29. **Student's own answer.**



# Final Test 10

## Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) obligatory / d) compulsory
2. a) praise / d) appreciate

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) interest
4. a) a
5. c) stuck
6. c) doing
7. b) granted
8. b) click
9. d) not studying
10. b) usually polite
11. c) pressure
12. c) is brought
13. c) For
14. d) for
15. b) Lots of
16. d) will break

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) An email
18. d) Reda
19. b) liked his appearance
20. c) modern
21. b) vast
22. b) The writer is not going to work
23. c) careless
24. c) 75 pounds
25. c) his photos
26. c) His mum paid for him when he reached home

27. **Translate into English:**
Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
يقضي بعض الشباب الكثير من وقتهم على الإنترنت هذه الأيام ولا يدرون المخاطر الكامنة هناك. فهم عرضة للعديد من أنواع الجرائم.

29. **Student's own answer.**